

# *The Capitol Guards*

*Company A,  
6th Arkansas Volunteer Infantry  
Little Rock, Ark.*



"OUCH!"

## **Drill Manual**

January, 2007



# Drill 101

Major General Patrick Cleburne established formal training for his brigade and regimental commanders where they studied the manuals and “recited” their lessons to the General on a regular, weekly basis to ensure they knew how to put their commands through the specified maneuvers, and war-gamed situations so as to have at their fingertips a working, intuitive knowledge of which maneuvers and formations would work best in a given combat situation. These “skull sessions” were then translated to battalion, brigade, and division drills with the full unit, much like a sports team rehearses its plays before the Big Game.

As reenactors, we rarely do that. Instead, we simply line up and go get ‘em... with the result that our battle demonstrations rarely resemble those of the War, and we make a poor representation of the Old Boys who were so proud of their discipline and drill. I see far too many battalion and brigade commanders on the field who have, by all appearances anyway, never cracked the cover of the School of the Battalion, much less own a copy.

Sharp, crisp drill and the discipline that derives from it is a key factor in the morale and reputation of any unit, be it a reenactor group or an original company of volunteers. A key concept is to pick a single manual that is appropriate for your unit’s impression, and learn it by heart. There are key, “mission-essential” maneuvers that should be imprinted on your psyche, other tasks make good topics for “hip pocket” training during down time at events or other unit gatherings or demonstrations. Once you have learned one manual by heart, it is only a simple step to accommodate the differences in other drill manuals.

The way to learn drill is on the same path as Carnegie Hall...ya gotta study, and you have to practice under the close supervision of a skilled instructor. And practice... and practice some more. Period soldiers practiced drill at squad, company, and battalion level from five to eight hours per day until it became imprinted in their minds. So much drill was not only to fill the soldiers’ time during the day (Idle soldiers are the Devil’s playthings), but also to make the maneuvers and the immediate response to commands instinctive, what was routine and instinctive on the drill field will also become instinctive when the bullets start to zip around your ears and musket balls split skulls like so many ripe pumpkins.

There are a lot of manuals out there... to “expand and revise” on some notes I put together on the Authentic Campaigner forum, here are the basic differences in the various drill manuals, as well as some background on each:

## **The Foundation...**

Before the War of 1812, the only official guide for both infantry tactics and military administration in the U.S.

Army was Baron von Steuben’s “Blue Book,” composed in 1777. Since von Steuben’s manual was based on the tactics of the Prussian armies of Frederick the Great, by the early 1800s many American officers argued that military developments during the Napoleonic wars made the “Blue Book” obsolete as a tactical handbook. The American military build-up during the War of 1812 renewed interest in this problem.

In March 1812, the War Department adopted a manual on infantry tactics written by Colonel Alexander Smyth, which condensed and adapted the French regulations of 1791, the basic infantry system of the Napoleonic armies. One year later, Smyth’s work was replaced by another version of the same French system by Colonel William Duane, a Pennsylvania journalist turned soldier. Neither Smyth nor Duane had a high reputation within the army for knowing what they were writing about, and many field commanders resisted using their manuals. Some officers continued to rely on von Steuben’s drill, others dutifully followed either Smyth or Duane, and not a few devised and implemented drill systems of their own.

## **Scott’s Infantry Tactics (1835)**

In a late move to end the confusion caused by the proliferation of drill styles, the War Department established a board of experienced field officers in December 1814, headed by Winfield Scott, to produce yet another translation of the French infantry tactics of that time. Completed early in 1815, and revised under Scott’s direction in 1824 and in 1835, Scott’s *Infantry Tactics* remained the U.S. Army’s fundamental infantry system well into the 1850s, and was the infantry manual in use during the 40-year period following the War of 1812, including the various Indian wars, filibustering expeditions and the War with Mexico.

Based on the flintlock smoothbored musket, several distinctive features of Scott’s drill include the use of the “lockstep,” and carrying the musket in the left hand, thus a soldier has to “cast about” his weapon in moving it from the left side of the body to the “ready” position before aiming and firing. At the “ready” position, the weapon is held vertically in front of the body, with the lock toward the front, before bringing it to the soldier to the position of “aim.” Loading the flintlock required 12 steps. (Note: Later versions of the Manual of Arms for the Musket (often, incorrectly, called ‘Scott’s’) were written for percussion muskets. These have TWO positions of ‘ready’. The first, executed from “shoulder arms”, is as described above. The second, “Ready from the position of PRIME”, is just like ‘Hardee’s’. Why? Because with the flintlock, arms are “shouldered” every time the weapon is loaded; but with the percussion musket, after the first firing weapons are loaded and immediately brought to the ready.)

## The Capitol Guards Drill Manual

Maneuvers in line of battle were performed at the common time (90 steps per minute) using what was called the "lockstep". e.g., a flat-footed step where the man in the rear ranks was virtually stepping in the footprints immediately behind his file partner. There was no ready provision for marching by the flanks, instead the battalion shifts to a road marching formation by wheeling into columns of platoons. (The flank march could be executed either from the halt, or while marching. The only difference from later manuals is that there is no "doubling" and "undoubling"; therefore, the men must march in "lockstep" to keep the column from lengthening out.)

Changing from one formation to another required the line to halt. If Company strengths were greater than 70 men, the companies and battalion could be formed into a line three ranks deep to deliver massed volleys. The three-rank line can not only fire volleys (the front rank kneels at the command "Ready" to avoid having their heads blown off!), but can also "Fire by Two Ranks". This is the equivalent of the later "Fire by file" except that only the two front ranks participate in the firing. The rear rank re-loads weapons and passes them to the center rank.

The three volumes of Scott's, School of the Soldier, School of the Battalion, and Evolutions of the Line, are available on-line at Leonard Jones' Drill Network site, at <http://home.att.net/~Rebmus/SCOTTSTACTICS.htm>.

### **Hardee's Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics (1855):**

Advances in infantry tactics and weaponry in the early 1850s led the Army to update its doctrine to take into account the new advantages offered by percussion ignition weapons and the newfangled M1841 and M1855 2-banded rifles. Lt. Col. William J. Hardee wrote a new manual focused primarily on light, rifle-armed infantry that became the Army's new standard. Hardee's new manual was a translation and adaptation of the current French infantry manual, *Ordonnance du Roi sur l'Exercice et les Manoeuvres des Bataillons de Chasseurs a Pied*. Based on combat experiences in Algeria in the 1830s and 1840s, the French had reorganized their doctrine to place higher emphasis on the tactical concepts of skirmishing - developing the concept of "comrades in battle," grouping skirmishers in self-sustaining units of four men, equipping the light infantrymen with accurate, long-range rifles, and instituting a program of intensive training in fencing, bayonet drill, gymnastics, and the decisive use of the bayonet which became known as "zouave" drill. Significantly, the old cadence of 90 steps per minute was increased to 110 and 165 steps per minute, allowing formations to maneuver more quickly and effectively. Significantly, Hardee's *Tactics* was recognition of the importance of light infantry tactics in an army that did not have specific light or heavy infantry units, while retaining the line infantry evolutions.

The most important improvements in Hardee's new

manual, which took into account the long-range capabilities of the rifle, were an increased tempo where quick time (110 steps per minute) was now the norm, and double quick time (165 steps per minute) was common, along with simplified instructions to deploy a column into line at the double quick, without first halting. "Doubling" was introduced to allow a line of battle to move quickly and simply by the flank, from two ranks into columns of four. The rifle was now carried in the right hand, somewhat simplifying the manual of arms. (Interestingly enough, while the new Hardee's tactics became the standard form of infantry evolutions, the Army Regulations still referred to Scott's old School of the Soldier as the basis for most of the parade and ceremonial evolutions of soldiers under arms.)

Hardee's 1855 *Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics* is the version of "Hardee's" which is most commonly sold by sutlers as a pocket-sized pamphlet or the full manual. A copy is available on-line at <http://www.public.asu.edu/~roblewis/ACW/hardeetoc.htm>.

### **William Gilham's Manual for the Instruction of Volunteers and Militia (1860)**

While Hardee's new 1855 manual became the doctrine of the Regular Army, most of the State volunteers were still equipped with the old .69 caliber muskets. Militia drill often resembled a circus act more than a military maneuver. In the aftermath of mobilizing the Virginia state troops in response to John Brown's October 1858 raid on Harper's Ferry and Brown's execution shortly thereafter, it became clear to Governor Wise of Virginia that the proliferation of assorted drill systems within the Virginia state troops was out of hand. Wise then directed Major William Gilham, the infantry tactics instructor at the Virginia Military Institute, to come up with a standard drill manual for all Virginia troops. The result was the *Manual for the Instruction of Volunteers and Militia*, which became a popular reference among volunteer officers.

In setting up his system, Gilham used a mixture of Hardee and Scott's for his School of the Soldier. Part 1 (soldier without arms) is largely taken from Hardee's 1855 School of the Soldier, but Scott's manual of arms is used for the smoothbore musket (Virginia's militia was mostly equipped with the old .69 caliber smoothbores), with Hardee's Schools of the Soldier for troops armed with the 2-bander rifles. Gilham used Hardee's instructions for both the School of the Company and School of the Battalion nearly verbatim.

Gilham tried to make his manual a comprehensive handbooks for the volunteer officer, incorporating not only infantry drill but also that for cavalry and artillery, as well as the provisions from the Army regulations for parades, reviews, guard mount, picket duty, and general military administration. For a one-source reference to how a military unit functioned in the early 1860s, Gilham's

manual is a good source, and wouldn't really be matched in this regard until August V. Kautz published his handbook, *Customs of Service for Officers of the Army*, in 1866.

Selected parts of Gilham's School of the Soldier and School of the Company are available on line at <http://www.geocities.com/pvtbuck2>. Printed versions of the entire book are available from Sh@mrock Hill books (<http://bookguy.com>) for approximately \$50.

### **U.S. Infantry Tactics (May 1861)**

It may be useful here to mention the 1861 *U.S. Infantry Tactics*. After Hardee resigned and joined the Confederate Army early in 1861, it became a bit of an embarrassment for the U.S. Army to have its basic Infantry doctrine written by an enemy officer. Thus came the May 1861 *U.S. Infantry Tactics*, which is essentially the current edition of Hardee's 1855 manual, reprinted with a Federal cover and end pages. Basically, this manual adopted Hardee's School of the Company and School of the Battalion, but retained the Manual of Arms for the Musket for the 'line' companies, while using Hardee's Manual of Arms for the Rifle for the (presumably rifle-armed) 'flank' companies. This concept is similar to Gilham's. Unfortunately, this manual has not been reprinted - as far as I know. A copy is available on-line at the "Making of America" library collections at <http://www.hti.umich.edu/cgi/t/text/text-id?c=moa;idno=AJS4261>. (Several links to the "U.S. Infantry Tactics" will refer to this web site as a copy of Casey's *Tactics*, but this predates Casey's work by more than a year.)

### **Hardee's Rifle and Infantry Tactics (1862)**

In the secession crisis of late 1860 and 1861, Lt. Col. William J. Hardee cast his lot with his native state of Georgia, and resigned from the U.S. Army to enter the Confederate service. In July 1861 he found himself in northeastern Arkansas drilling volunteer soldiers armed almost exclusively with 3-band, .69 caliber smoothbore muskets, most of them flintlocks. Throughout the Confederacy, the fledgling volunteer companies found themselves with 42-inch barrel muskets or 40-inch barrel rifle-muskets, both having socket bayonets. Not only did Hardee's "Tactics" produce difficulty for militia units trying to learn the new evolutions, his manual of arms proved awkward, and even sometimes impractical for the longer muskets (e.g., in fixing bayonets and stacking arms).

As Dom dal Bello described it a few years ago in the *Camp Chase Gazette*:

*"While in Mobile in the spring of 1861, Hardee entered into partnership with Mobile publisher S.H. Goetzel & Co. to produce an edition of his "Tactics" that included a revised manual of arms for the 3-band weapons commonly found in the Confederate army. Goetzel advertised this edition as "Hardee's Correct, Complete, Perfect, and Revised and Improved Infantry and Rifle Tactics." Note that the adjective "Light" has*

*been removed from "Infantry," making this manual applicable to all infantry, no matter how armed or organized. Hardee himself stated this edition was the "only COMPLETE, CORRECT, AND REVISED EDITION, and THIS EDITION ONLY contains the IMPROVEMENTS AND CHANGES which I have recently made."*

(It should be noted that the "only Complete, Correct, and Revised" version still uses the old 1855 illustrative plates showing a soldier with a 2-band rifle with sword bayonet.)

His 'perfected' manual was the 7th edition, published by his publishers, S.H. Goetzel & Co. of Mobile, Alabama. This is commonly called the "revised Hardee's." Hardee meant this manual to replace his 1855 edition, for use throughout the Confederate army by troops armed with 3-band muskets and rifle-muskets. The changes actually were slight. The same basic shoulder movements were retained, as well as the "light infantry" concepts of skirmishers, double quick time, etc. However, those parts of his 1855 manual of arms that had been written specifically for the 2-bander were adjusted to suit the 3-bander. The main differences lie in the position of the musket during loading, fixing and unfixing the bayonet, and stacking arms. Each of these movements was revised to take into account the greater length of the musket and rifle-musket over the rifle, and the socket bayonet in lieu of the rifle's sword bayonet. Excellent discussions of the background and specific differences in the 1855 and 1861 version of Hardee's *Infantry Tactics* are available on-line at [http://216.247.222.222/vpp/ccg/manualarms\\_1.htm](http://216.247.222.222/vpp/ccg/manualarms_1.htm) and [http://216.247.222.222/vpp/ccg/manualarms\\_2.htm](http://216.247.222.222/vpp/ccg/manualarms_2.htm).

The State of North Carolina adopted this revised 7th edition of Hardee's *Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics* as the official *North Carolina Drill Manual* and had the official state publisher (John Spelman) print it, along with the 3rd volume of Scott's *Evolutions of the Line* (which under Hardee's system, was the manual for brigades, divisions and army corps) as a official state manual.

The original text of the 1855 manual had never been copyrighted, however, and eager publishers in the Confederate States printed innumerable copies of their own "wildcat" edition of the 1855 manual. While it is not improbable that many Confederate officers purchased these locally printed editions, living historians who wish to accurately portray Confederate troops of the Army of Tennessee who were trained under the direct supervision of "Old Reliable" himself should use the 7th (revised) Edition, and not the pre-war 1855 version.

While there are numerous reprinted editions of the 1855 Hardee's (like the Confederate of old, the re-enacting press has taken generous advantage of the lack of copyright), reprints of the Goetzel edition of Hardee's *Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics* are very limited. In 1997, the 26th North Carolina reenacting group made a limited reprint of the *North Carolina Drill Manual* from an original copy found in their state archives. This work is itself out of print, and becoming somewhat of a collectible in its own right. In October 2004, Ken Mink produced an authentic copy of the

## The Capitol Guards Drill Manual

Goetzl edition in two volumes which is still available from a variety of vendors. For a printed reference copy and for living history use, this version is highly recommended.

Hardee's 1861 *Rifle and Infantry Tactics* (Goetzl edition) is available on-line at Leonard Jones' Drill Network at <http://home.att.net/~MrsMajor/1862.htm>.

### **Silas Casey's *Infantry Tactics* (1862)**

Brigadier General Silas Casey served as a division commander in the Army of the Potomac during the 1862 Peninsula campaign. After his division was routed at the battle of Seven Pines, Casey was reassigned to duties more in line with his level of competence, and spent the remainder of the War running camps of instruction for new recruits in the Military District of Washington. In August 1862, his new three-volume version of the U.S. *Infantry Tactics* was adopted by the U.S. Army as its standard infantry doctrine, replacing the 1861 U.S. *Infantry Tactics* as well as the earlier editions of Hardee's. Casey's *Tactics* was mostly a revision of Scott's *Infantry Tactics*, using the Schools of the Soldier, Company, and Skirmisher from the 1861 U.S. *Tactics*, but expanding and paying more attention to the instructions in volumes 2 and 3 (regimental, brigade, division, and (for the first time) corps tactics. Casey's *Tactics* became the basic doctrine for the U.S. Army from the autumn of 1862 until late 1866, when an updated version by Emory Upton was adopted in its stead.

The first volume of Casey's U.S. *Infantry Tactics* is posted on-line at <http://www.usregulars.com/caseyhome.html>. The first volume of Casey's (Schools of the Soldier, Company, and Skirmisher) is widely available through most sutlers, while C.J. Daley offers an authentic set of the 3-volume handbooks.

### **Modern Syntheses:**

For on-line references to most of the drill manuals and many tactical handbooks in use during the Late Unpleasantness, it's really hard to beat Leonard Jones' "Drill Network" site, at <http://home.att.net/~Cap1MD/Drill.htm>. You'll find nearly everything here except the 1862 Casey's, and I would not be surprised if ol' Leonard is quietly transcribing this one, too...

The one modern synthesis of the 1860's drill manuals that I would whole-heartedly recommend is Dominic dal Bello's work, *Parade, Inspection, and basic Evolutions of the*

*Infantry Battalion*, also referred to as "PIE" by the acronym addicts, currently in its 4th edition. Dal Bello's handbook is not a complete transcription of any of the period drill manuals; it is a focused handbook that lays out the "mission essential" maneuvers prescribed in the School of the Battalion (scaled to the size of a typical reenacting battalion) as well as selected tasks such as dress parade and inspections that are only covered in the Army Regulations. If you wear or are planning to put on shoulder straps or bars/stars, this little volume is something you should promptly memorize. Used alongside a copy of the appropriate volumes of your selected drill manual, this is an invaluable training aid in learning to form and maneuver the battalion or a company as part of a battalion.

Mark Tackitt of the 1st Confederate Division staff has compiled a handy little handbook of the school of the soldier and key maneuvers in company and battalion drill, "*Guides Posts!*", which is available on-line at <http://www.zipcon.net/~silas/guidesposts/index.htm>, or may be downloaded in Adobe PDF at <http://www.zipcon.net/~silas/Drill/mcdbooklet.htm>.

One manual to avoid at any cost is "*Heitman's Simplified Hardee's*"... which is probably the source of half of the "reenactorisms" in drill, the other half arising purely from someone's imagination. If you have this book, burn it, or donate it to the local paper recycling efforts, and get yourself a real drill manual.

If you are the sort of person who learns visually, Media Magic produced two videotape sets in 1998, *The School of the Soldier, Parts I and II*, which provide a good example of soldiers demonstrating both Hardee's and Casey's drill. These tapes usually sell for \$25 apiece at Fall Creek Suttlerly,

In the end, however, nothing can beat sitting down, reading, re-reading, and digesting the original manuals, and then practicing those lessons time and again. For that reason, and since it is so damned hard to get a copy of the "revised Hardee's" manuals, the Capitol Guards offer this edition of what could best be called the "Arkansas Drill Manual." Here we have the original text of Hardee, along with as good a graphic rendition of the Schools as we could find. Hardee's original language is in black print; our marginal (and contemporary) notes are in blue text. The manual is formatted to be printed off and placed in a 3-ring binder, and we've left room for you to make your own notes and annotations as you may wish.

Enjoy! ... and we'll see you on on the drill field...



"RIGHT SHOULDER SHIFT—ARMS!"

*Hardee's as a tactics manual does not give directions for a number of things that were presumed to be "common knowledge" -- like how to size and form the company. This method comes from Gilham's **Manual for Instruction for Volunteers and Militia**, which had to presume that common knowledge might not be common knowledge after all.*

## **MANNER OF FORMING THE COMPANY.**

216. The whole company being assembled on its parade ground, or in the rendezvous, the first, or orderly sergeant, will command:

***Fall in - COMPANY.***

At this command the corporals and privates will form in one rank, faced to the right, and in the order of height from right to left, the tallest man on the right (now head of the company), the next tallest man immediately covering the first, and so on to the left or rear of the rank, in which position will be placed the shortest man. The other sergeants will take post in the rank of file-closers, two paces the right of the company, and assist the first sergeant in forming the company.

When the men have their places, the first sergeant will command:

***FRONT.***

The second sergeant, who is the left guide of the company, will now place himself on the left of the company, and the orderly sergeant will promptly command:

***1. In two ranks, form company. 2. Left - FACE. 3. MARCH.***

At the command *left face*, the whole company will face to the left, except the guide and man on the left, who stand fast.

At the command *march*, the whole of the men who have faced to left, will step off together; the second man, counting from the left, will place himself in the rear rank, behind the man next to the guide, and face to the front; the two following men will, in like manner, on closing up, form the next file, the third man in the front, and the fourth in the rear rank behind him, and all the other men will come successively to form files, two deep, to the right of those already formed.<sup>1</sup>

*Form the company without any corporals in the rank. Once formed into two ranks, count the number of files. The first platoon should be an even number and larger than the second platoon. However, where this gets messed up is when you add the corporal on the end, because that adds a file. So, what you have to do is count the files, add two to determine the total number of files and divide the company accordingly. If you have 16 files, then you add 2 and get 18 files. That means the First Platoon will be the first 10 files and the Second will be 8 files. You recount the files of Privates, stopping at 9. That is the platoon split. Have the men in the rear rank step out one place to the right and left from the split. Push back the front rank men to the rear rank, place your corporals in slots 1, 2, 3, and 4. I place the 1 and 4 corporals first based on height (tallest and shortest, respectively), the middle two are easier to blend in.*

*Quickly recount the files to make sure you have the 10 files in the first platoon. Now you are ready to have the men count two's.*

The instructor will then cause the files to be numbered, and for this purpose will command

***In each rank - count TWOS.***

At this command the men count in each rank from right to left, pronouncing in a loud and distinct voice, in the same tone, without hurry and without turning the head, one, two, according to the place each one occupies. He will also cause the company to be divided into platoons and sections, taking care that the first platoon is always composed of an even number of files.

***RIGHT - DRESS.***

***FRONT.***

<sup>1</sup> (When the company is in good discipline, the files may be formed in two ranks at once, each man having his proper number in the company depending upon his height, and being able to take his appropriate place without creating confusion.)



## On Company Drill.

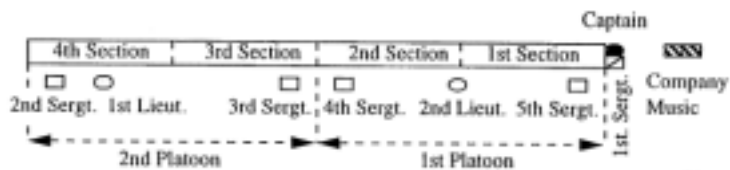
From the BELLVILLE [TX] COUNTRYMAN,  
July 3, 1861, p. 1, c. 7

– At a recent large gathering of volunteers in a Southern State, where field operations were performed as if in sight of an enemy, the general officer in command made a short speech to the men, which is very apropos just now.

”All that you have heard in the way of shooting, all your zeal and patriotism, will be of no avail in the day of battle without a thorough knowledge of company drill. Where the men in each company are steady and well drilled, the whole army will be steady and well drilled likewise. To have a battalion or brigade act like a machine is to be effected only by company drill.”

And he might have added that to have a well drilled company, each man must first go through a thorough course of drilling in the “school of a soldier,” or of equal drill. Simple as it may seem, unless each man knows how to ‘keep step’ - ‘to dress to the right’ or ‘to the left’ - ‘to face properly’ - ‘to keep proper distance in ranks’ - ‘to step the same length of step, whether in common, quick or double quick time, etc., the company cannot as a company manoeuvre correctly. Two or three deficient members spoil the appearance of an otherwise good company, and embarrass its movements.

To endeavor to drill a company, as such, ere its members have learned individually what they must know to be a good soldier, is like teaching a boy geometry before he knows what arithmetic is.



**A single company formed in line of battle, with its music and a full set of file closers. There is a 13-inch interval between file partners in the front and rear ranks; the file closers are 2 paces (58-60 inches) behind the rear rank. The music is posted 4 paces to the right of the company, the drummer on the right. Corporals post on the right and left flanks of each section. (Image from dal Bello, *Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion*, 4th Ed.)**

“After enlisting I didn’t seem of so much consequence as I expected. There was not so much excitement on account of my military appearance as I deemed justly my due. I was taught my facings, and at that time I thought the drill-master needlessly fussy about shouldering, ordering, and presenting arms. At this time men were often drilled in company and regimental evolutions long before they learned the manual of arms, because of the difficulty of obtaining muskets. These were obtained at an early day, but we willingly would have resigned them after carrying them a few hours. The musket, after an hour’s drill, seemed heavier and less ornamental than it had looked to be. The first day I went out to drill, getting tired of doing the same things over and over, I said to the drill-sergeant: “Let’s stop this fooling and go over to the grocery.”

His only reply was addressed to the corporal: “Corporal, take this man out and drill him like hell.”; and the corporal did. I found that suggestions were not as well appreciated in the army as in private life, and that no wisdom was equal to a drill-master’s “Right Face” “Left wheel” and “Right, oblique march”.

—Warren Goss  
2nd Mass. Artillery  
*Recollections of an Army Private*

THE ONLY COPY-RIGHT EDITION

**RIFLE**

**AND**

**INFANTRY**

**TACTICS,**

REVISED AND IMPROVED

BY

**Brig. Gen. W.J. Hardee, C.S. Army**

[THIRD EDITION]

**VOL. I.**  
**SCHOOLS OF THE SOLDIER AND COMPANY;**  
**INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS**

**MOBILE :**  
**S. H. GOETZEL & CO.**

**FIRST YEAR**  
**OF THE CONFEDERACY**

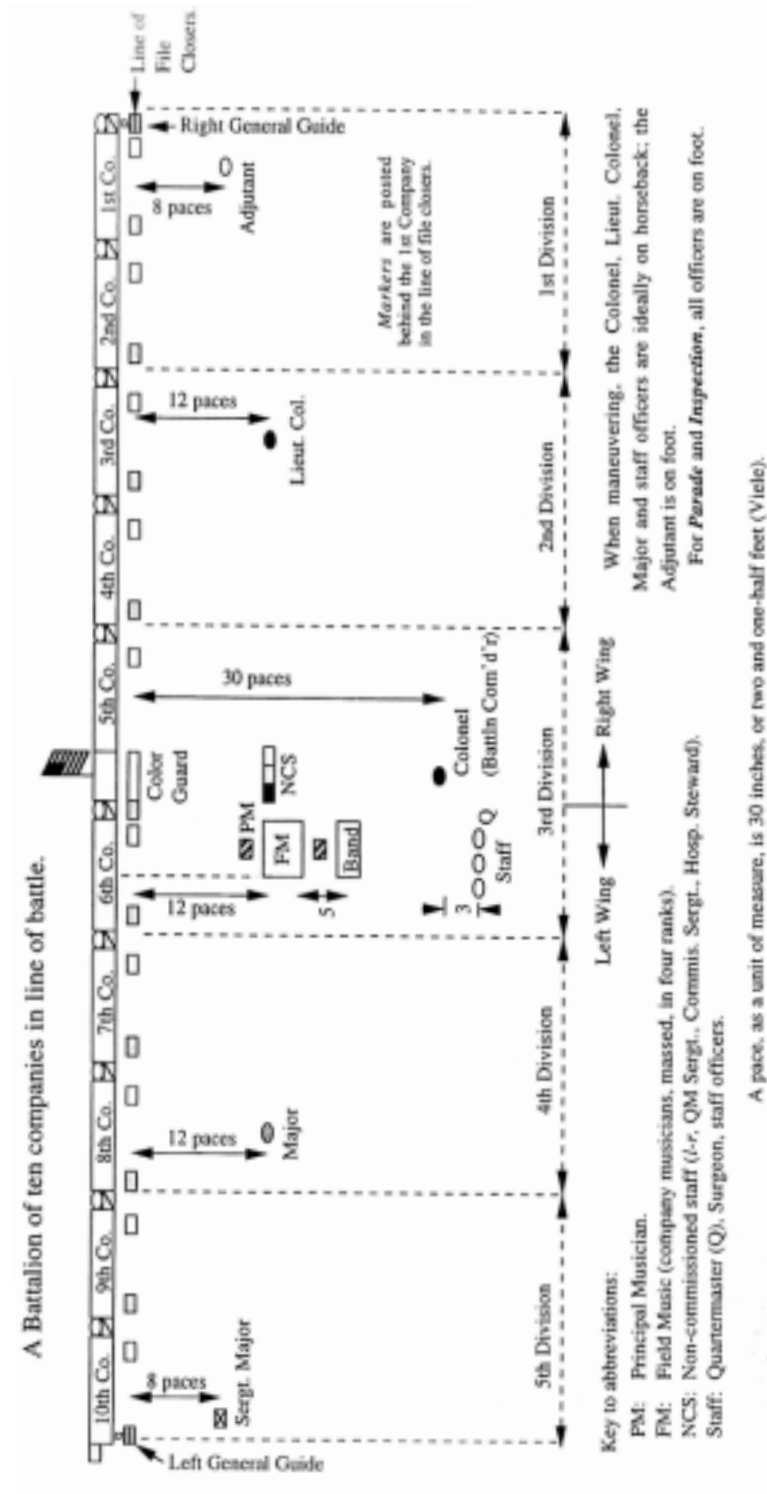
**NOTICE.**

*So many editions of my "INFANTRY AND RIFLE TACTICS" having lately been published, I think it due to both the Public and Publishers to state:*

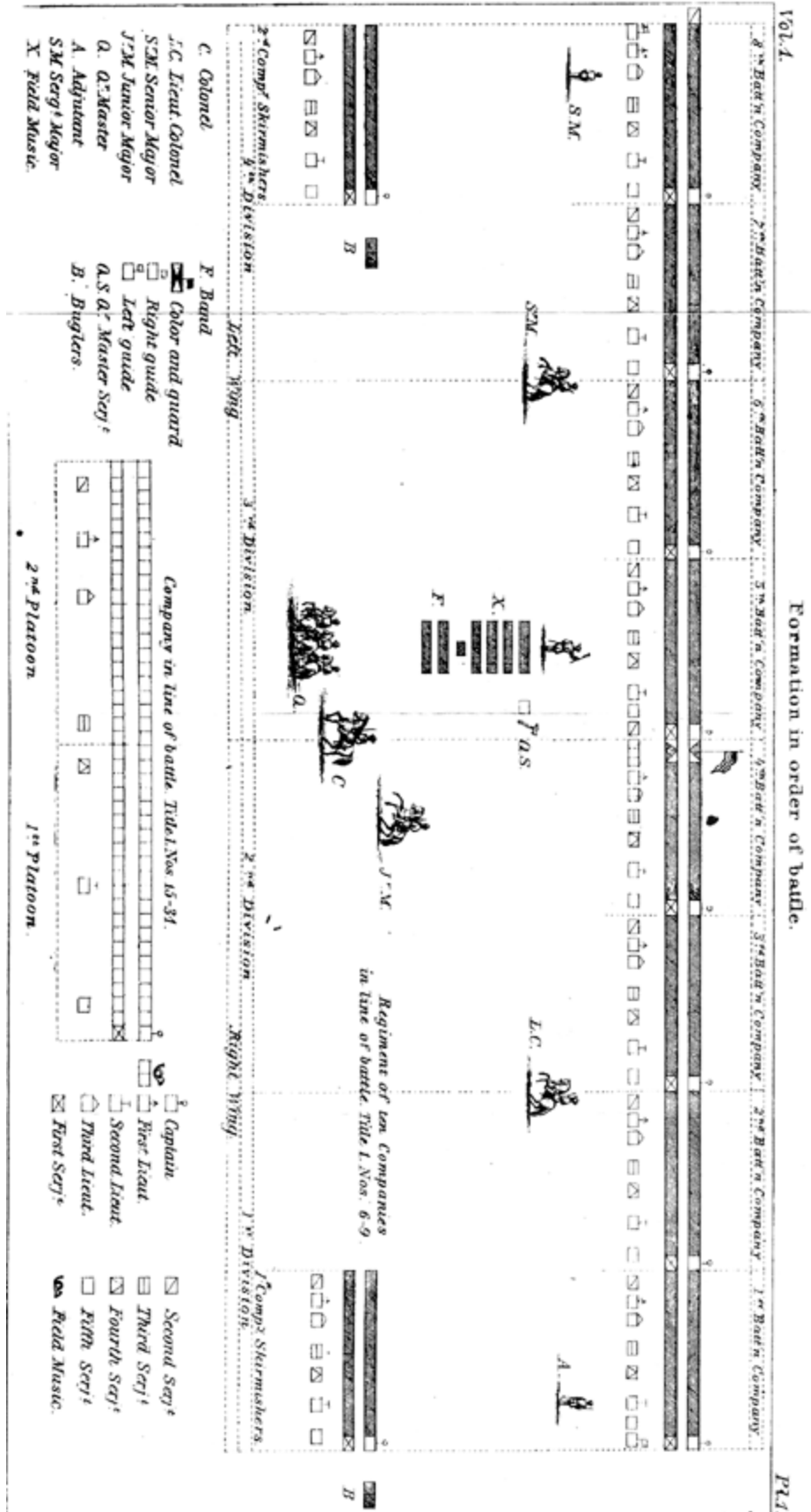
*That the COPYRIGHT EDITION of my INFANTRY and RIFLE TACTICS, published by S.H. GOETZEL & CO., in Mobile, is the only COMPLETE, CORRECT, AND REVISED EDITION, and THIS EDITION ONLY contains the IMPROVEMENTS AND CHANGES which I have recently made, adapting the manual to the use of the arms generally in the hands of the troops of the Confederate States.*

W.J. HARDEE  
Colonel, Confederate States Army

FORT MORGAN, June 18th, 1861



From Dom dal Bello, *Parade, Inspection, and Basic Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion*, 4th Ed. Army of the Pacific Press, 1998.



A regiment and a company in line of battle -- from Casey's U.S. Infantry Tactics (1862).

The symbols used here are the same as used in the diagrams in School of the Company and School of the Battalion in the following pages.

If the main organizational element of the 1860s was the regiment, why do all the drill manuals refer to a "battalion"?

Scott's, and later Hardee's tactics were translations of French manuals, the first being the tactics so successfully used by Napoleon, the latter incorporating improvements and lessons learned by the French campaigns in North Africa in the late 1840s. Hardee's **Rifle and Infantry Tactics** is principally based on a translation of the French **Ordonnance du Roi sur l'Exercice et les Manoeuvres des Battalions de Chasseurs a Pied**.

While the fundamental unit of the U.S. Army was the regiment, that of the French was the battalion. U.S. Army regiments had ten companies each, a French battalion only eight. American companies had two platoons, French companies had seven platoons, plus a platoon of carbiniers. The French term "battalion" is used consistently throughout both Scott's, Hardee's, and later Casey's and Upton's drill manuals. While Hardee made a rather thorough transformation of the French doctrine to suit American organization, a close reading of Scott's **Evolutions of the Line** will occasionally give instructions to "rally on the grenadiers."

# RIFLE AND INFANTRY TACTICS.

---

## TITLE FIRST.

---

## ARTICLE FIRST.

### *Formation of a Regiment in order of battle, or in line.*

1. A **REGIMENT** is composed of ten *companies*, which will habitually be posted from right to left, in the following order: first, sixth, fourth, ninth, third, eighth, fifth, tenth, seventh, second, according to the rank of captains.
2. With a less number of companies the same principle will be observed, viz.: the first captain will command the right company, the second captain the left company, the third captain the right center company, and so on.
3. The companies thus posted will be designated from right to left, *first* company, *second* company, &c. This designation will be observed in the manoeuvres.
4. The first two companies on the right, whatever their denomination, will form the *first division*; the next two companies the *second division*; and so on, to the left.
5. Each company will be divided into two equal parts, which will, be designated as the first and second platoon, counting from the right; and each platoon, in like manner, will be subdivided into two sections.
6. In all exercises and manoeuvres, every regiment, or part of a regiment, composed of two or more companies, will be designated as a battalion.
7. The color, with a guard to be hereinafter designated, will be posted on the left of the right centre battalion company. That company, and all on its right, will be denominated the right wing of the battalion; the remaining companies the left wing.
8. The formation of a regiment is in two ranks; and each company will be formed into two ranks, in the following manner: the corporals will be posted in the front rank, and on the right and left of platoons, according to height; the tallest corporal and the tallest man will form the first file, the next two tallest men will form the second file, and so on to the last file, which will be composed of the shortest corporal and the shortest man.
9. The odd and even files, numbered as one, two, in the company, from right to left, will form groups of four men, who will be designated *comrades in battle*.
10. The distance from one rank to another will be thirteen inches, measured from the breasts of the rear rank men to the backs or knapsacks of the front rank men.
11. For manoeuvring, the companies of a battalion will always be equalized, by transferring men from the strongest to the weakest companies.

### *Post of Company Officers, Sergeants and Corporals.*

12. The company officers and sergeants are nine in number, and will be posted in the following manner:
13. The *captain* on the right of the company touching with the left elbow.
14. The *first sergeant* in the rear rank, touching with the left elbow and covering the captain. In the manoeuvres he will be denominated *covering sergeant*, or *right guide* of the company.
15. The remaining officers and sergeants will be posted as file closers, and two paces behind the rear rank.
16. The *first lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the fourth section.
17. The *second lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the first platoon.
18. The *third lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the second platoon.
19. The *second sergeant*, opposite the second file from the left of the company. In

the manoeuvres he will be designated left guide of the company.

20. The *third sergeant*, opposite the second file from the right of the second platoon.

21. The *fourth sergeant*, opposite the second file from the left of the first platoon.

22. The *fifth sergeant*, opposite the second file from the right of the first platoon.

23. In the left or tenth company of the battalion, the second sergeant will be posted in the front rank and on the left of the battalion.

24. The corporals will be posted in the front rank, as prescribed in No. 8.

25. Absent officers and sergeants will be replaced -- officers by sergeants, and sergeants by corporals. The colonel may detach a first lieutenant from one company to command another, of which both the captain and first lieutenant are absent; but this authority will give no right to a lieutenant to demand to be so detached.

### *Posts of Field Officers and Regimental Staff.*

26. The field officers, colonel, lieutenant colonel and major are supposed to be mounted, and on active service shall be on horseback. The adjutant, when the battalion is manoeuvring, will be on foot.

27. The colonel will take post thirty paces in rear of the file closers, and opposite the centre of the battalion. This distance will be reduced whenever there is a reduction in the front of the battalion.

28. The lieutenant colonel and the major will be opposite the centres of the right and left wings respectively, and twelve paces in rear of the file closers.

29. The adjutant and sergeant major will be opposite the right and left of the battalion, respectively, and eight paces in rear of the file closers.

30. The adjutant and sergeant major will aid the lieutenant colonel and major, respectively, in the manoeuvres.

31. The colonel, if absent, will be replaced by the lieutenant colonel, and the latter by the major. If all the field officers be absent, the senior captain will command the battalion; but if either be present, he will not call the senior captain to act as field officer, except in care of evident necessity.

32. The quartermaster, surgeon, and other staff officers, in one rank, on the left of the colonel, and three paces in his rear.

33. The quartermaster sergeant, on a line with the front rank of the field music, and two paces on the right.

### *Posts of Field Music, and Band.*

34. The buglers will be drawn up in four ranks, and posted twelve paces in rear of the file closers- the left opposite the centre of the left centre company. The senior principal musician will be two paces in front of the field music, and the other two paces in the rear.

35. The regimental band, if there be one, will be drawn up in two or four ranks, according to its numbers, and posted five paces in rear of the field music, having one of the principal musicians at its head.

### *Color-guard.*

36. In each battalion the color-guard will be composed of eight corporals, and posted on the left of the right centre company, of which company, for the time being, the guard will make a part.

37. The front rank will be composed of a sergeant, to be selected by the colonel, who will be called, for the time, color-bearer, with the two ranking corporals, respectively, on his right and left; the rear rank will be composed of the three corporals next in rank; and the three remaining corporals will be posted in their rear, and on the line of file closers. The left guide of the color-company, when these three last named corporals are in the rank of file closers, will be immediately on their left.

38. In battalions with less than five companies present, there will be no color-guard, and no display of colors, except it may be at reviews.

39. The corporals for the color-guard will be selected from those most distinguished for regularity and precision, as well in their positions under arms as in their marching.

*The color guard counts twos, doubles with, and otherwise acts as a part of the Color company. The left guide of the color company posts to the left of the color guard. The color guard is always, without exception, three men wide. If two colors are carried, the Color Sergeant carries a musket and the two color corporals to either side each carry a color, the National Color always on the right.*

The latter advantage, and a just carriage of the person, are to be more particularly sought for in the selection of the color-bearer.

*General Guides.*

40. There will be two general guides in each battalion, selected, for the time, by the colonel, from among the sergeants (other than first sergeants) the most distinguished for carriage under arms, and accuracy in marching.

41. These sergeants will be respectively denominated, in the manoeuvres, right general guide, and left general guide, and be posted in the line of file closers; the first in rear of the right, and the second in rear of the left flank of the battalion.

**ARTICLE SECOND**

*Instruction of the Battalion.*

42. Every commanding officer is responsible for the instruction of his command. He will assemble the officers together for theoretical and practical instruction as often as he may judge necessary, and when unable to attend to this duty in person, it will be discharged by the officer next in rank.

43. Captains will be held responsible for the theoretical and practical instruction of their non-commissioned officers, and the adjutant for the instruction of the non-commissioned staff. To this end, they will require these tactics to be studied and recited lesson by lesson; and when instruction is given on the ground, each non-commissioned officer, as he explains a movement, should be required to put it into practical operation.

44. The non-commissioned officers should also be practiced in giving commands. Each command, in a lesson at the theoretical instruction, should first be given by the instructor, and then repeated in succession, by the non-commissioned officers, so that while they become habituated to the commands, uniformity may be established in the manner of giving them.

45. In the school of the soldier, the company officers will be the instructors of the squads; but if there be not a sufficient number of company officers present, intelligent sergeants may be substituted; and two or three squads, under sergeant instructors, be superintended, at the same time, by an officer.

46. In the school of the company, the lieutenant-colonel and the major, under the colonel, will be the principal instructors, substituting frequently the captain of the company, and sometimes one of the lieutenants; the substitute, as far as practicable, being superintended by one of the principals.

47. In the school of the battalion, the brigadier general may constitute himself the principal instructor, frequently substituting the colonel of the battalion, sometimes the lieutenant colonel or major, and twice or thrice, in the same course of instruction, each of the three senior captains. In this school, also, the substitute will always, if practicable, be superintended by the brigadier general or the colonel, or (in case of a captain being the instructor), by the lieutenant colonel or major.

48. Individual instruction being the basis of the instruction of companies, on which that of the regiment depends, and the first principles having the greatest influence upon this individual instruction, classes of recruits should be watched with the greatest care.

49. Instructors will explain, in a few clear and precise words, the movement to be executed; and not to overburden the memory of the men, they will always use the same terms to explain the same principles.

50. They should often join example to precept, should keep up the attention of the men by an animated tone, and pass rapidly from one movement to another, as soon as that which they command has been executed in a satisfactory manner.

51. The bayonet should only be fixed when required to be used, either for attack or defense; the exercises and manoeuvres will be executed without the bayonet.



52. In the movements which require the bayonet to be fixed, the chief of the battalion will cause the signal to *fix bayonet* to be sounded; at this signal the men will fix bayonets without command, and immediately replace their pieces in the position they were before the signal.

#### *Instruction of Officers.*

53. The instruction of officers can be perfected only by joining theory to practice. The colonel will often practice them in marching and estimating distances, and he will carefully endeavor to cause them to take steps equal in length and swiftness. They will also be exercised in the double quick step.

54. The instruction of officers will include all the Titles in this system of drill, and such regulations as prescribe their duties in peace and war.

55. Every officer will make himself perfectly acquainted with the bugle signals; and should, by practice, be enabled, if necessary, to sound them. This knowledge, so necessary in general instruction, becomes of vital importance on actual service in the field.

#### *Instruction of Sergeants.*

56. As the discipline and efficiency of a company materially depend on the conduct and character of its sergeants, they should be selected with care, and properly instructed in all the duties appertaining to their rank.

57. Their theoretical instruction should include the School of the Soldier, the School of the Company, and the Drill for Skirmishers. They should likewise know all the details of service, and the regulations prescribing their duties in garrison and in campaign.

58. The captain selects from the corporals in his company those whom he judges fit to be admitted to the theoretical instruction of the sergeants.

#### *Instruction of Corporals.*

59. Their theoretical instruction should include the School of the Soldier, and such regulations as prescribe their duties in garrison and in campaign.

60. The captain selects from his company a few privates, who may be admitted to the theoretical instruction of the corporals.

61. As the instruction of sergeants and corporals is intended principally to qualify them for the instruction of the privates, they should be taught not only to execute, but to explain intelligibly everything they may be required to teach.

#### *Commands.*

There are three kinds.

62. The command of *caution*, which is *attention*.

63. The *preparatory command*, which indicates the movement which is to be executed.

64. The command of *execution*, such as *march* or *halt*, or, in the manual of arms, the part of command which causes an execution

65. The tone of the command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men under instruction.

66. The command attention is pronounced at the top of the voice, dwelling on the last syllable.

67. The command of execution will be pronounced in a tone firm and brief.

68. The commands of caution and the preparatory commands are herein distinguished by *italics*, those of execution by CAPITALS.

69. Those preparatory commands which, from their length, are difficult to be pronounced at once, must be divided into two or three parts, with an ascending progression in the tone of command, but always in such a manner that the tone of execution may be more energetic and elevated; the divisions are indicated by a hyphen. The parts of commands which are placed in a parenthesis, are not pronounced.

*TITLE SECOND.*

---

**SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.**

*General Rules and division of the School of the Soldier.*

70. The object of this school being the individual and progressive instruction of the recruits, the instructor never requires a movement to be executed until he has given an exact explanation of it; and he executes, himself, the movement which he commands, so as to join example to precept. He accustoms the recruit to take, by himself, the position which is explained - teaches him to rectify it only when required by his want of intelligence - and sees that all the movements are performed without precipitation.

71. Each movement should be understood before passing to another. After they have been properly executed in the order laid down in each lesson, the instructor no longer confines himself to that order; on the contrary, he should change it, that he may judge of the intelligence of the men.

72. The instructor allows the men to rest at the end of each part of the lessons, and oftener, if he thinks proper, especially at the commencement; for this purpose he commands *REST*.

73. At the command *REST*, the soldier is no longer required to preserve immobility, or to remain in his place. If the instructor wishes merely to relieve the attention of the recruit, he commands, *in place-REST*; the soldier is then not required to preserve his immobility, but he always keeps one of his feet in its place.

74. When the instructor wishes to commence the instruction, he commands - *ATTENTION*; at this command the soldier takes his position, remains motionless, and fixes his attention.

75. The School of the Soldier will be divided into three parts: the first, comprehending what ought to be taught to recruits without arms; the second the manual of arms, the loadings and firings; the third, the principles of alignment, the march by the front, the different steps, the march by the flank, the principles of wheeling and those of change of direction; also, long marches in double quick time and the run,

76. Each part will be divided into lessons, as follows:

**PART FIRST.**

Lesson 1. Position of the soldier without arms; Eyes right, left and front.

Lesson 2. Facings.

Lesson 3. Principles of the direct step in common and quick time.

Lesson 4. Principles of the direct step in double quick time and the run.

**PART SECOND**

Lesson 1. Principles of shouldered arms.

Lesson 2. Manual of arms.

Lesson 3. To load in four times and at will.

Lesson 4. Firings, direct, oblique, by file and by rank.

Lesson 5. To fire and load, kneeling and lying.

Lesson 6. Bayonet exercise.

## PART THIRD.

Lesson 1. Union of eight or twelve men for instruction in the principles of alignment.

Lesson 2. The direct march, the oblique march, and the different steps.

Lesson 3. The march by the flank.

Lesson 4. Principles of wheeling and change of direction.

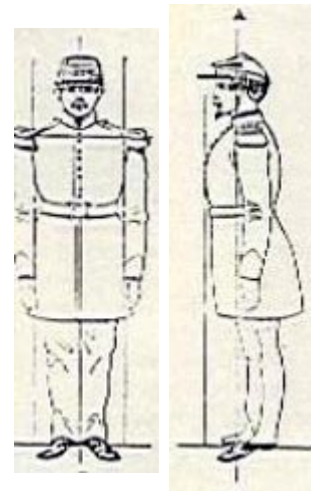
Lesson 5. Long marches in double quick time, and the run, with arms and knapsacks.

77. This will be taught, if practicable, to one recruit at a time; but three or four may be united, when the number be great, compared with that of the instructors. In this case the recruits will be placed in a single rank, at one pace from each other. In this part, the recruit will be without arms.

**LESSON I.*****Position of the Soldier.***

78. Heels on the same line, as near each other as the conformation of the man will permit;

- The feet turned out equally, and forming with each other something less than a right angle;
- The knees straight without stiffness
- The body erect on the hips, inclining a little forward;
- The shoulders square and falling equally;
- The arms hanging naturally;
- The elbows near the body;
- The palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons;
- The head erect and square to the front, without constraint;
- The chin near the stock, without covering it;
- The eyes fixed straight to the front, and striking the ground about the distance of fifteen paces.



*The Position of the Soldier, front and side views.*

***Remarks on the Position of the Soldier.***

*Heels on the same line;*

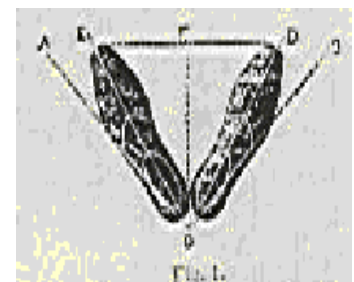
79. Because, if one were in the rear of the other, the shoulder on that side would be thrown back, or the position of the soldier would be constrained.

*Heels more or less closed;*

Because, men who are knock-kneed, or who have legs with large calves, cannot, without constraint, make their heels touch while standing.

*The feet equally turned out, and not forming too large an angle;*

Because, if one foot were turned out more than the other, a shoulder would be deranged, and if both feet be too much turned out, it would not be practicable to incline the upper part of the body forward without rendering the whole position unsteady.



*The position of the feet at the Position of the Soldier, Order Arms, Shoulder Arms, &c.*

*Knees extended without stiffness;*

Because, if stiffened, constraint and fatigue would be unavoidable.

*The body erect on the hips;*

Because, it gives equilibrium to the position. The instructor will observe that many recruits have the bad habit of dropping a shoulder, of drawing in a side, or of advancing a hip, particularly the right, when under arms. These are defects he will labor to correct.

*The upper part of the body inclining forward;*

Because, commonly, recruits are disposed to do the reverse, to project the belly and to throw back the shoulders, when they wish to hold themselves erect, from which result great inconveniences in marching. The habit of inclining forward the upper part of the body is so important to contract, that the instructor must enforce it at the beginning, particularly with recruits who have naturally the opposite habit.

*Shoulders square;*

Because if the shoulders be advanced beyond the line of the breast, and the back arched (the defect called round-shouldered, not uncommon with recruits,) the man cannot align himself, nor use his piece with address. It is important, then, to correct this defect, and necessary to that end that the coat should set easy about the shoulders and arm pits; but in correcting this defect, the instructor should take care that the shoulders be not thrown too much to the rear, which would cause the belly to project, and the small of the back to be, curved.

*The arms hanging naturally, elbows near the body, the palm of the hand a little turned to the front, the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons;*

Because these positions are equally important to the shoulder arms, and to prevent the man from occupying more space in a rank than is necessary to it free use of the piece; they have, moreover, the advantage of keeping in the shoulders.

*The face straight to the front, and without constraint;*

Because, if there be stiffness in the latter position, it would communicate itself to the whole of the upper part of the body, embarrass its movements and give pain and fatigue.

*Eyes direct to the front;*

Because, this is the surest means of maintaining the shoulders in line- an essential object, to be insisted on and attained.

80. The instructor having given the recruit the position of the soldier, without arms, will now teach him the turning of the head and eyes. He will command:

**1. Eyes- RIGHT 2. FRONT.**

81. At the word *right*, the recruit will turn the head gently, so as to bring the inner corner of the left eye in a line with the buttons of the coat, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank.

82. At the second command the head will resume the direct or habitual position.

83. The movement of *Eyes - LEFT* will be executed by inverse means.

84. The instructor will take particular care that the movement of the head does not derange the squareness of the shoulders, which will happen if the movement of the former be too sudden.

85. When the instructor shall wish the recruit to pass from the state of attention to that of ease, he will command:

*REST.*

86. To cause a resumption of the habitual position, the instructor will command:

*1. Attention. 2. SQUAD.*

87. At the first word, the recruit will fix his attention; at the second, he will resume the prescribed position and steadiness.

## LESSON II.

### Facings.

88. Facings to the right or left will be executed in one time, or pause. The instructor will command:

*1. Squad. 2. Right (or left) -FACE.*

89. At the second command, raise the right foot slightly, turn on the left heel raising the toes a little, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left, and on the same line.

90. The full face to the rear (or front) will be executed in two times, or pauses. The instructor will command:

*1. Squad. 2. ABOUT -FACE.*

91. (*First time.*) At the word about, the recruit will turn on left heel, bring the left toe to the front, carry the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to, and full three inches from, the left heel, the feet square to each other.

92. (*Second time.*) At the word face, the recruit will turn on both heels, raise the toes a little, extend the hams, face to the rear, bringing, at the same time, the right heel by the side of the left.

93. The instructor will take care that these motions do not derange the position of the body.

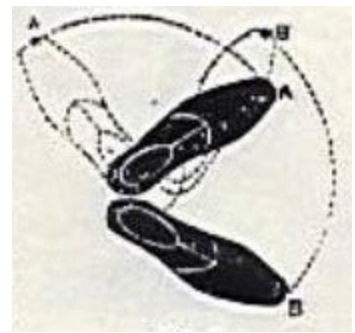
## LESSON III.

### Principles of the Direct Step.

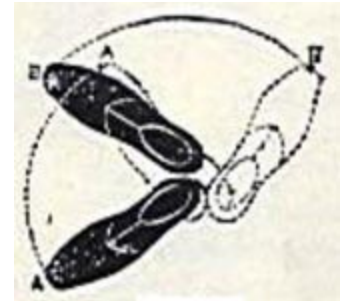
94. The length of the **direct step**, or pace in common time, will be twenty-eight inches, reckoning from heel to heel, and, in swiftness, at the rate of ninety in a minute.

95. The instructor, seeing the recruit confirmed in his position, will explain to him the principle and mechanism of this step -- placing himself six or seven paces from and facing to the recruit. He will himself execute slowly the step in the way of illustration, and then command:

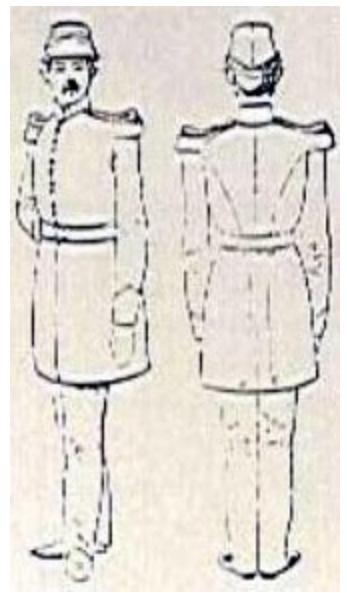
*1. Squad, forward. 2. Common time. 3. MARCH.*



The foot movements at "Right-Face."



The foot movements at "Left-Face."



"ABOUT -FACE": 1st movement (left); 2nd movement (right).



The foot movements at "About-Face."

**Watch Your Intervals...**

**At The Halt:** The interval between the ranks is **13 inches**. (If knapsacks are worn, then the interval is still 13 inches from the back of the file leader's knapsack.)

**At Quick Time:** The ranks should open up to **16 inches**. The soldier will take a **28 inch step**, and its swiftness is at the rate of **110 steps per minute**.

**At Double Quick Step:** The ranks should open up to **26 inches**. The soldier will take a **33 inch step**, and its swiftness is at the rate of **165 steps per minute**.

**At Route Step:** The ranks should open up to **28 inches** (one pace). The soldier will take a **28 inch step**, and while the route step is not a cadenced pace (e.g., the men do not march in step with each other, but at ease) its swiftness is still at the rate of **110 steps per minute**.

*Keeping the proper interval between the ranks is a key safety issue, especially in the firings. While many reenacting hints prescribe "keeping the front rank man's ear centered between the lower and middle bands of the rear rank man's rifle at the position of Aim, the tactics manuals do not address it in this way -- they simply specify the 13-inch interval between the front and rear ranks. If the proper interval is maintained, the rear rank's muzzles will be where they should be.*

96. At the first command, the recruit will throw the weight of the body on the right leg, without bending the left knee.

97. At the third command, he will smartly, but without a jerk, carry straight forward the left foot twenty-eight inches from the right, the sole near the ground, the ham extended, the toe a little depressed, and, as also the knee slightly turned out; he will, at the same time, throw the weight of the body forward, and plant flat the left foot, without shock, precisely at the distance where it finds itself from the right when the weight of the body is brought forward, the whole of which will now rest on the advanced foot. The recruit will next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above, the heel twenty-eight inches from the heel of the left foot, and thus continue to march without crossing the legs, or striking the one against the other, without turning the shoulders and preserving always the face direct to the front.

98. When the instructor shall wish to arrest the march, he will command:

**1. Squad. 2. HALT.**

99. At the second command, which will be given at the instant when either foot is coming to the ground, the foot in the rear will be brought up, and planted by the side of the other, without shock.

100. The instructor will indicate, from time to time, to the recruit the cadence of the step, by giving the command one at the instant of raising a foot, and two at the instant it ought to be planted, observing the cadence of ninety steps in a minute. This method will contribute greatly to impress upon the mind the two motions into which the step is naturally divided.

101. Common time will be employed only in the first and second parts of the School of the Soldier. As soon as the recruit has acquired steadiness, has become established in the principles of shoulder arms and in the mechanism, length and swiftness of the stop in common time, he will be practiced only in quick time, the double quick time, and the run.

102. The principles of the stop in quick time are the same as for common time, but its swiftness is at the rate of one hundred and ten steps per minute.

103. The instructor wishing the squad to march in **quick time**, will command:

**1. Squad, forward 2. MARCH.****Lesson IV.****Principles of the Double Quick Step.**

104. The length of the double quick step is thirty-three inches, and its swiftness at the rate of one hundred and sixty-five steps per minute.

105. The instructor wishing to teach the recruits the principles and mechanism of the double quick step, will command:

**1. Double Quick Step. 2. MARCH.**

106. At the first command, the recruit will raise his hands to a level with his hips, the hands closed, the nails toward the body, the elbows to the rear.

107. At the second command, he will raise to the front his left leg bent, in order to give to the knee the greatest elevation, the part of the leg between the knee and the instep vertical, the toe depressed; he will then replace his foot in its former position with the right leg he will then execute what has just been prescribed for the left, and the alternate movement of the legs will be continued until the command:

**1. Squad. 2. HALT.**

108. At the second command, the recruit will bring the foot which is raised by the side of the other and dropping at the same time his hands by his side, will resume the position of the soldier without arms.

109. The instructor placing himself seven or eight paces from., and facing the recruit, will indicate the cadence by the commands, one and two, given alternately at the instant each foot should be brought to the ground, which at first it will be in common time, but its rapidity will be gradually augmented.

110. The recruit being sufficiently established in the principles of this step, the instructor will command.

*1. Squad, forward. 2. Double Quick. 3. MARCH.*

111. At the first command, the recruit will throw the weight of his body on the right leg.

112. At the second command, he will place his arms as indicated No. 106.

113. At the third command he will carry forward the left foot, the leg slightly bent, the knee somewhat raised will plant his left foot, the toe first, thirty-three inches from the right, and with the right foot will then execute what has just been prescribed for the left. This alternate movement of the legs will take place by throwing the weight of the body on the foot that is planted, and by allowing a natural, oscillatory motion to the arms.

114. The double quick step may be executed with different degrees of swiftness. Under urgent circumstances the, cadence of this step may be increased to one hundred and eighty per minute. At this rate a distance of four thousand yards would be passed over in about twenty-five minutes.

115. The recruits will be exercised also in running.

116. The principles are the same as for the double quick step, the only difference consisting in a greater degree of swiftness.

117. It is recommended in marching at double quick time, or the run, that the men should breathe as much as possible through the nose, keeping the mouth closed. Experience has proved that, by conforming to this principle, a man can pass over at much longer distance and with less fatigue.

***PART SECOND.***

**GENERAL RULES**

118. The instructor will not pass the men to this second part until they shall be well established in the position of the body, and in the manner of marching at the different steps

119. He will then unite four men, whom he will place in the same rank, elbow to elbow, and instruct them in the position of shoulder arms, as follows

***LESSON I.***

***Principles of Shoulder Arms***

120. The recruit being placed as explained in the first lesson of the first part, the instructor will cause him to bend the right arm slightly, and place the piece in it, in the following manner:

121. The piece in the right hand – the barrel nearly vertical and resting in the hollow of the shoulder – the guard to the front, the arm hanging nearly at its full length near the body; the thumb, and fore-finger embracing the guard, the remaining fingers closed together, and grasping the swell of the stock just under the cock, which rests on the little finger.



SHOULDER ARMS

122. Recruits are frequently seen with natural defects in the conformation of the shoulders, breast and hips. These the instructor will labor to correct in the lessons without arms, and afterwards, by steady endeavors, so that the appearance of the places, in the same line, may be uniform, and this without constraint to the men in their positions.

123. The instructor will have occasion to remark that recruits, on first bearing arms, are liable to derange their position by lowering the right shoulder and the right hand, or by sinking the hip and spreading out the elbows.

124. He will be careful to correct all these faults by continually rectifying the position; he will sometimes take away the piece to replace it the better; he will avoid fatiguing the recruits too much in the beginning, but labor by degrees to render this position so natural and easy that they may remain in it a long time without fatigue.

125. Finally, the instructor will take great care that the piece, at a shoulder, be not carried too high nor too low; if too high, the right elbow would spread out, the soldier would occupy too much space in his rank, and the piece be made to waver; if too low, the files would be too much closed, the soldier would not have the necessary space to handle his piece with facility, the right arm would become too much fatigued, and would draw down the shoulder.

126. The instructor, before passing to the second lesson, will cause to be repeated the movements of eyes right, left, and front, and the facings.

## *Lesson II.*

### *Manual of Arms.*

127. The manual of arms will be taught to four men, placed, at first, in one rank; elbow to elbow, and afterwards in two ranks.

128. Each command will be executed in one time (or pause), but this time will be divided into motions, the better to make known the mechanism.

129. The rate (or swiftness) of each motion, in the manual of arms, with the exceptions herein indicated, is fixed at the ninetieth part of a minute; but, in order not to fatigue the attention, the instructor will, at first, look more particularly to the execution of the motions, without requiring a nice observance of the cadence, to which he will bring the recruits progressively, and after they shall have become a little familiarized with the handling of the piece.

130. As the motions relative to the cartridge, to the rammer and to the fixing and unfixing of the bayonet, cannot be executed at the rate prescribed, nor even with a uniform swiftness, they will not be subjected to that cadence. The instructor will, however labor to cause these motions to be executed with promptness, and above all, with regularity.

131. The last syllable of the command will decide the brisk execution of the first motion of each time (or pause). The commands two, three, and four, will decide the brisk execution of the other motions. As soon as the recruits shall well comprehend the positions of the several motions of a time, they will be taught to execute the time without resting on its different motions; the mechanism of the time will nevertheless be observed, as well to give a perfect use of the piece, as to avoid the sinking of, or slurring over either of the motions.

132. The manual of arms will be taught in the following progression: The instructor will command:

### *Support- ARMS.*

#### *One time and three motions.*

133. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece, with the right hand, perpendicularly to the front and between the eyes, the barrel to the rear; seize the piece with the left hand



at the lower hand, raise this hand as high as the chin, and seize the piece at the same time with the right hand four inches below the cock.

134. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel to the front; carry the piece to the left shoulder, and pass the fore-arm extended on the breast between the right hand and the cock; support the cock against the left fore-arm, the left hand resting on the right breast.

135. (*Third motion.*) Drop the right hand by the side.

136. When the instructor may wish to give repose in this position, he will command

**REST.**

137. At this command, the recruits will bring up smartly the right hand to the handle of the piece (small of the stock), when they will not be required to preserve silence, or steadiness of position.

138. When the instructor may wish the recruits to pass from this position to that of silence and steadiness, he will command:

**1. Attention. 2. SQUAD.**

139. At the second word., the recruits will resume the position of the third motion of support arms

**Shoulder- ARMS.**

*One time and three motions.*

140. (*First motion.*) Grasp the piece with the right hand under and against the left fore-arm; seize it with the left hand at the lower band, the thumb extended; detach the piece slightly from the shoulder, the left fore-arm along the stock.

141. (*Second motion.*) Carry the piece vertically to the right shoulder with both hands, the rammer to the front, change the position of the right hand so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and fore-finger, slip the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined, the right arm nearly straight.

142. (*Third motion.*) Drop the right hand quickly by the side.

**Present- ARMS**

*One time and two motions.*

143. (*First motion.*) With the right hand bring the piece erect before the centre of the body, the rammer to the front; at the same time seize the piece with the left hand half-way between the guide sight and lower band, the thumb extended along the barrel and against the stock, the fore-arm horizontal and resting against the body, the hand as high as the elbow.

144. (*Second motion.*) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand below and against the guard.

**Shoulder- ARMS.**

*One time and two motions.*

145. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece to the right shoulder, at the same time change the position of the right hand so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and fore-finger, slip up the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined, the right arm nearly straight.

146. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

**Order- ARMS.**



**SUPPORT ARMS**



**PRESENT ARMS**



ORDER ARMS

*One time and two motions.*

147. (*First motion.*) Seize the piece briskly with the left hand near the upper band, and detach it slightly from the shoulder with the right hand; loosen the grasp of the right hand, lower the piece with the left, re seize the piece with the right hand above the lower band, the little finger in rear of the barrel, the butt about four inches from the ground, the right hand supported against the hip, drop the left hand by the side.

148. (*Second motion.*) Let the piece slip through the right hand to the ground by opening slightly the fingers, and take the position about to be described.

**Position of order arms.**

149. The hand low, the barrel between the thumb and fore-finger extended along the stock; the other fingers extended and joined; the muzzle about two inches from the right shoulder; the rammer in front; the toe (or beak) of the butt, against, and in a line with, the toe of the right foot, the barrel perpendicular.

150. When the instructor may wish to give repose in this position, he will command:

**REST.**

151. At this command, the recruits will not be required to preserve silence or steadiness.

152. When the instructor may wish the recruits to pass from this position to that of silence and steadiness, he will command:

**1. Attention. 2. SQUAD.**

153. At the second word, the recruits will resume the position of order arms.

**Shoulder- ARMS.**

*One time and two motions.*

154. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece vertically with the right hand to the height of the right breast, and opposite the shoulder, the elbow close to the body; seize the piece with the left hand below the right, and drop quickly the right hand to grasp the piece at the swell of the stock, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard; press the piece against the shoulder with the left hand, the right arm nearly straight.

155. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

**Load in nine times.**

**1. LOAD.\***

156. (*First motion.*) Same as the first position of present arms No. 143.

(*Second motion.*) Carry the piece to the left side with the left hand -- butt upon the ground -- barrel to the front -- piece inclined to the right and front resting upon the left thigh, muzzle six inches in front of the centre of the body--right hand grasping the piece just below the upper band, and left hand extended upon the piece.

(*Third motion.*) Seize the piece with the left hand at the muzzle and carry the right hand to the cartridge box.

**2. Handle-CARTRIDGE.**

*One time and one motion.*



LOAD

\* Whenever the loadings and firings are to be executed, the instructor will cause the cartridge box to be brought to the front.

157. Seize the cartridge with the thumb and next two fingers, and place it between the teeth.

### 3. Tear-CARTRIDGE.

*One time and one motion.*

158. Tear the paper to the powder, hold the cartridge upright between the thumb and first two fingers, near the top; in this position place it in front of and near the muzzle- the back of the hand to the front.

### 4. Charge- CARTRIDGE.

*One time and one motion.*

159. Empty the powder into the barrel; disengage the ball from the paper with the right hand and the thumb and first two fingers of the left; insert it into the bore, the pointed end uppermost, and press it down with the right thumb; seize the head of the rammer with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, the other fingers closed, the elbows near the body.

### 5. Draw- RAMMER.

*One time and three motions.*

160. (*First motion.*) Half draw the rammer by extending, the right arm; steady it in this position with the left thumb; seize the rammer between the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand the thumb under and the finger over the rammer; fingers extended, palm of the hand to the front.

161. (*Second motion.*) Clear the rammer from the pipes by extending the arm; the rammer in prolongation of the pipes, palm of the hand to the front.

162. (*Third motion.*) Turn the rammer by closing the fingers, the little end passing near the left shoulder, turning the back of the hand to the front; steady it by extending the forefinger of the right hand; place the head of the rammer on the ball, the rammer in prolongation of the barrel.

### 6. Ram- CARTRIDGE.

*One time and one motion.*

163. Insert the rammer as far as the right, and steady it in this position with the thumb of the left hand; seize the rammer at the small end with the thumb and fore-finger on the right hand, the back of the hand to the front; press the ball home, the elbows near the body.

### 7. Return- RAMMER.

*One time and three motions.*

164. (*First motion.*) Draw the rammer half-way out, and steady it in this position with the left thumb; grasp it near the muzzle with the right hand, the thumb under and fore-finger above the rammer, the fingers extended; clear the rammer from the bore by extending the arm, the palm to the front, the rammer in the prolongation of the bore.

165. (*Second motion.*) Turn the rammer, the head passing near the left shoulder, the fingers closed, the rammer held between the thumb and fore-fingernails to the front; insert the rammer, until the hand reaches the muzzle.

166. (*Third motion.*) Force the rammer home by placing the little finger of the right hand on the head of the rammer; extend the left hand down the piece without depressing the shoulder.



CHARGE CARTRIDGE



RAM CARTRIDGE

**8. PRIME.\****One time and two motions.*

167. (*First motion.*) With the left hand raise the piece till the hand is as high as the eye, grasp the small of the stock with the right hand; half face to the right; place, at the same time, the right foot behind and at right angles with the left; the hollow of the right foot against the left heel. Slip the left hand down to the lower band, the thumb along the stock, the left elbow against the body; bring the piece to the right side, the butt below the right forearm- the small of the stock against the body and two inches below the right breast, the barrel upwards, the muzzle on a level with the eye.

168. (*Second motion.*) Half cock with the thumb of the right hand the fingers supported against the guard and the small of the stock-remove the old cap with one of the fingers of the right hand, and with the thumb and fore-finger of the same hand take a cap from the pouch, place it on the nipple and press it down with the thumb; seize the small of the stock with the right hand.

**9. Shoulder- ARMS***One time and two motions*

169. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece to the right, shoulder and I'll support it there with the left hand, face to the front; bring the right heel to the side of and on a line with the left; grasp the piece with the right hand as indicated in the position of shoulder arms.

170. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

**READY.***One time and three motions.*

171. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece slightly with the right hand, making a half face to the right on the left heel; carry the right foot to the rear, and place it at right angles to the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and against the left heel; grasp the piece with the left hand at the lower band and detach it slightly from the shoulder.

172. (*Second motion.*) Bring down the piece with both hands, the barrel upwards, the left thumb extended along the stock the butt below the right fore-arm, the small of the stock against the body and two inches below the right breast, the muzzle as high as the eye, the left elbow against the side; place at the same time the right thumb on the head of the cock, the other fingers under and against the guard.

173. (*Third motion.*) Cock, and seize the piece at the small of the stock without deranging the position of the butt.

**AIM.***One time and one motion.*

174. Raise the piece with both hands, and support the butt against the right shoulder; the left elbow down, the right as high as the shoulder; incline the head upon the butt, so that the right eye may perceive quickly the notch of the hausse, the front sight, and the object aimed at; the left eye closed, the right thumb extended along the stock, the fore-finger on the trigger.

175. When recruits are formed in two ranks to execute the firings, the front rank men will raise a little less the right elbow, in order to facilitate the aim of the rear rank men.

176. The rear rank men, in aiming, will each carry the right foot about eight inches to the right, and towards the left heel of the man next on the right, inclining the upper part of the body forward.

**FIRE.**

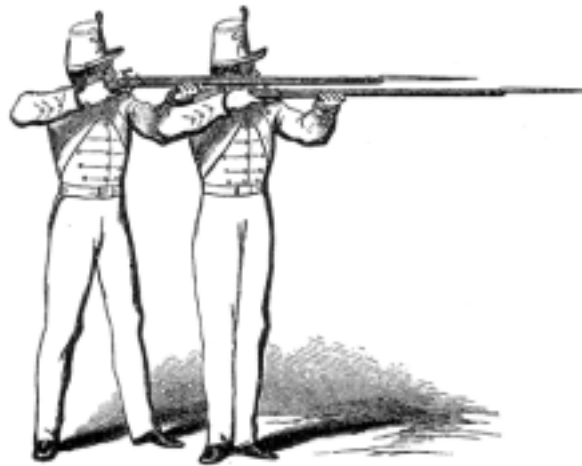

---

\* If Maynard's primer be used, the command will be: **load in eight times** and the eighth command will be, shoulder arms and executed from return rammer, in one time and two motions, as follows:



**PRIME.**

The same position is used for **READY**.



**AIM.**

Note the front rank man has his feet "in the T"; the rear rank man steps to his right, moving into the interval between his comrades in the front rank.

*One time and one motion.*

177. Press the fore-finger against the trigger, fire, without lowering or turning the head, and remain in this position.

178. Instructors will be careful to observe when the men fire, that they aim at some distinct object, and that the barrel be so directed that the line of fire and the line of sight be in the same vertical plane. They will often cause the firing to be executed on ground of different inclinations, in order to accustom the men to fire at objects either above or below them.

**LOAD.**

*One time and one motion.*

179. Bring down the piece with both hands, at the same time face to the front and take the position of *load* as indicated No. 156. Each rear rank man will bring his right foot by the side of the left.

180. The men being in this position, the instructor will cause the loading to be continued by the commands and means prescribed No. 156 and following.

181. If, after firing, the instructor should not wish the recruits to reload, he will command;

**Shoulder-ARMS.**

*One time and one motion.*

182. Throw up the piece briskly with the left hand and resume the position of shoulder arms, at the same time face to the front, turning on the left heel, and bring the right heel on a line with the left.

183. To accustom the recruits to wait for the command *fire*, the instructor, when they are in the position of *aim*, will command:

**Recover-ARMS.**

*One time and one motion.*

184. At the first part of the command, withdraw the finger from the trigger; at the command *arms*, retake the position of the third motion of *ready*.

185. The recruits being in the position of the third motion of *ready*, if the instructor should wish to bring them to it shoulder, he will command:



"Stepping into the T" -- Placement of the feet at **PRIME** and **READY**.

**Shoulder-ARMS.**

*One time and one motion.*

186. At the command *shoulder*, place the thumb upon the cock, the fore-finger on the trigger, half-cock, and seize the small of the stock with the right hand. At the command *arms*, bring up the piece briskly to the right shoulder, and retake the position of shoulder arms.

187. The recruits being at shoulder arms, when the instructor shall wish to fix bayonets, he will command :

**Fix- BAYONET.**

*One time and four motions.*

188. (*First, second, and third motions.*) Same as in first, second, and third motions in the first time of loading, except in the third motion, the right hand is carried to the bayonet, grasping it, with the little finger up.

189. (*Fourth motion.*) Draw the bayonet from the scabbard, fix it, seize the piece with the right hand at the muzzle, the left hand resting on the barrel, arm extended.

**Shoulder- ARMS.**

*One time and two motions.*

190. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand and place it against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; seize the piece at the same time with the right hand at the swell of the stock, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the right arm nearly extended.

191. (*Second motion.*) Drop briskly the left hand by the side.

192. The recruits being at ordered arms, if the instructor should wish to fix bayonets, he will give the command:

**Fix BAYONETS,**

when the pieces will be brought to the left side at one motion, and held as prescribed in No. 188. At the second motion the bayonets will be fixed as in No. 189; immediately resume the position of ordered arms.

**Charge- BAYONET.**

*One time and two motions.*

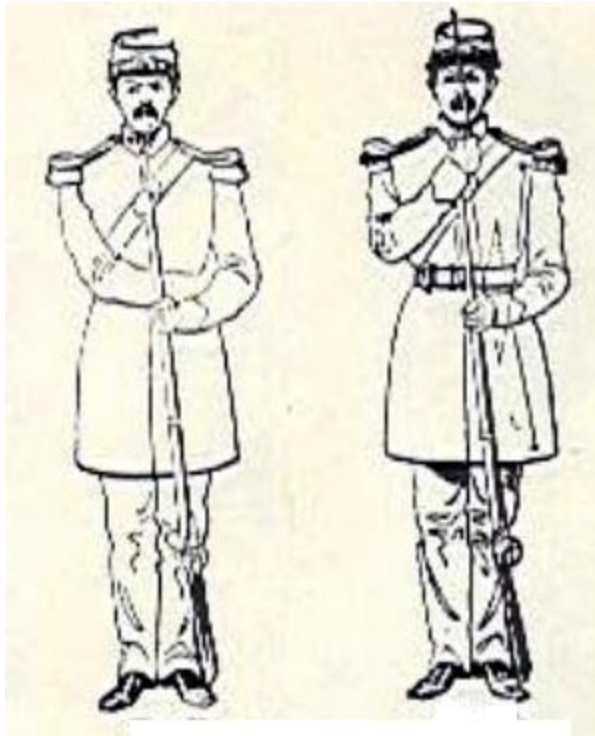
193. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece slightly with the right hand and make a half face to the right on the left heel; place the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and three inches from the left heel, the feet square; seize the piece at the same time with the left hand a little above the lower band.

194. (*Second motion.*) Bring down the piece with both hands, the barrel uppermost, the left elbow against the body; seize the small of the stock, at the same time, with the right hand, which will be supported against the hip; the point of the bayonet as high as the eye.

**Shoulder- ARMS.**

*One time and two motions.*

195. (*First motion.*) Throw up the piece briskly with the left hand in facing to the front, place it against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; turn the right hand



FIX BAYONET - 1st, 2nd, & 3rd motion at left; 4th motion at right.



CHARGE BAYONET

so as to embrace the guard, Slide the left band to the height of the shoulder, the right hand nearly extended.

196. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

### ***Trail- ARMS***

*One time and two motions.*

197. (*First motion.*) The same as the first motion of order arms.

198. (*Second motion.*) Incline the muzzle slightly to the front, the butt to the rear and about four inches from the ground. The right hand supported at the hip, will so hold the piece that the rear rank men may not touch with their bayonets the men in the front rank.

### ***Shoulder- ARMS.***

199. At the command *shoulder*, raise the piece perpendicularly in the right hand, the little finger in rear of the barrel; at the command *arms*, execute what has been prescribed for the shoulder from the position of order arms.

### ***Unfix- BAYONET.***

*One time and four motions.*

200. (*First and second motions.*) Same as in *fix bayonet*.

201. (*Third motion.*) Same as in *fix bayonet*, except turn the bayonet clasp with the right thumb, grasp the shank of the bayonet with the right hand, palms under thumb and fingers extended well at the blade of the bayonet.

202. (*Fourth motion.*) Wrench off the bayonet, return it to the scabbard, grasp the piece at the upper band with the right hand, lower the left hand along the barrel, the arm extended without depressing the shoulder.

### ***Shoulder- ARMS.***

*One time and two motions.*

203. (*First and second motion.*) The same as from *fix bayonet*, Nos. 190 and 191.

### ***Secure- ARMS.***

*One time and three motions.*

204. (*First motion.*) The same as the first motion of support arms, No. 133, except with the right hand seize the piece at the small of the stock.

205. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with both hands, the barrel to the front; bring it opposite the left shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left hand at the lower band, the thumb as high as the chin and extended on the rammer; the piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the left fore-arm against the piece.

206. (*Third motion.*) Reverse the piece, pass it under the left arm, the left hand remaining at the lower band, the thumb on the rammer to prevent it from sliding out, the little finger resting against the hip, the right hand falling at the same time by the side.

### ***Shoulder- ARMS.***

*One time and three motions.*

207. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand, and seize it with the right hand at the small of the stock. The piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left fore-arm along the piece.

208. (*Second motion.*) The same as the second motion of shoulder arms from a



**TRAIL ARMS**



**SECURE ARMS**



**RIGHT SHOULDER SHIFT ARMS**



**GROUND ARMS**

*Ground-Arms allows the unit to “park” its weapons in an organized manner which allows a comparatively quick return to the line of battle, without going through the frustrating business of trying to stack with ramrods. The big risk for reenactors is that the muzzles of the weapon are placed near and parallel to the ground where it is easy for a foreign object to make its way in there and become a projectile the next time the weapon is fired. Grounded arms are not secure; it is far easier and less noticeable for a grounded musket to “grow legs” and walk off without its absence being readily noticed. Finally, the weapons are subject to being stepped on and damaged while they are spread over the unit’s area. It should be noted that while Gilham copied everything else from Hardee’s manual of arms for the 2-banded rifle, his **Manual for Instruction of Volunteers and Militia** does not include Ground Arms, implying that the definitive method to lay aside your weapon while in formation is to stack arms.*

support.

209. (*Third motion.*) The same as the third motion of shoulder arms from a support.

***Right shoulder shift- ARMS.***

*One time and two motions.*

210. (*First motion.*) Detach the piece perpendicularly from the shoulder with the right hand, and seize it with the left between the lower band and guide-sight, raise the piece, the left hand at the height of the shoulder and four inches from it; place, at the same time, the right hand on the butt, the beak between the first two fingers, the other two fingers under the butt plate.

211. (*Second motion.*) Quit the piece with the left hand, raise and place the piece on the right shoulder with the right hand the lock plate upwards; let fall, at the same time, the left hand by the side.

***Shoulder- ARMS.***

*One time and two motions.*

212. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece perpendicularly by extending the right arm to its full length, the rammer to the front, at the same time seize the piece with the left hand between the lower band and guide-sight.

213. (*Second motion.*) Quit the butt with the right hand, which will immediately embrace the guard, lower the piece to the position of shoulder arms, slide up the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and closed. Drop the left hand by the side.

214. The men being at *support arms*, the instructor will sometimes cause pieces to be brought to the right shoulder. To this effect, he will command:

***Right Shoulder shift- ARMS.***

*One time and two motions.*

215. (*First motion.*) Seize the piece with the right hand, below and near the left fore-arm, place the left hand under the butt, the heel of the butt between the first two fingers.

216. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with the left hand the lock plate upwards, carry it to the right shoulder, the left hand still holding the butt, the muzzle elevated; hold the piece in this position and-place the right hand upon the butt as is prescribed No. 210, and let fall the left hand by the side.

***Shoulder- ARMS.***

*One time and two motions.*

217. (*First motion.*) The same as the first motion of shoulder arms, No. 212.

218. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with both hands, the barrel to the front, carry it opposite the left shoulder, slip the right hand to the small of the stock, place the left fore-arm extended on the breast as is prescribed No. 134, and let fall the right hand by the side.

***Arms- AT WILL.***

*One time and one motion.*

219. At this command, carry the piece at pleasure on either shoulder, with one or both hands, ***the muzzle elevated.***



**Support-ARMS.***One time and one motion.*

220. At this command, retake quickly the position of *shoulder arms*.

221. The recruits being at ordered arms, when the instructor shall wish to cause the pieces to be placed on the ground, he will command

**Ground- ARMS.***One time and two motions*

222. (*First motion.*) Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel to the left, at the same time seize the cartridge box with the left hand, bend the body, advance the left foot, the heel opposite the lower band; lay the piece on the ground with the right hand, the toe of the butt on a line with the right toe, the knees slightly bent, the right heel raised.

223. (*Second motion.*) Rise up, bring the left foot by the side of the right, quit the cartridge box with the left hand, and drop the hands by the side.

**Raise-ARMS***One time and two motions.*

224. (*First motion.*) Seize the cartridge box with the left hand, bend the body, advance the left foot opposite the lower band, and seize the piece with the right hand.

225. (*Second motion.*) Raise the piece, bringing the left foot by the side of the right; turn the piece with the right hand, the rammer to the front; at the same time quit the cartridge box with the left hand, and drop this hand by the side.

226. The recruits being at *ordered arms*, with the bayonet in the scabbard, if the instructor wishes to cause an inspection of arms he will command:

**Inspection-ARMS.***One time and four motions.*

(*First and second motions.*) Same as in *fix bayonet*, No. 192, except that the left hand remains at the muzzle, and the rammer head is seized between the thumb and fore-finger, as in draw rammer.

227. (*Third motion.*) Spring rammer as prescribed in loading; lower the left hand along the piece to full extent of arm, grasping the piece at the muzzle band with the right hand.

228. (*Fourth motion.*) Bring the piece to position of *order arms*.

229. The instructor will then inspect in succession the piece of each recruit, in passing along the front of the rank. Each, as the instructor reaches him, will raise smartly his piece with his right hand, seize it with the left between the lower band and guide-sight, the lock to the front, the left hand at the height of the chin, the piece opposite to the left eye; the instructor will take it with the right hand at the handle, and, after inspecting it, will return it to the recruit, who will receive it back with the right hand, and replace it in the position of *ordered arms*.

230. When the instructor shall have passed him, each recruit will retake the position proscribed at the command *inspection arms*, return the rammer, and resume the position of *ordered arms*.

231. If, instead of inspection of arms, the instructor should merely wish to cause bayonets to be fixed, he will command:

**Fix-BAYONETS.**

232. Take the position indicated in No. 192, *fix bayonets* as has been explained, and immediately resume the position of *ordered arms*.

233. If it be the wish of the instructor, after firing, to ascertain whether the pieces



*Manner of presenting the piece at INSPECTION ARMS. At top is front view, below, side view.*

have been discharged, he will command:

***Spring-RAMMERS.***

234. Put the rammer in the barrel as has been explained above, and immediately retake the position of ordered arms.

235. The instructor, for the purpose stated, can take the rammer by the, small end, and spring it in the barrel, or cause each recruit to make it ring in the barrel.

236. Each recruit, after the instructor passes him, will return rammer and resume the position of ordered arms.

***Remarks on the Manual of Arms.***

237. The manual of arms frequently distorts the persons of recruits before they acquire ease and confidence in the several positions. The instructor will therefore frequently recur to elementary principles in the course of the lessons.

238. Recruits are also extremely liable to curve the sides and back, and to derange the shoulders, especially in loading. Consequently the instructor will not cause them to dwell too long, at a time in one position.

239. When, after some days of exercise in the manual of arms, the four men shall be well established in their use, the instructor will always terminate the lesson by marching the men for some time in one rank, and at one pace apart, in common and quick time, in order to confirm them more and more in the mechanism of the step; he will also teach them to mark time and to change step; which will be executed in the following manner:

***To Mark Time.***

240. The four men marching in the direct step, the instructor will command:

***1. Mark time. 2. MARCH.***

241. At the second command, which will be given at the instant a foot is coming to the ground, the recruits will make a semblance of marching, by bringing the heels by the side of each other, and observing the cadence of the step, by raising each foot alternately without advancing.

242. The instructor wishing the direct step to be resumed will command:

***1. Forward. 2. MARCH.***

243. At the second command, which will be given as prescribed above, the recruits will retake the step of twenty-eight inches,

***To change step.***

244. The squad being in march, the instructor will command:

***1. Change step. 2. MARCH.***

245. At the second command, which will be given at the instant either foot is coming to the ground, bring the foot which is in rear by the side of that which is in front, and step off again with the foot which was in front.

***To march backwards.***

246. The instructor wishing the squad to march backwards, will command:

***1. Squad backward 2. MARCH.***

247. At the second command, the recruits will stop off smartly with the left foot fourteen inches to the rear, reckoning from heel to heel, and so on with the feet in succession till the command halt, which will always be preceded by the caution squad. The men will halt at this command, and bring back the foot in front by the side of the other.

248. This step will always be executed in quick time.

249. The instructor will be watchful that the recruits march straight to the rear, and that the erect position of the body and the piece be not deranged.

***LESSON III.******To load in four times.***

250. The object of this lesson is to prepare the recruits to load at will, and to cause them to distinguish the times which require the greatest regularity and attention, such as charge cartridge, ram cartridge and prime. It will be divided as follows:

251. The first time will be executed at the end of the command; the three others at the commands, two, three and four.

The instructor will command:

***1. Load in four times. 2. LOAD.***

252. Execute the times to include to *charge cartridge*.

***TWO.***

253. Execute the times to include *ram cartridge*.

***THREE.***

254. Execute the times to include *prime*.

***FOUR.***

255. Execute the time of *shoulder arms*.

***To load at will.***

256. The instructor will next teach *loading at will*, which will be executed as loading in four times, but continued, and without resting on either of the times. He will command:

***1. Load at will. 2. LOAD***

257. The instructor will habituate the recruits, by degrees, to load with the greatest possible promptitude, each without regulating himself by his neighbor, and above all without waiting for him.

258. The cadence prescribed No. 129, is not applicable to loading in four times, or at will.

**SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER - PART II.****LESSON IV*****Firings.***

259. The firings are *direct* or *oblique*, and will be executed as follows:

***The direct fire.***

260. The instructor will give the following commands:

***1. Fire by squad. 2. Squad. 3. READY. 4. AIM. 5. FIRE 6. LOAD.***

261. These, several commands will be executed as has been proscribed in the Manual of arms. At the third command the men will come to the position of *ready* as heretofore explained. At the fourth they will aim according to the rank in which each may find himself placed, the rear rank men inclining forward a little the upper part of the body, in order that their pieces may reach as much beyond the front rank as possible.

262. At the sixth command they will load their pieces and return immediately to the position of *ready*.

263. The instructor will recommence the firing by the command:

***1. Squad. 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.***

264. When the instructor wishes the firing to cease he will command:

***Cease firing.***

265. At this command the men will cease firing but will load their pieces if unloaded, and afterwards bring them to a shoulder.

***Oblique Firing.***

266. The oblique firings will be executed to the right and left, and by the same commands as the direct fire, with this single difference - the command *aim* will always be preceded by the caution, *right* or *left oblique*.

**Position of the two ranks in the Oblique Fire to the right.**

267. At the command *ready*, the two ranks will execute what has been prescribed for the direct fire.

268. At the cautionary command, *right oblique*, the two ranks will throw back the right shoulder and look steadily at the object to be hit.

269. At the command, *aim*, each front rank man will aim to the right without deranging the feet; each rear rank man will advance the left foot about eight inches toward the right heel of the man next on the right of his file leader and aim to the right, inclining the upper part of the body forward and bending a little the left knee.

**Position of the two ranks in the Oblique Fire to the left.**

270. At the cautionary command, *left oblique*, the two ranks will throw back the left shoulder and look steadily at the object to be hit.

271. At the command, *aim*, the front rank will take aim to the left without deranging the feet; each man in the rear will advance the right foot about eight inches toward the right heel of the man next on the right of his file leader, and aim to the left,

inclining the upper part of the body forward and bending a little the right knee,

272. In both cases, at the command, *load*, the men of each rank will come to the position of *load* as prescribed in the direct fire; the rear rank men bringing back the foot which is to the right and front by the side of the other. Each man will continue to *load* as if isolated.

### ***To fire by file.***

273. The fire by file will be executed by the two ranks, the files of which will fire successively, and without regulating on each other, except for the first fire.

274. The instructor will command:

***1. Fire by file. 2. Squad. 3. READY. 4. COMMENCE FIRING.***

275. At the third command, the two ranks will take the position prescribed in the direct fire.

276. At the fourth command, the file on the right will aim and fire; the rear rank man in aiming will take the position indicated No. 176.

277. The men of this file will load their pieces briskly and fire a second time; reload and fire again, and so on in continuation.

278. The second file will aim at the instant the first brings down pieces to reload, and will conform in all respects to that which has just been prescribed for the first file.

279. After the first fire, the front and rear rank men will not be required to fire at the same time

280. Each man, after loading, will return to the position of *ready*, and continue the fire.

281. When the instructor wishes the fire to cease, he will command:

***Cease-FIRING.***

282. At this command, the men will cease firing. If they have fired they will load their pieces and bring them to a shoulder; if at the position of *ready*, they will half-cock and shoulder arms. If in the position of *aim*, they will bring down their pieces, half-cock, and shoulder arms,

### ***To fire by Rank.***

283. The fire by rank will be executed by each entire rank, alternately.

284. The instructor will command:

***1. Fire by rank, 2. Squad. 3. READY. 4. Rear rank, 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.***

285. At the third command, the two ranks will take the position of *ready*, as prescribed in the direct fire.

286. At the seventh command, the rear rank will execute that which has been prescribed in the direct fire, and afterwards take the position of *ready*.

287. As soon as the instructor sees several men of the rear rank in the position of *ready*, he will command:

***1. Front Rank. 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.***

288. At these commands, the men in the front rank will execute what has been prescribed for the rear rank, but they will not step off with right foot.

289. The instructor will recommence the firing by the rear rank, and will thus continue to alternate from rank to rank, until he shall wish the firing to cease, when



*Firing from the Kneeling position.*

*"Fire and Load Kneeling" and "Fire and Load Lying" are key tasks to master in preparation for the School of the Skirmisher, as skirmishers are instructed to take every advantage of cover and the terrain to protect themselves against the enemy's return fire. Most of your skirmish fighting will be from the prone position, or kneeling behind some sort of cover.*

he will command, cease firing, which will be executed as heretofore prescribed.

## LESSON V.

### *To fire and load kneeling.*

290. In this exercise the squad will be supposed loaded and drawn up in one rank. The instruction will be given to each man individually, without times or motions, and in the following manner.

291. The instructor will command:

#### **FIRE AND LOAD KNEELING,**

292. At this command, the man on the right of the squad will move forward three paces and halt; then carry the right foot to the rear and to the right of the left heel, and in a position convenient for placing the right knee upon the ground in bending the left leg; place the right knee upon the ground; lower the piece, the left fore-arm supported upon the thigh on the same side, the right hand on the small of the stock, the butt resting on the right thigh, the left hand supporting the piece near the lower band.

293. He will next move the right leg to the left around the knee supported on the ground, until this leg is nearly perpendicular to the direction of the left foot, and thus seat himself, comfortably on the right heel,

294. Raise the piece with the right hand and support it with the left, holding it near the lower band, the left elbow resting on the left thigh near the knee; seize the hammer with the thumb, the fore-finger under the guard, cock and seize the piece at the small of the stock; bring the piece to the shoulder, aim and fire.

295. Bring the piece down as soon as it is fired, and support it with the left hand, the butt resting against the right thigh; carry the piece to the rear rising on the knee, the barrel downwards, the butt resting on the ground; in this position support the piece with the left hand at the upper band, draw cartridge with the right and load the piece, ramming the ball, if necessary, with both hands.

296. When loaded bring the piece to the front with the left hand, which holds it at the upper band; seize it at the same time with the right hand at the small of the stock; turn the piece, the barrel uppermost and nearly horizontal, the left elbow resting on the left thigh; half-cock, remove the old cap and prime, rise, and return to the ranks.

297. The second man will then be taught what has just been prescribed for the first, and so on through the remainder of the squad

### *Fire and load lying.*

298. In this exercise the squad will be in one rank and loaded: the instruction will be given individually and without times or motions.

299. The instructor will command:

#### **FIRE AND LOAD LYING.**

300. At this command, the man on the right of the squad will move forward three paces and halt; he will then bring his piece to an order, drop on both knees, and place himself on the ground flat on his belly. In this position he will support the piece nearly horizontal with the left hand, holding it near the lower band, the butt end of the piece and the left elbow resting on the ground, the barrel uppermost; cock the piece with the right hand, and carry this hand to the small of the stock; raise the piece with both hands, press the butt against the shoulder, and resting on both elbows, aim and fire.



HE SHOWS HOW TO DO IT.

301. As soon as he has fired, bring the piece down and turn upon his left side, still resting on his left elbow; bring back the piece until the cock is opposite his breast, the butt end resting on the ground; take out a cartridge with the right hand; seize the small of the stock with this hand, holding the cartridge with the thumb and two first fingers; he will then throw himself on his back still holding the piece with both hands; carry the piece to the rear, place the butt between the heels, the barrel up, the muzzle elevated. In this position, charge cartridge draw rammer, ram cartridge, and return rammer.

302. When finished loading, the man will turn again upon his left side, remove the old cap and prime, then raise the piece vertically, rise, turn about, and resume his position in the ranks.

303. The second man will be taught what has just been prescribed for the first, and so on throughout the squad.

## LESSON VI.

### *Bayonet Exercise.*

304. The bayonet exercise in this book will be confined to two movements, the *guard against infantry*, and the *guard against cavalry*. The men will be placed in one rank, with two paces interval, and being at shoulder arms, the instructor will command:

#### *1. Guard against Infantry. 2. GUARD.*

*One time and two motions.*

305. (*First motion.*) Make a half face to the right turning on both heels, the feet square to each other; at the same time raise the piece slightly, and seize it with the left hand above and near the lower band.

306. (*Second motion.*) Carry the right foot twenty inches perpendicularly to the rear, the right heel on the prolongation of the left, the knees slightly bent, the weight of the body resting equally on both legs; lower the piece with both hands, the barrel uppermost, the left elbow against the body; seize the piece at the same time with the right hand at the small of the stock, the arms falling naturally, the point of the bayonet slightly elevated.

#### *Shoulder-ARMS.*

*One time and one motion*

307. Throw up the piece with the left hand, and place it against the right shoulder, at the same time bring the right heel by the side of the left and face to the front.

#### *1. Guard against Cavalry. 2. GUARD.*

*One time and two motions.*

308. Both motions the same as for guard against infantry, except that the right hand will be supported against the hip, and the bayonet held at the height of the eye, as in charge bayonet.

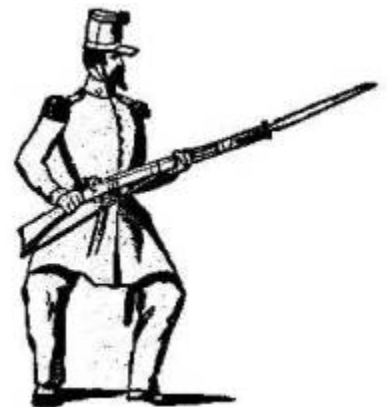
#### *Shoulder-ARMS.*

*One time and one motion.*

309. Spring up the piece with the left hand and place it against the right shoulder, at the same time bring the right heel by the side of the left, and face to the front.



**GUARD AGAINST INFANTRY**



**GUARD AGAINST CAVALRY**

***PART THIRD.***

310. When the recruits are well established in the principles and mechanism of the step, and the position of the body, the manual of arms, the instructor will unite eight men, at least, and twelve men, at most, in order to teach them the principles of alignment, the principles of the touch of elbows in marching to the front, the principles of the march by the flank, wheeling from a halt, wheeling in marching, and the change of direction to the side of the guide. He will place the squad in one rank elbow to elbow, and number the men from right to left.

**LESSON I.*****Alignments.***

311. The instructor will at first teach the recruits to align themselves man by man, in order the better to make them comprehend the principles of alignment; to this end, he will command the two men on the right flank to march two paces to the front, and having aligned them, he will caution the remainder of the squad to move up, as they may be successively called each by his number, and align themselves successively on the line of the first two men.

312. Each recruit, as designated by his number, will turn the head and eyes to the right as proscribed in the first lesson of the first part, and will march in quick time two paces forward, shortening the last, so as to find himself about six inches behind the new alignment, which he ought never to pass; he will next move up steadily by steps of two or three inches, the arms extended, to the side of the man next to him on the alignment, so that, without deranging the head, the line of the eyes, or that of the shoulders, he may find himself in the exact line of his neighbor, whose elbow he will lightly touch without opening his own.

313. The instructor seeing the rank well aligned, will command:

***FRONT.***

314. At this, the recruits will turn eyes to the front, and remain firm.

315. Alignments to the left will be executed on the same principles.

316. When the recruit shall have thus learned to align themselves man by man, correctly, and without groping or jostling, the instructor will cause the entire rank to align itself at once by the command:

***Right (or left)- DRESS.***

317. At this, the rank, except the two men placed in advance as, a basis of alignment, will move up in quick time, and place themselves on the new line, according to the principles proscribed No. 312.

318. The instructor, placed five or six paces in front, and facing the rank, will carefully observe that the principles are followed, and then pass to the flank that has served as the basis, to verify the alignment.

319. The instructor seeing the greater number of the rank well aligned, will command:

***FRONT.***

320. The instructor may afterwards order this or that file forward or back, designating each by its number. The file or files designated, only, will slightly turn the head towards the basis, to judge how much they ought to move up or back, steadily place themselves on the line, and then turn eyes to the front, without a particular command to that effect.



321. Alignments to the rear will be executed on the same principles, the recruits stopping back a little beyond the line, and then dressing up according to the principles prescribed No. 312, the instructor commanding:

*Right (or left ) backward-DRESS.*

322. After each alignment, the instructor will examine the position of the men, and cause the rank to come to ordered arms, to prevent too much fatigue, and also the danger of negligence at shouldered arms.

## LESSON II

323. The men having learned, in the first and second parts, to march with steadiness in common time, and to take steps equal in length and swiftness, will be exercised in the third part only in quick time, double quick time, and the run; the instructor will cause them to execute successively, at these different gaits, the march to the front, the facing about in marching, the march by the flank, the wheels at a halt and in marching, and the changes of direction to the side of the guides.

324. The instructor will inform the recruits that at the command *march*, they will always move off in quick time, unless this command should be preceded by that of *double quick*.

*To march to the front.*

325. The rank being correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march by the front, he will place a well instructed man on the right or the left, according to the side on which he may wish the guide to be, and command:

*1. Squad, forward. 2. Guide right (or left.) 3. MARCH.*

326. At the command *march*, the rank will step off smartly with the left foot; the guide will take care to march straight to the front, keeping the shoulders always in a square with that line.

327. The instructor will observe, in marching to the front, that the men touch lightly the elbow towards the side of the guide; that they do not open out the left elbow, nor the right arm; that they yield to pressure coming from the side of the aide, and resist that coming from the opposite side; that they recover by insensible degrees the slight touch of the elbow, if lost; that they maintain the head direct to the front, no matter on which side the guide may be; and if found before or behind the alignment, that the man in fault corrects himself by shortening or lengthening the step, by degrees almost insensible.

328. The instructor will labor to cause recruits to comprehend that the alignment can only be preserved, in marching, by the regularity of the step, the touch of the elbow, and the maintenance of the shoulders in a square with the line of direction; that if, for example, the step of some be longer than that of others, or if some march faster than others, a separation of elbows, and a loss of the alignment, would be inevitable; that if (it being required that the head should be direct to the front) they do not strictly observe the touch of elbows, it would be impossible for an individual to judge whether he marches abreast with his neighbor, or not, and whether there be not an interval between them.

329. The impulsion of the quick step having a tendency to make men too easy and free in their movements, the instructor will be careful to regulate the cadence of this step, and to habituate them to preserve always the erectness of the body, and the due length of the pace.

330. The men being well established in the principles of the direct march, the instructor will exercise them in marching obliquely. The rank being in march, the

instructor will command

**1. Right (or left) oblique. 2. MARCH.**

331. At the second command, each man will make a half face to the right (or left), and will then march straight forward in the new direction. As the men no longer touch elbows, they will glance along the shoulders of the nearest files towards the side to which they are obliquing, and will regulate their steps so that the shoulders shall always be behind that of their next neighbor on that side, and that his head shall conceal the heads of the other men in the rank. Besides this, the men should preserve the same length of pace, and the same degree of obliquity.

332. The instructor, wishing to resume the primitive direction, will command:

**1. Forward. 2. MARCH.**

333. At the second command, each man will make a half face to the left (or right), and all will then march straight to the front, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

***To march to the front in double quick time.***

334. When the several principles, heretofore explained, have become familiar to the recruits, and they shall be well established in the position of the body, the bearing of arms, and the mechanism, length, and swiftness of the step, the instructor will pass them from quick to double quick time, and the reverse observing not to make them march obliquely in double quick time, till they are well established in the cadence of this step.

335. The squad being at a march in quick time, the instructor will command:

**1. Double quick. 2. MARCH.**

336. At the command *march*, which will be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will step off in double quick time. The men will endeavor to follow the principles laid down in the first part of this book, and to preserve the alignment.

337. When the instructor wishes the squad to resume the step in quick time, he will command:

**1. Quick time. 2. MARCH.**

338. At the command *march*, which will be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will retake the step in quick time.

339. The squad being in march, the instructor will halt it by the commands and means prescribed Nos. 98 and 99. The command halt, will be given an instant before the foot is ready to be placed on the ground.

340. The squad being in march in double quick time, the instructor will occasionally cause it to mark time by the commands prescribed No. 240. The men will then mark double quick time, without altering the cadence of the step. He will also cause them to pass from the direct to the oblique step, and reciprocally, conforming to what has been prescribed No. 330, and following.

341. The squad being at a halt, the instructor will cause it to march in double quick time, by preceding the command march, by double quick.

342. The instructor will endeavor to regulate well the cadence of this step.

***To face about in marching.***

343. If the squad be marching in quick, or double quick time, and the instructor should wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

***1. Squad right about. 2. MARCH.***

344. At the command march, which will be given at the instant the left foot is coming to the ground, the recruit will bring this foot to the ground, and turning on it, will face to the rear; he will then place the right foot in the new direction, and step off with the left foot.

***To march backwards.***

345. The squad being at a halt, if the instructor should wish to march it in the back step, he will command:

***1. Squad backward. 2. Guide left (or right). 3. MARCH.***

346. The back step will be executed by the means prescribed No. 247.

347. The instructor, in this step, will be watchful that the men do not lean on each other.

348. As the march to the front in quick time should only be executed at shouldered arms, the instructor, in order not to fatigue the men too much, and also to prevent negligence in gait and position, will halt the squad from time to time, and cause arms to be ordered.

349. In marching at double quick time, the men will always carry their pieces on the right shoulder or at a trail. This rule is general.

350. If the instructor shall wish the pieces carried at a trail, he will give the command trail arms, before the command double quick. If, on the contrary, this command be not given, the men will shift their pieces to the right shoulder at the command double quick. In either case, at the command halt, the men will bring their pieces to the position of shoulder arms. This rule is general.

***Lesson III.******The march by the flank.***

351. The rank being at a halt, and correctly aligned, the instructor will command:

***1. Squad, right-FACE. 2. Forward. 3. MARCH.***

352. At the last part of the first command, the rank will face to the right; the even numbered men, after facing to the right, will step quickly to the right side of the odd numbered men, the latter standing fast, so that when the movement is executed, the men will be formed into files of two men abreast.

353. At the third command, the squad will step off smartly with the left foot; the files keeping aligned, and preserving their intervals.

354. The march by the left flank will be executed by the same commands, substituting the word left for right, and by inverse means; in this case, the even numbered men, after facing to the left, will stand fast, and the odd numbered will place themselves on their left.

355. The instructor will place a well-instructed soldier by the side of the recruit who is at the head of the rank, to regulate the step, and to conduct him; and it will be

enjoined on this recruit to march always elbow to elbow with the soldier.

356. The instructor will cause to be observed in the march, by the flank, the following rules:

- That the step be executed according to the principles prescribed for the direct step;
- Because these principles, without which men, placed elbow to elbow, in the same rank, cannot preserve unity and harmony of movement, are of a more necessary observance in marching in file.
- That the head of the man who immediately precedes, covers the heads of all who are in front;
- Because it is the most certain rule by which each man may maintain himself in the exact line of the file.

357. The instructor will place himself habitually five or six paces on the flank of the rank marching in file, to watch over the execution of the principles prescribed above. He will also place himself sometimes in its rear, halt, and suffer it to pass fifteen or twenty paces, the better to see whether the men cover each other accurately.

358. When he shall wish to halt the rank, marching by the flank, and to cause it to face to the front, he will command:

**1. Squad. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.**

359. At the second command, the rank will halt, and afterwards no man will stir, although he may have lost his distance. This prohibition is necessary, to habituate the men to a constant preservation of their distances.

360. At the third command, each man will front by facing to the left, if marching by the right flank, and by a face to the right, if marching by the left flank. The rear rank men will at the same time move quickly into their places, so as to form the squad again into one rank.

361. When the men have become accustomed to marching by the flank, the instructor will cause them to change direction by file for this purpose, he will command:

**1. By file left (or right). 2. MARCH.**

362. At the command *march*, the first file will change direction to the left (or right) in describing a small arc of a circle, and will then march straight forward; the two men of this file, in wheeling, will keep up the touch of the elbows, and the man on the side to which the wheel is made, will shorten the first three or four steps. Each file will come successively to wheel on the same spot where that which preceded it wheeled.

363. The instructor will also cause the squad to face by the right or left flank in marching, and for this purpose will command:

**1. Squad by the right (or left) flank. 2. MARCH.**

364. At the second command, which will be given a little before either foot comes to the ground, the recruits will turn the body, plant the foot that is raised in the new direction, and step off with the other foot without altering the cadence of the step; the men will double or undouble rapidly.

365. If, in facing by the right or left flank, the squad should face to the rear, the men will, come into one rank, agreeably to the principles indicated No. 360. It is to be remarked that it is the men who are in rear who always move up to form into single rank and in such manner as never to invert the order of the numbers in the rank.

366. If, when the squad has been faced to the rear, the instructor should cause, it to face by the left flank, it is the even numbers who will double by moving to the right of the odd numbers; but if by the right flank, it is the odd numbers who will double to the left of the even numbers. Observe the two following rules in the facings, viz:

1. Never gain ground to the front in doubling.

*2. Never reverse the order of the numbers in undoubling.*

The front referred to, is the original or real front. The numbers would be reversed, if in counting, beginning on the right of the company, number two should call before number one. These rules apply to all facings, whether the company be marching or at a halt.

367. This lesson, like the preceding one, will be practiced with pieces at a shoulder; but the instructor may, to give relief by change, occasionally order support arms, and he will require of the recruits marching in this position, as much regularity as in the former.

***The march by the flank in double quick time.***

368. The principles of the march by the flank in double quick time, are the same as in quick time. The instructor will give the commands prescribed No. 351, taking care always to give the command double quick before that of march.

369. He will pay the greatest attention to the cadence of the step.

370. The instructor will cause the change of direction, and the march by the flank, to be executed in double quick time, by the same commands, and according to the same principles as in quick time.

371. The instructor will cause the pieces to be carried either on the right shoulder or at a trail.

372. The instructor will sometimes march the squad by the flank, without doubling the files.

373. The principles of this march are the same as in two ranks, and it will always be executed in quick time.

374. The instructor will give the commands prescribed No. 351, but he will be careful to caution the squad not to double files.

375. The instructor will be watchful that the men do not bend their knees unequally, which would cause them to tread on the heels of the men in front, and also to lose the cadence of the step and their distances.

376. The various movements in this lesson will be executed in single rank. In the changes of direction, the leading man will change direction without altering the length or the cadence of the step. The instructor will recall to the attention of the men, that in facing by the right or left flank in marching, they will not double, but march in one rank.

***LESSON IV.***

***WHEELINGS.***

***General Principles of Wheeling.***

377. Wheelings are of two kinds: from halts, or on fixed pivots, and in march or on moveable pivots.

378. *Wheeling on a fixed pivot* takes place in passing a corps from the order in battle to the order in column, or from the latter to the former.

379. *Wheels in marching* take place in changes of direction in column, as often as this movement is executed to the side opposite to the guide.

380. In wheels from a halt, the pivot man only turns in his place, without advancing or receding.

381. In the wheels in marching, the pivot takes steps of nine or eleven inches, according as the squad is marching in quick or double quick time, so as to clear the wheeling point, which is necessary, in order that the subdivisions of a column may change direction without losing their distances, as will be explained in the school of



"COMPANY—RIGHT WHEEL!"

the company.

382. The man on the wheeling flank will take the full step of twenty-eight inches, or thirty-three inches, according to the gait.

### ***Wheeling from a halt, or on a fixed pivot.***

383. The rank being at a halt, the instructor will place a well-instructed man on the wheeling flank to conduct it, and then command:

#### ***1. By squad, right wheel. 2. MARCH.***

384. At the second command, the rank will step off with their left foot, turning at the same time the head a little to the left, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men to their left; the pivot-man will merely mark time in gradually turning his body, in order to conform himself to the movement of the marching flank; the man who conducts this flank will take steps of twenty-eight inches, and from the first stop advance a little the left shoulder, cast his eyes from time to time along the rank, and feel constantly the elbow of the next man lightly, but never push him.

385. The other man will feel lightly the elbow of the next man towards the pivot, resist pressure coming from the opposite side, and each will conform himself to the marching flank-shortening his step according to his approximation to the pivot.

386. The instructor will make the rank wheel round the circle once or twice before halting, in order to cause the principles to be the better understood, and he will be watchful that the centre does not break.

387. He will cause the wheel to the left to be executed according to the same principles.

388. When the instructor shall wish to arrest the wheel, he will command:

#### ***1. Squad. 2. HALT.***

389. At the second command, the rank will halt, and no man stir. The instructor, going to the flank opposite the pivot, will place the two outer men of that flank in the direction he may wish to give to the rank, without however displacing the pivot, who will conform the line of his shoulders to this direction. The instructor will take care to have between these two men, and the pivot, only the space necessary to contain the other men. He will then command:

#### ***Left (or right)- DRESS.***

390. At this, the rank will place itself on the alignment of the two men established as the basis, in conformity with the principles prescribed.

391. The instructor will next command ***FRONT***, which will be executed as prescribed No. 314.

### ***Remarks on the principles of the Wheel from a halt.***

392. Turn a little the head towards the marching flank, and fix the eyes on the line of the eyes of the men who are on that side;

- Because, otherwise, it would be impossible for each man to regulate the length of his step so as to conform his own movement to that of the marching flank.
- Touch lightly the elbow of the next man towards the pivot;
- In order that the files may not open out in the wheel.
- Resist pressure that comes from the side of the marching flank;
- Because, if this principle be neglected, the pivot, which ought to be a fixed point, in wheels from a halt, might be pushed out of its place by pressure.

### *Wheeling in marching, or on a movable pivot.*

393. When the recruits have been taught to execute well the wheel from a halt, they will be taught to wheel in marching.

394. To this end, the rank being in march, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to change direction to the reverse flank (to the side opposite to the guide or pivot flank,) he will command:

#### *1. Right (or left) wheel. 2. MARCH.*

395. The first command will be given when the rank is yet four paces from the wheeling point.

396. At the second command, the wheel will be executed in the same manner as from a halt, except that the touch of the elbow will remain towards the marching flank (or side of the guide) instead of the side of the actual pivot; that the pivot man, instead of merely turning in his place, will conform himself to the movement of the marching flank, feel lightly the elbow of the next man, take steps of full nine inches, and thus gain ground forward in describing a small curve so as to clear the point of the wheel. The middle of the rank will bend slightly to the rear. As soon as the movement shall commence, the man who conducts the marching flank will cast his eyes on the ground over which he will have to pass.

397. The wheel being ended, the instructor will command:

#### *1. Forward. 2. MARCH.*

398. The first command will be pronounced when four paces are yet required to complete the change of direction.

399. At the command *march*, which will be given at the instant of completing the wheel, the man who conducts the marching flank will direct himself straight forward; the pivot man and all the rank will retake the step of twenty-eight inches, and bring the head direct to the front.

### *Turning, or change of direction to the side of the guide.*

400. The change of direction to the side of the guide, in marching, will be executed as follows: The instructor will command:

#### *1. Left (or right) turn. 2. MARCH.*

401. The first command will be given when the rank is yet four paces from the turning point.

402. At the command *march*, to be pronounced at the instant the rank ought to turn, the guide will face to the left (or right) in marching, and move forward in the new direction without slackening or quickening the cadence, and without shortening or lengthening the step. The whole rank will promptly conform itself to the new direction; to effect which, each man will advance the shoulder opposite to the guide, take the double quick step, to carry himself in the new direction, turn the head and eyes to the side of the guide, and retake the touch of the elbow on that side, in placing himself on the alignment of the guide, from whom he will take the step, and then resume the direct position of the head. Each man will thus arrive successively on the alignment.

*“Advancing the shoulder” serves as a preparation to the oblique movement that must be executed in order to get the column smoothly into line.*

*You will see the term “advance the shoulder” repeated in the instructions for right (or left) turns.*

**Turns** -- *When a company marches in a line of battle, the commander must indicate the side of the guide: i.e., where to dress. When marching forward in line, the guide is, by default, to the left: i.e., upon the second sergeant. After receiving the command, **march**, the second sergeant faces to the left and continues marching in the new direction which is ninety degrees left of the original line of march. He does not quicken his pace nor shift to his right. The men formerly on the right of the second sergeant will right oblique (“advance the shoulder opposite to the guide”). As each soldier reaches the new direction, he will dress left.*

*If the commander wishes the men to perform a right turn, he should - but is not required to - inform the men that the guide is now on the right: i.e., “guide - right”. Then the commander orders a right turn. The first sergeant faces right and continues forward in the new direction ninety degrees to the right. The soldiers left oblique onto the new line. As they arrive, they dress right.*

*This is not a fixed pivot wheel. It more closely resembles the peeling effect of “by company into line” than a wheel. I’ve heard it also described as resembling a Chinese fire drill without having to run around the vehicle. The end effect can be the same as a wheel: the battle line is now facing ninety degrees to the left (right) of the original line.*

*Turns are frequently used in battalion formations such as “forward into line”.*

***Wheeling and changing direction to the side of the guide, in double quick time.***

403. When the recruits comprehend and execute well, in quick time, the wheels at a halt and in marching, and the change of direction to the side of the guide, the instructor will cause the same movements to be repeated in double quick time.

404. These various movements will be executed by the same commands and according to the same principles as in quick time, except that the command double quick will precede that of march. In wheeling while marching, the pivot man will take steps of eleven inches, and in the changes of direction to the side of the guide, the men on the side opposite the guide must increase the gait in order to bring themselves into line.

405. The instructor, in order not to fatigue the recruits, and not to divide their attention, will cause them to execute the several movements of which this lesson is composed, first without arms, and next, after the mechanism be well comprehended, with arms.

***LESSON V.***

***Long marches in double quick time and the run.***

406. The instructor will cause to be resumed the exercises in double quick time and the run, with arms and knapsacks.

407. He will cause long marches to be executed in double quick time, both by the front and by the flank, and by constant practice will lead the men to pass over a distance of five miles in sixty minutes. The pieces will be carried on either shoulder, and sometimes at a trail.

408. He will also exercise them in long marches at a run, the pieces carried at will; the men will be instructed to keep as united as possible, without however exacting much regularity, which is impracticable.

409. The run, in actual service, will only be resorted to when it may be highly important to reach a given point with great promptitude.

***Stack arms.***

The men being at order arms, the instructor will command:

***Stack-ARMS***

410. At this command, number two of the front rank will pass his piece before him, seize it with the left hand about the middle band; slope it across the body, barrel to the rear, the butt three inches above the right toe of the man on his left, muzzle six inches to the right of his right shoulder.

411. Number two of the rear rank will turn his piece, lock square to the front, and pass it to his front rank man, who will seize it with his right hand about the middle band and incline it forward, resting the neck of the bayonet on that of his own bayonet and close to the blade. Number one of the front rank will turn the barrel of his piece square to the front, slope it across the body, place the neck of his bayonet, above the necks, and between the blades of the other two bayonets, holding the piece with the right hand at the middle band, the butt three inches from the ground at his right toe.

412. Number two of the front rank will throw the butt of the rear rank man's piece about thirty inches to the front, at the same time resting the butt of his own piece on the ground on the left, and a little in rear of his left toe. At the same instant, number one of the front rank will rest the butt of his piece on the ground, a little on front of



his right toe. Number one of the rear rank will incline his piece on the stack thus formed.

413. The men of both ranks having taken the position of the soldier without arms, the instructor will command:

*1. Break ranks. 2. MARCH.*

*To resume arms.*

412. Both ranks being re-formed in rear of their stacks, the instructor will command:

*Take-ARMS.*

413. At this command number one of the rear rank will retake his piece. Number two of the front rank will seize his own piece with the left hand at the middle band, and his rear rank man's piece in like manner with his right hand; and number one of the front rank will seize his piece with his right hand in the same manner. These two men will raise the stack, bring the butts together and disengage the bayonets. Number two of the rear rank will receive his piece from his front rank man, and all will resume the position of ordered arms.

- End of the School of the Soldier -





## TITLE THIRD

### SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

#### *General Rules and Division of the School of the Company.*

1. Instruction by company will always precede that by battalion, and the object being to prepare the soldiers for the higher school, the exercises of detail by company will be strictly adhered to, as well in respect to principles, as the order of progression herein proscribed.

2. There will be attached to a company undergoing elementary instruction, a captain, a covering sergeant, and a certain number of file closers, the whole posted in the manner indicated, Title First, and, according to the same title, the officer charged with the exercise of such company will herein be denominated the instructor.

3. The School of the Company will be divided into six lessons, and each lesson will comprehend five articles, as follows:

#### LESSON I.

1. To open ranks.
2. Alignments in open ranks.
3. Manual of arms.
4. To close ranks.
5. Alignments, and manual of arms in closed ranks.

#### LESSON II.

1. To load in four times and at will.
2. To fire by company
3. To fire by file.
4. To fire by rank.
5. To fire by the rear rank.

#### LESSON III.

1. To march in line of battle.
2. To halt the company marching in line of battle, and to align it.
3. Oblique march in line of battle.
4. To mark time, to march in double quick time, and the back step.
5. To march in retreat in line of battle.

#### LESSON IV.

1. To march by the flank.
2. To change direction by file,
3. To halt the company marching by the flank, and to face it to the front.
4. The company being in march by the flank, to form it on the right or left by file into line of battle.
5. The company marching by the flank, to form it by company or platoon into line, and cause it to face to the right and left in marching.

#### LESSON V.

1. To break into column by platoon either at a halt, or while marching.
2. To march in column.

3. To change direction.
4. To halt the column.
5. Being in column by platoon, to form to the right or left into line of battle, either at a halt or marching.

## LESSON VI.

1. To break into platoons, and to re-form the company.
2. To break files to the rear, and to cause them to re-enter into line.
3. To march in column in route, and to execute the movements incident thereto.
4. Countermarch.
5. Being in column by platoon, to form on the right or left into line of battle.

4. The company will always be formed in two ranks. The instructor will then cause the files to be numbered, and for this purpose will command:

*In each rank - Count Twos.*

5. At this command, the men count in each rank, from right to left, pronouncing in a loud and distinct voice, in the same tone, without hurry and without turning the head, one, two, according to the place which each one occupies. He will also cause the company divided into platoons and sections, taking care that the first platoon is always composed of an even number of files.

6. The instructor will be as clear and concise as possible in his explanations; he will cause faults of detail to be rectified by the captain, to whom he will indicate them, if the captain should not have himself observed them; and the instructor will not otherwise interfere, unless the captain should not well comprehend, or should badly execute his intentions.

7. Composure, or presence of mind, in him who commands, and in those who obey, being the first means of order in a body of troops, the instructor will labor to habituate the company to this essential quality, and will himself give the example.

**LESSON FIRST.****ARTICLE FIRST***To open ranks.*

8. The company being at ordered arms, the ranks and file closers well aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause the ranks to be opened, he will direct the left guide to place himself on the left of the front rank, which being executed, he will command:

**1. Attention. 2. Company. 3. Shoulder-ARMS. 4. To the rear open order.**

9. At the fourth command, the covering sergeant, and the left guide, will step off smartly to the rear, four paces from the front rank, in order to mark the alignment of the rear rank. They will judge this distance by the eye, without counting the steps.

10. The instructor will place himself at the same time on the right flank, in order to observe if these two non-commissioned officers are on a line parallel to the front rank, and if necessary, to correct their positions, which being executed, he will command:

**5. MARCH.**

*Note that the distance the rear rank is to move back is "4 paces", which is 120 inches, not necessarily four steps backward! When the rear rank steps back to open the ranks, they do not count steps, but line up on the 1st and 2nd sergeants.*

11. At this command, the front rank will stand fast.

12. The rear rank will step to the rear, without counting the steps, and will place themselves on the alignment marked for this rank, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 321.

13. The covering sergeant will align the rear rank on the left guide placed to mark the left of this rank.

14. The file closers will march to the rear at the same time with the rear rank, and will place themselves two paces from this rank when it is aligned.

15. The instructor seeing the rear rank aligned, will command:

***6. FRONT.***

16. At this command, the sergeant on the left of the rear rank will return to his place as a file closer.

17. The rear rank being aligned, the instructor will direct the captain and the covering sergeant to observe the men in their respective ranks, and to correct, if necessary, the positions of persons and pieces.

***ARTICLE SECOND***

***Alignments in open ranks.***

18. The ranks being open, the instructor will, in the first exercises, align the ranks, man by man the better to inculcate the principles.

19. To effect this, he will cause two or four men on the right or left of each rank to march two or three paces forward, and, after having aligned them, command:

***By file right (or left)-DRESS.***

20. At this, the men of each rank will move up successively on the alignment, each man being preceded by his neighbor in the same rank, towards the basis, by two paces, and having correctly aligned himself, will cast his eyes to the front

21. Successive alignments having habituated the soldiers to dress correctly, the instructor will cause the ranks to align themselves at once, forward and backward, sometimes in a direction parallel, and sometimes in one oblique, to the original direction, giving, in each case, two or four men to serve as a basis of alignment to each rank. To effect which, he will command:

***1. Right (or left)- DRESS. 2. FRONT.***

or

***1. Right (or left) backward- DRESS 2. FRONT.***

22. In oblique alignments, in opened ranks, the men of the rear rank will not seek to cover their file leaders, as the sole object of the exercise is to teach them to align themselves correctly in their respective ranks, in the different directions.

23. In the several alignments, the captain will superintend the front rank, and the covering sergeant the rear rank. For this purpose, they will place themselves on the side by which the ranks are dressed.

24. In oblique alignments, the men will conform the line of their shoulders to the new direction of their rank, and will place themselves on the alignment as has been prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 317 or No. 321, according as the new direction shall be in front or rear of the original one.

25. At the end of each alignment, the captain and the covering sergeant will pass along the front of the ranks to correct the positions of persons and arms.

**ARTICLE THIRD.*****Manual of arms.***

26. The ranks being open, the instructor will place himself in a position to see the ranks, and will command the manual of arms in the following order:

<i>Present arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Order arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Ground arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Raise arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Support arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Fix bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Charge bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Trail arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Unfix bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Secure arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Shoulder arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Load in nine times.</i>	

27. The instructor will take care that the position of the body, of the feet, and of the piece, be always exact, and that the times be briskly executed and close to the person.

**ARTICLE FOURTH.*****To close ranks.***

26. The manual of arms being ended, the instructor will command:

*1. Close order. 2. MARCH.*

29. At the command *march*, the rear rank will close up in quick time, each man directing himself on his file leader.

**ARTICLE V.*****Alignments, and manual of arms in closed ranks.***

30. The ranks being closed, the instructor will cause to be executed parallel and oblique alignments by the right and left, forward and backward, observing to place always two or four files to serve as a basis of alignment. He will give the commands

prescribed, No. 21.

31. In alignments in closed ranks, the captain will superintend the front rank, and the covering sergeant the rear rank. They will habituate themselves to judge the alignment by the lines of the eyes and shoulders, in casting a glance of the eye along the front and rear of the ranks.

32. The moment the captain perceives the greater number 'of the front rank aligned, he will command *FRONT*, and rectify, afterwards, if necessary, the alignment of the other men by the means prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 320. The rear rank will conform to the alignment of the front rank, superintended by the covering sergeant.

33. The ranks being steady, the instructor will place himself on the flank to verify their alignment. He will also see that each rear rank man covers accurately his file leader.

34. In oblique alignments, the instructor will observe what is prescribed No. 24.

35. In all alignments, the file closers will preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank.

36. The alignments being ended, the instructor will cause to be executed the manual of arms.

37. The instructor, wishing to rest the men, without deranging the alignment, will first cause arms to be supported, or ordered, and then command:

*In place-REST.*

38. At this command, the men will no longer be constrained to preserve silence or steadiness of position; but they will always keep one or other heel on the alignment.

39. If, on the contrary, the instructor should wish to rest the men without constraining them to preserve the alignment, he will command:

*REST.*

40. At which command, the men will not be required to preserve immobility, or to remain in their places.

41. The instructor may, also, when he shall judge proper, cause arms to be stacked, which will be executed as prescribed, school of the soldier.

42. The instructor, wishing to pass to the second lesson, will cause the company to take arms, if stacks have been formed, and command:

*1. Attention 2. Company 3 Shoulder- ARMS*

43. The instructor will then cause loadings and firings to be executed in the following order:

*ARTICLE FIRST.*

*To load at four times and at will.*

44. Loading in four times will be commanded and executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 251, and following. The instructor will cause this exercise to be often repeated, in succession, before passing to load at will.

45 Loading at will will be commanded and executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No 256. In priming when loading in four times, and also at will, the captain and covering sergeant will half face to the right with the men, and face to the front when the man next to them, respectively brings his piece to the shoulder.

46. The instructor will labor to the utmost to cause the men, in the different loadings, to execute what has been prescribed in the school of the soldier Nos. 257 and 258.

47. Loading at will, being that of battle, and consequently the one with which it is most important to render the men familiar, it will claim preference in the exercises the moment the men be well established in the principles. To these they will be brought by degrees, so that every man may be able to load with cartridges, and to fire at least three rounds in a minute with ease and regularity

## *ARTICLE SECOND*

### *To fire by company.*

48. The instructor, wishing to cause the live by company to be executed, will command:

#### *Fire by Company. 2. Commence firing.*

49. At the first command, the captain will promptly place himself opposite the centre of his company, and four paces in rear of the line of file closers: the covering sergeant will retire to that line, and place himself opposite to his interval. This rule is general for both the captain; and covering sergeant in all the different firings.

50. At the second command the captain will add:

#### *1. Company; 2. READY 3. AIM; 4. FIRE; 5. LOAD*

51. At the command *load*, the men will load their pieces and then take the position of *ready*, as prescribed in the school of the soldier

52. The captain will immediately recommence the firing by the commands:

#### *1 Company. 2. AIM, 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.*

53. The firing will be thus continued until the signal to cease firing is sounded.

54. The captain will sometimes cause aim to be taken to the right and left, simply observing to pronounce *right* (or left) *oblique*, before the command aim.

## *ARTICLE THIRD*

### *The fire by file.*

65. The instructor wishing to cause the fire by file to be executed, will command

#### *1. Fire by file. 2. Company. 3; READY. 4. Commence firing.*

56. The third and fourth commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 275 and following.

57. The fire will be commenced by the right file of the company; the next file will take aim at the instant the first brings down pieces to re-load, and so on to the left; but this progression will only be observed in the first discharge, after which each man will re-load and fire without regulating himself by others, conforming himself to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 280.



**ARTICLE FOURTH*****The fire by rank.***

58. The instructor wishing the fire by rank to be executed, will command:

***1. Fire by rank. 2. Company. 3. READY. 4. Rear rank- AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.***

59. The fifth and sixth commands will be executed as is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 285 and following.

60. When the instructor sees one or two pieces in the rear rank at a ready, he will command:

***1. Front rank. 2. Aim. 3. FIRE 4. LOAD.***

61. The firing will be continued thus by alternate ranks, until the signal is given to cease firing.

62. The instructor will sometimes cause aim to be taken to the right and left, conforming to what is prescribed No. 54.

63. The instructor will cause the firing to cease, whether by company, by file, or by rank, by sounding the signal to *cease firing* and at the instant this sound commences, the men will cease to fire, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 282.

64. The signal to cease firing will always be followed by a bugle note; at which sound, the captain and covering sergeant will promptly resume their places in line, and will rectify, if necessary, the alignment of the ranks.

65. In this school, except when powder is used, the signal, to cease firing will be indicated by the command *cease firing*, which, will be pronounced by the instructor when he wishes the semblance of firing to cease.

66. The command posts will be likewise substituted, under similar circumstances, for the bugle note employed as the signal for the return of the captain and covering sergeant to their places in line which command will be given when the instructor sees the men have brought their pieces to a shoulder.

67. The fire by file being that which is most frequently used against an enemy, it is highly important that it be rendered perfectly familiar to the troops. The instructor will, therefore, give it almost exclusive preference, and labor to cause the men to aim with care, and always, if possible, at some particular object. As it is of the utmost importance that the men should aim with precision in battle, this principle will be rigidly enforced in the exercises for the purposes of instruction.

**ARTICLE FIFTH*****To fire by the rear rank.***

68. The instructor will cause the several fires to be executed to the rear, that is, by the rear rank. To effect this, he will command:

***1. Face by the rear rank. 2. Company. 3. About-FACE.***

69. At the first command, the captain will step out and place himself near to, and facing the right file of his company; the covering sergeant, and file closers, will pass quickly through the captain's interval, and place themselves faced to the rear, the covering sergeant a pace behind the captain, and the file closers two paces from the front rank opposite to their places in line, each passing behind the covering sergeant.

70. At the third command, which will be given at the instant the last file closer shall

have passed through the interval, the company will face about; the captain will place himself in his interval in the rear rank, now become the front, and the covering sergeant will cover him in the front rank, now become the rear.

71. The company having faced by the rear rank, the instructor will cause it to execute the fire by company, both direct and oblique, the fire by file, and the fire by rank, by the commands and means prescribed in the three preceding articles; the captain, covering sergeant, and the men will conform themselves, in like manner, to what is therein prescribed.

72. The fire by file will commence on the left of the company, now become the right. In the fire by rank, the firing will commence with the front rank, now become the rear.

73. To resume the proper front, the instructor will command:

*1. Face by the front rank. 2. Company. 3. About-FACE.*

74. At the first command, the captain covering sergeant and file closers will conform to what is prescribed Nos. 60 and 70.

75. At the third command, the company having faced about, the captain and covering sergeant will resume their places in line.

76. In this lesson, the instructor will impress on the men the importance of aiming always at some particular object, and of holding the piece as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 178.

77. The instructor will recommend to the captain to make a short pause between the commands aim and fire, to give the men time to aim with accuracy.

78. The instructor will place himself in position to see the two ranks, in order to detect faults; he will charge the captain and file closers to be equally watchful, and to report to him when the ranks are at rest. He will remand, for individual instruction, the man who may be observed to load badly.

79. The instructor will recommend to the soldiers, in the firings, the highest degree of composure or presence of mind; he will neglect nothing that may contribute to this end.

80. He will give to the men, as a general principle, to maintain, in the direct fire, the left heel in its place, in order that the alignment of the ranks and files may not be deranged; and he will verify, by examination, after each exercise in firing, the observance of this principle.

81. The instructor will observe, in addition to these remarks, all those which follow:

82. When the firing is executed with cartridges, it is particularly recommended that the men observe, in uncocking, whether smoke escapes from the tube, which is a certain indication that the piece has been discharged; but if, on the contrary, no smoke escapes, the soldier, in such case, instead of reloading, will pick and prime again. If, believing the load to be discharged, the soldier should put a second cartridge in his piece, he ought, at least, to perceive it in ramming, by the height of the load; and he would be very culpable should he put in a third. The instructor will always cause arms to be inspected after firing with cartridges, in order to observe if the fault has been committed, of putting three cartridges, without a discharge, in the same piece, in which case the ball screw will be applied.

83. It sometimes happens when a cap has missed fire, that the tube is found stopped up with a hard, white, and compact powder; in this case, picking will be dispensed with, and a new cap substituted for the old one.

**LESSON THIRD.****ARTICLE FIRST.*****To advance in line of battle.***

84. The company being in line of battle and correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to exercise it in marching by the front, he will assure himself that the shoulders of the captain and covering sergeant are perfectly in the direction of their respective ranks, and that the sergeant accurately covers the captain; the instructor will then place himself twenty-five or thirty paces in front of them, face to the rear, and place himself exactly on the prolongation of the line passing between their heels.

85. The instructor, being aligned on the directing file, will command:

***1. Company, forward.***

86. At this, a sergeant, previously designated, will move six paces in advance of the captain: the instructor, from the position prescribed, will correctly align this sergeant on the prolongation of the directing file.

87. This advanced sergeant, who is to be charged with the direction, will, the moment his position is assured, take two points on the ground in the straight line which would pass between his own and the heels of the instructor.

88. These dispositions being made, the instructor will step aside, and command:

***2. MARCH.***

89. At this, the company will step off with life. The directing sergeant will observe with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, marching on the two points he has chosen; he will take in succession, and always a little before arriving at the point nearest to him, new points in advance, exactly in the same line with the first two, and at the distance of some, fifteen or twenty paces from each other. The captain will march steadily in the trace of the directing sergeant, keeping always six paces from him; the men will each maintain the head direct to the front, feel lightly the elbow of his neighbor on the side of direction, and conform himself to the principles prescribed, school of the soldier, for the march by front.

90. The man next to the captain will take special care not to pass him; to this end, he will keep the line of his shoulders a little in the rear, but in the, same direction with those of the captain.

91. The file closers will march at the habitual distance of two paces behind the rear rank.

92. If the men lose the step, the instructor will command;

***To the-STEP***

93. At this command, the men will glance towards the directing sergeant, retake the step from him, and again direct their eyes to the front.

94. The instructor will cause the captain and covering sergeant to be posted sometimes on the right, and sometimes on the left of the company.

95. The directing sergeant, in advance, having the greatest influence on the march of the company, he will be selected for the precision of his step, his habit of maintaining his shoulders in a square with a given line of direction, and of prolonging that line without variation.

96. If this sergeant should fail to observe these principles, undulations in the front of the company must necessarily follow; the men will be unable to contract the habit of taking steps equal in length and swiftness, and of maintaining their shoulders in a square with the line of direction the only means of attaining perfection in the march

in line.

97. The instructor, with a view the better to establish the men in the length and cadence of the step, and in the principles of the march in line, will cause the company to advance three or four hundred paces, at once, without halting if the ground will permit. In the first exercises, he will march the company with open ranks, the better to observe the two ranks.

98. The instructor will see, with care that all the principles of the march in line are strictly observed; he will generally be on the directing flank, in a position to observe the two ranks and the faults they may commit; he will sometimes halt, behind the directing file during some thirty successive steps, in order to judge whether the directing sergeant or the directing file, deviate from the perpendicular.

## *ARTICLE SECOND.*

### *To halt the company marching in line of battle, and to align it.*

99. The instructor, wishing to halt the company will command:

#### *1. Company. HALT.*

100. At the second command, the company will halt; the directing sergeant will remain in advance unless ordered to return to the line of file closers. The company being at a halt the instructor may advance the first three or four files on the side of direction and align the company on that basis, or he may confine himself to causing the alignment to be rectified. In this last case, he will command: *Captain, rectify the alignment.* The captain will direct the covering sergeant to attend to the rear rank, when each, glancing his eyes along his rank, will promptly rectify it, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier No. 320.

## *ARTICLE THIRD.*

### *Oblique march in line of battle.*

101. The company being in the direct march, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march obliquely, he will command:

#### *1. Right (or left) oblique. 2. MARCH.*

102. At the command *march*, the company will take the oblique step. The men will accurately observe the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 331. The rear rank men will preserve their distances, and march in rear of the man next on the right (or left) of their habitual file leaders.

103. When the instructor wishes the direct march to be resumed he will command:

#### *1. Forward. 2. MARCH.*

104. At the command *march*, the company will resume the direct march. The instructor will move briskly twenty paces in front of the captain, and facing the company, will place himself exactly in the prolongation of the captain and covering sergeant; and then by a sign, will move the directing sergeant on the same line, if he be not already on it; the latter will immediately take two points on the ground between himself and the instructor, and as he advances, will take new points of direction, as is explained No. 89.

105. In the oblique march, the men not having the touch of elbows, the guide will always be on the side toward which the oblique is made, without any indication to that effect being given; and when the direct march is resumed, the guide will be, equally without indication, on the side where it was previous to the oblique.

106. The instructor will, at first, cause the oblique to be made toward the side of the guide. He will also direct the captain to have an eye on the directing sergeant, in order to keep on the same perpendicular line to the front with him, while following a parallel direction.

107. During the continuance of the march, the instructor will be watchful that the men follow parallel directions, in conforming to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, for preserving the general alignment; whenever the men lose the alignment, he will be careful that they regain it by lengthening or shortening the step, without altering the cadence, or changing the direction.

108. The instructor will place himself in front of the company and face to it, in order to regulate the march of the directing sergeant or the man who is on the flank toward which the oblique is made, and to see that the principles of the march are properly observed, and that the files do not crowd.

#### **ARTICLE FOURTH**

##### ***To mark time, to march in double quick time, and the back step.***

109. The company being in the direct march, and in quick time, the instructor, to cause it to mark time, will command:

***1. Mark time. 2. MARCH.***

110. To resume the march, he will command:

***1. Forward. 2. MARCH.***

111. To cause the march in double quick time, the instructor will command:

***1. Double quick. 2. MARCH.***

112. The command *march* will be pronounced at the instant either foot is coming to the ground.

113. To resume quick time, the instructor will command:

***1. Quick time. 2. MARCH.***

114. The command *march* will be pronounced at the instant either foot is coming to the ground.

115. The company being at a halt, the instructor may cause it to march in the back step; to this effect, he will command:

***1. Company backward. 2. MARCH.***

116. The back step will be executed according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 247, but the use of it being rare, the instructor will not cause more than fifteen or twenty steps to be taken in succession, and to that extent but seldom.

117. The instructor ought not to exercise the company in marching in double quick time till the men are well established in the length and swiftness of the pace in quick time; he will then endeavor to render the march of one hundred and sixty-five steps in the minute equally easy and familiar, and also cause them to observe the same

erectness of body and composure of mind, as if marching in quick time.

118. When marching in double quick time, if a subdivision (in a column) has to change direction by turning, or has to form into line, the men will quicken the pace to one hundred and eighty steps in a minute. The same swiftness of step will be observed under all circumstances where great rapidity of movement is required. But, as ranks of men cannot march any length of time at so swift a rate, without breaking or confusion, this acceleration will not be considered a prescribed exercise, and accordingly companies or battalions will only be habitually exercised in the double quick time of one hundred and sixty-five steps in the minute.

## **ARTICLE FIFTH.**

### ***To march in retreat.***

119. The company being halted and correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march in retreat, he will command:

#### ***1. Company. 2. About-FACE.***

120. The company having faced to the rear, the instructor will place himself in front of the directing file, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 84.

121. The instructor, being correctly established on the prolongation of the directing file, will command:

#### ***3. Company, forward.***

122. At this, the directing sergeant will conform himself to what is prescribed Nos. 86 and 87, with this difference—he will place himself six paces in front of the line of file closers, now leading.

123. The covering sergeant will step into the line of file closers, opposite to his interval, and the captain will place himself in the rear rank, now become the front.

124. This disposition being promptly made, the instructor will command:

#### ***4. MARCH.***

125. At this, the directing sergeant, the captain, and the men, will conform themselves to what is prescribed No. 89, and following.

126. The instructor will cause to be executed, marching in retreat, all that is prescribed for marching in advance; the commands and the means of execution will be the same.

127. The instructor having halted the company, will, when he may wish, cause it to face to the front by the commands prescribed No. 119. The captain, the covering sergeant, and the directing sergeant, will resume their habitual places in line, the moment they shall have faced about.

128. The company being in march by the front rank, if the instructor should wish it to march in retreat, he will cause the right about to be executed while marching, and to this effect will command:

#### ***1. Company. 2 Right about. 3. MARCH.***

129. At the third command, the company will promptly face about, and recommence the march arch by the rear rank.

130. The directing sergeant will face about with the company, and will move rapidly six paces in front of the file closers, and upon the prolongation of the guide. The instructor will place him in the proper direction by the means prescribed No. 104.

The captain, the covering sergeant, and the men, will conform to the principles prescribed for the march in retreat.

131. When the instructor wishes the company to march by the front rank, he will give the same commands, and will regulate the direction of the march by the same means.

132. The instructor will cause to be executed in double quick time, all the movements prescribed in the 3d, 4th, 5th and 6th lessons of this school, with the exception of the march backwards, which will be executed only in quick time. He will give the same commands, observing to add double quick before the command march.

133. When the pieces are carried on the right shoulder, in quick time, the distance between the ranks will be sixteen inches. Whenever, therefore, the instructor brings the company from a shoulder to this position, the rear rank must shorten a little the first steps in order to gain the prescribed distance, and will lengthen the steps, on the contrary, in order to close up when the pieces are again brought to a shoulder. In marching in double quick time the distance between the ranks will be twenty-six inches, and the pieces will be carried habitually on the right shoulder.

134. Whenever a company is halted, the men will bring their pieces at once to a shoulder at the command *halt*. The rear rank will close to its proper distance. These rules are general.

## LESSON FOURTH

### ARTICLE FIRST

#### *To march by the flank*

135. The company being in line of battle, and at a halt, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march by the right flank, he will command:

**1. Company, right-FACE. 2. Forward. 3. MARCH.**

136. At the first command, the company will face to the right, the covering sergeant will place himself at the head of the front rank the captain having stepped out for the purpose, so, far as to find, himself by the side of the sergeant, and on his left; the front rank will double as is prescribed in the school of the soldier No. 352; the rear rank will, at the same time, side step to the right one pace, and double in the same manner; go that when the movement is completed, the files will be formed of four men aligned, and elbow to elbow. The intervals will be preserved.

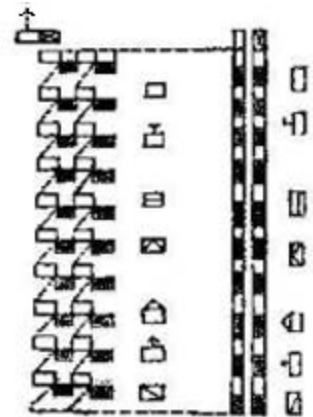
137. The file closers will also move by side step to the right, so that when the ranks are formed, they will be two paces from the rearmost rank.

138. At the command *march*, the company will move off briskly in quick time; the covering sergeant at the head of the front rank; and the captain on his left, will march straight forward. The men of each file will march abreast of their respective front rank men, heads direct to the front; the file closers will march opposite their places in line of battle.

139. The instructor will cause the principles of the march by the flank to be observed, in placing himself pending on the march, as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 357.

140. The instructor will cause the march by the left flank to be executed by the same commands, substituting left for right; the ranks will double as has been prescribed in the school for the soldier, No. 354; the rear rank will side-step to the left one pace before doubling.

141. At the instant the company faces to the left, the left guide will place himself at the head of the front rank; the captain will pass rapidly to the left, and place himself by the right side of this guide; the covering sergeant will replace the captain in the



*"Company, Right -FACE" ... also called moving by the right flank, this takes the company from line of battle to a column of fours, faced to the right. The same thing will happen if, when you're marching forward in line of battle, if you order, "By the Right Flank, March" ... essentially right face (or left face), on the move.*

front rank, the moment the latter quits it to go to the left.

### **ARTICLE SECOND.**

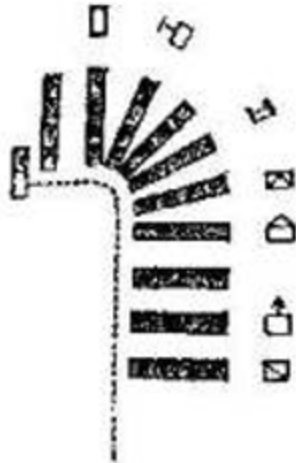
#### ***To change direction by file.***

142. The company being faced by the flank, and either in march, or at a halt, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to wheel by file, he will command:

#### ***1. By file, left, (or right). 2. MARCH.***

143. At the command *march*, the first file will wheel; if to the side of the front rank man, the latter will take care not to turn at once, but to describe a short arc of a circle, shortening a little the first five or six steps in order to give time to the fourth man of this file to conform himself to the movement. If the wheel be to the side of the rear rank, the front rank man will wheel in the step of twenty-eight inches, and the fourth man will conform himself to the movement by describing a short arc of a circle as has been explained. Each file will come to wheel on the same ground where that which preceded it wheeled.

144. The instructor will see that the wheel be executed according to these principles, in order that the distance between the files may always be preserved, and that there be no check or hindrance at the wheeling point.



**“By File Left -MARCH”.** Each rank of fours wheels successively at the point where the turn is ordered; the company retains its formation in march column.

### **ARTICLE THIRD.**

#### ***To halt the company marching by the flank, and to face it to the front.***

145. To effect these objects, the instructor will command:

#### ***1. Company. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.***

146. The second and third commands will be executed as proscribed in the school of the soldier, Nos. 359 and 360. As soon as the files have undoubled, the rear rank will close to its proper distance. The captain and covering sergeant, as well as the left guide, if the march be by the left flank, will return to their habitual places in line at the instant the company faces to the front.

147. The instructor may then align the company by one of the means prescribed, No. 100.

### **ARTICLE FOURTH.**

#### ***The company being in march by the flank, to form it on the right (or left) by file into line of battle.***

148. If the company be marching by the right flank, the instructor will command:

#### ***1. On the right, by file into line. 2. MARCH.***

149. At the command *march*, the rear rank men doubled will mark time; the captain and the covering sergeant will turn to the right, march straight forward, and



be halted by the instructor when they shall have passed at least six paces beyond the rank of file closers; the captain will place himself correctly on the line of battle, and will direct the alignment as the men of the front rank successively arrive; the covering sergeant will place himself behind the captain at the distance of the rear rank; the two men on the right of the front rank doubled, will continue to march, and passing beyond the covering sergeant and the captain, will turn to the right; after turning, they will continue to march elbow to elbow, and direct themselves towards the line of battle, but when they shall arrive at two paces from this line, the even number will shorten the step so that the odd number may precede him on the line, the odd number placing himself by the side and on the left of the captain; the even number will afterwards oblique to the left, and place himself on the left of the odd number; the next two men of the front rank doubled, will pass in the same manner behind the two first, turn then to the right, and place themselves, according to the means just explained, to the left, and by the side of, the two men already established on the line; the remaining files of this rank will follow in succession, and be formed to the left in the same manner. The rear rank doubled will execute the movement in the manner already explained for the front rank, taking care not to commence the movement until four men of the front rank are established on the line of battle; the rear rank men, as they arrive on the line, will cover accurately their file leaders.

150. If the company be marching by the left flank, the instructor will cause it to form by file on the left into line of battle, according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting the indication left for right. In this case, the odd numbers will shorten the step, so that the even numbers may precede them on the line. The captain, placed on the left of the front rank, and the left guide, will return to their places in line of battle, by order of the instructor, after the company shall be formed and aligned.

151. To enable the men the better to comprehend the mechanism of this movement, the instructor will at first cause it to be executed separately by each rank doubled, and afterwards by the two ranks united and doubled.

152. The instructor will place himself on the line of battle, and without the point where, the right or left is to rest, in order to establish the base of the alignment, and afterwards, he will follow up the movement to assure himself that each file conforms itself to what is prescribed No. 149.

The company being in march by the flank, to form it by company, or by platoon, into line, and to cause it to face to the right and left in marching.

153. The company being in march by the right flank, the instructor will order the captain to form it into line; the captain will immediately command:

**1. By company, into line. 2. MARCH.**

154. At the command *march*, the covering sergeant will continue to march straight forward; the men will advance the right shoulder, take the double quick step, and move into line, by the shortest route, taking care to undouble the files, and to come on the line one after the other.

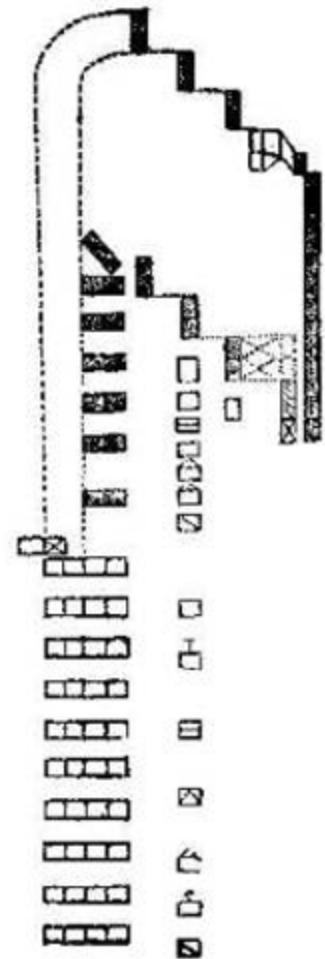
155. As the front rank men successively arrive in line with the covering sergeant, they will take from him the step, and then turn their eyes to the front.

156. The men of the rear rank will conform to the movements of their respective file leaders, but without endeavoring to arrive in line at the same time with the latter.

157. At the instant the movement begins, the captain will face to his company in order to follow up the execution; and, as soon as, the company is formed, he will command, *guide left*, place himself two paces before the centre, face to the front, and take the step of the company.

158. At the command *guide left*, the second sergeant will promptly place himself in the front rank, on the left, to serve as guide, and the covering sergeant who is on the opposite flank will remain there.

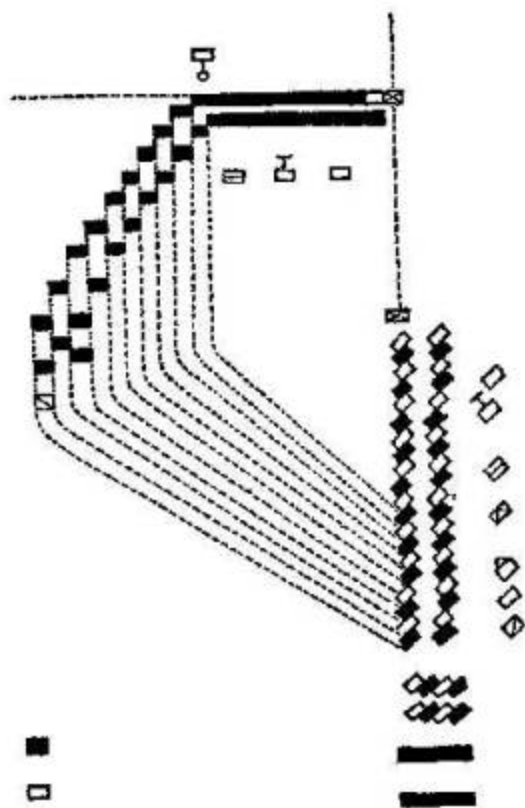
159. When the company marches by the left flank, this movement will be executed by the same commands, and according to the same principles; the company being



"On the right, by file, into line."

"Advancing the shoulder" means a partial turn... it serves as a preparation to the oblique movement that must be executed in order to get the column smoothly into line.

You will see the term "advance the shoulder" repeated in the School of the Soldier's instructions for right (or left) turns.



"By Company into line, MARCH."

formed, the captain will command *guide right*, and place himself in front of his company as above; the covering sergeant who is on the right of the front rank will serve as guide, and the second sergeant placed on the left flank will remain there.

160. Thus, in a column by company, right or left in front, the covering sergeant and the second sergeant of each company will always be placed on the right and left, respectively, of the front rank; they will be denominated *right guide* and *left guide*, and the one or the other charged with the direction.

161. The company being in march by the flank, if it be the wish of the instructor to cause it to form platoons, he will give an order to that effect to the captain, who will command:

**1. By platoon, into line. 2. MARCH.**

162. The movement will be executed by each platoon according to the above principles. The captain will place himself before the centre of the first platoon, and the first lieutenant before the centre of the second, passing through the opening made in the centre of the company, if the march be by the right flank, and around the left of his platoon, if the march be by the left; in this last case the captain will also pass around the left of the second platoon in order to place himself in front of the first. Both the captain and lieutenant, without waiting for each other, will command *guide left* (or *right*), at the instant their respective platoons are formed.

163. At the command *guide left* (or *right*) the guide of each platoon will pass rapidly to the indicated flank of the platoon, if not already there.

164. The right guide of the company will always serve as the guide of the right or left of the first platoon, and the left guide of the company will serve, in like manner, as the guide of the second platoon.

165. Thus in a column, by platoon, there will be but one guide to each platoon; he will always be placed on its left flank, if the right be in front, and on the right flank, if the left be in front.

166. In these movements, the file closers will follow the platoons to which they are attached.

167. The instructor may cause the company, marching by the flank, to form by company, or by platoon, into line, by his own direct commands, using those prescribed for the captain, No. 153 or 161.

168. The instructor will exercise the company in passing, without a halt, from the march by the front, to the march by the flank, and reciprocally. In either case, he will employ the commands prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 363, substituting company for squad. The company will face to the right or left, in marching, and the captain, the guides, and file closers will conform themselves to what is prescribed for each in the march by the flank, or in the march by the front of a company supposed to be a subdivision of a column.

169. If, after facing to the right or left, in marching, the company find itself faced by the rear rank, the captain will place himself two paces behind the center of the front rank, now in the rear, the guides will pass to the rear rank, now leading, and the file closers will march in front of this rank.

170. The instructor, in order to avoid fatiguing the men, and to prevent them from being negligent in the position of shoulder arms, will sometimes order support arms in marching by the flank, and arms on the right shoulder, when marching in line.

**LESSON FIFTH.**

**ARTICLE FIRST.**

**To break into column by platoon, either at a halt or in march.**

171. The company being at a halt, in line of battle, the instructor, wishing to break it into column, by platoon to the right, will command:

**1. By platoon, right wheel. 2. MARCH.**

172. At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will place themselves rapidly two paces before the centers of their respective platoons, the lieutenant passing around the left of the company. They need not occupy themselves with dressing, one upon the other. The covering sergeant will replace the captain in the front rank.

173. At the command *march*, the right front rank man of each platoon will face to the right, the covering sergeant standing fast; the chief of each platoon will move quickly by the shortest line, a little beyond the point at which the marching flank will rest when the wheel shall be completed, face to the late rear, and place himself so that the line which he forms with the man on the right (who had faced,) shall be perpendicular to that occupied by the company in line of battle; each platoon will wheel according to the principles prescribed for the wheel on a fixed pivot, and when the man who conducts the marching flank shall approach to near to the perpendicular, its chief will command:

**1. Platoon. 2. HALT.**

174. At the command *halt*, which will be given at the instant the man who conducts the marching flank shall have arrived at three paces from the perpendicular, the platoon will halt; the covering sergeant will move to the point where the left of the first platoon is to rest, passing by the front rank; the second sergeant will place himself, in like manner, in respect to the second platoon. Each will take care to leave between himself and the man on the right of his platoon, a space equal to its front; the captain and first lieutenant will look to this, and each take care to align the sergeant between himself and the man of the platoon who had faced to the right.

175. The guide of each platoon being thus established on the perpendicular, each chief will place himself two paces outside of is guide, and facing towards him, will command:

**3. Left-DRESS.**

176. The alignment being ended, each chief of platoon will command, **FRONT**, and place himself two paces before its centre.

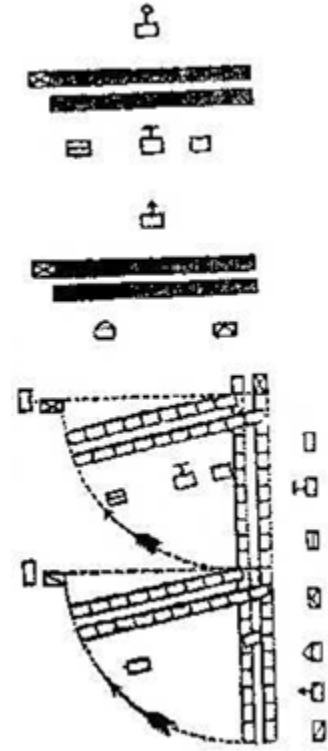
177. The file closers will conform themselves to the movement of their respective platoons, preserving always the distance of two paces from the rear rank.

178. The company will break by platoon to the left, according to the same principles. The instructor will command:

**1. By platoon, left wheel. 2. MARCH.**

179. The first command will be executed in the same manner as if breaking by platoon to the right.

180. At the command *march*, the left front rank man of each platoon will face to the left, and the platoons will wheel to the left, according to the principles prescribed for the wheel on a fixed pivot; the chiefs of platoon will conform to the principles indicated Nos. 173 and 174.



**"By Platoon, right wheel, MARCH."**  
Breaking from company line of battle to a column of platoons.

181. At the command *halt*, given by the chief of each platoon, the covering sergeant on the right of the front rank of the first platoon, and the second sergeant near the left of the second platoon, will each move to the points where the right of his platoon is to rest. The chief of each platoon should be careful to align the sergeant between himself and the man of the platoon who had faced to the left, and will then command:

***Right-DRESS.***

182. The platoons being aligned, each chief of platoon will command, ***FRONT***, and place himself opposite its centre.

183. The instructor wishing to break the company by platoon to the right and to move the column forward after the wheel is completed, will caution the company to that effect, and command:

***1. By platoon, right wheel. 2. MARCH.***

184. At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will move rapidly in front of their respective platoons, conforming to what has been prescribed No. 172, and will remain in this position during the continuance of the wheel. The covering sergeant will replace the chief of the first platoon in the front rank.

185. At the command march, the platoons will wheel to the right, conforming to the principles herein prescribed; the man on the pivot will not face to the right, but will mark time, conforming himself to the movement of the marching flank; and when the man who is on the left of this flank shall arrive near the perpendicular, the instructor will command:

***3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide left.***

186. At the fourth command, which will be given at the instant the wheel is completed, the platoons will move straight to the front, all the men taking the step of twenty-eight inches. The covering sergeant and the second sergeant will move rapidly to the left of their respective platoons, the former passing before the front rank. The leading guide will immediately take points on the ground in the direction which may be indicated to him by the instructor.

187. At the fifth command, the men will take the touch of elbows lightly to the left.

188. If the guide of the second platoon should lose his distance, or the line of direction, he will conform to the principles herein prescribed, Nos. 202 and 203.

189. If the company be marching in line to the front, the instructor will cause it to break by platoon to the right by the same commands. At the command march, the platoons will wheel in the manner already explained, the man on the pivot will take care to mark time in his place, without advancing or receding; the instructor, the chiefs of platoon, and the guides, will conform to what has been prescribed Nos. 184 and following.

190. The company may be broken by platoons to the left, according to the same principles, and by inverse means, the instructor giving the commands prescribed Nos. 183 and 185, substituting left for right, and reciprocally

191. The movements explained in Nos. 183 and 189 will only be executed after the company has become well established in the principles of the march in column, Articles Second and Third.

***Remarks.***

192. The instructor, placed in front of the company, will observe whether the movement be executed according to the principles prescribed above; whether the platoons, after breaking into column, are perpendicular to the line of battle just occupied; and whether the guide, who placed himself where the marching flank of his platoon had to rest, has left, between himself and the front rank man on the right

(or left), the space necessary to contain the front of the platoon.

193. After the platoons have broken, if the rearmost guard should not accurately cover the leading one, he will not seek to correct his position till the column be put in march, unless the instructor, wishing to wheel immediately into line, should think it necessary to rectify the direction of the guides, which would be executed as will be hereinafter explained in Article Fifth of this lesson.

194. The instructor will observe, that the man on the right (or left) of each platoon, who, at the command march, faces to go right (or left) being the true pivot of the wheel, the front rank man next to him ought to gain it little ground to the front in wheeling, so as clear the pivot-man.

## **ARTICLE SECOND.**

### ***To march in column.***

195. The company having broken by platoon, right (or left) in front, the instructor, wishing to cause the column to march, will throw himself twenty-five or thirty paces in front, face to the guides, place himself correctly, on their direction, and caution the leading guide to take points on the ground.

196. The instructor being thus placed, the guide of the leading platoon will take two points on the ground in the straight line passing between his own and the heels of his instructor.

197. These dispositions being made, the instructor will step aside and command:

***1. Column, forward. 2. Guide left (or right). 3. MARCH.***

198. At the command *march*, promptly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, they, as well as the guides, will lead off, by a decided step, their respective platoons in order that the whole may move smartly, and at the same moment.

199. The men will each feel lightly the elbow of his neighbor toward the guide, and conform himself, in marching, to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 327. The man next to the guide, in each platoon, will take care never to pass him, and also to march always about six inches to the right (or left) from him, in order not to push him out of the direction.

200. The leading guide will observe, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, and maintain the direction of his march by the means prescribed No. 89.

201. The following guide will march exactly in the trace of the leading one, preserving between the latter and himself a distance precisely equal to the front of his platoon, and marching in the same step with the leading guide.

202. If the following guide lose his distance from the one leading, (which can only happen by his own fault,) he will correct himself by slightly lengthening or shortening a few steps, in order that there may not be sudden quickenings or slackenings in the march of his platoon.

203. If the same guide, having neglected to march exactly in the trace of the preceding one, find himself sensibly out of the direction, he will remedy this fault by advancing more or less the shoulder opposite to the true direction, and thus, in a few steps, insensibly regain it, without the inconvenience of the oblique step, which would cause a loss of distance. In all cases, each chief of platoon will cause it to conform to the movements of its guide.

*The guide (the point everyone lines up on) of a column marching right-in-front (with the rightmost company or platoon in front) is generally to the left. e.g. on the left guide (2nd sgt.) The guide of a column marching left-in-front is generally to the right.*

***Remarks on the march in column.***

204. If the chiefs and guides of subdivisions neglect to lead off and to decide the march from the first step, the march will be begun in uncertainty, which will cause waverings, a loss of step and a loss of distance.

205. If the leading guide take unequal steps, the march of his subdivision, and that which follows, will be uncertain; there will be undulations, quickenings, and slackenings in the march.

206. If the same guide be not habituated to prolong a given direction, without deviation, he will describe a crooked line, and the column must wind to conform itself to such line.

207. If the following guide be not habituated to march in the trace of the preceding one, he will lose his distance at every moment in endeavors to regain the trace, the preservation of which is the most important principle in the march in column.

208. The guide of each subdivision in column will be responsible for the direction, distance and step; the chief of the subdivision for the order and conformity of his subdivision with the movements of the guide. Accordingly, the chief will frequently turn, in the march, to observe his subdivision.

209. The instructor placed on the flank of the guides, will watch over the execution of all the principles prescribed ; he will, also, sometimes place himself in the rear, align himself on the guides, and halt, pending some thirty paces together, to verify the accuracy of the guides.

210. In column, chiefs of subdivision will always repeat, with the greatest promptitude, the commands march and halt, no chief waiting for another, but each repeating the command the moment he catches it from the instructor. They will repeat no other command given by him; but will explain, if necessary, to their subdivisions, in an under tone of voice, what they will have to execute, as indicated by the commands of caution.

***ARTICLE THIRD,******To change direction***

211. The changes of direction of a column while marching, will be executed according to the principles prescribed for wheeling on the march. Whenever, therefore, a column is to change direction, the instructor will change the guide, if not already there, to the flank opposite the side to which the change is to be made.

212. The column being in march right in front, if it be the wish of the instructor to change direction to the right, he will give the order to the chief of the first platoon, and immediately go himself, or send a marker to the point at which the change of direction is to be made; the instructor, or marker, will place himself on the direction of the guides, so as to present the breast to that flank of the column.

213. The leading guide will direct his march on that person, so that, in passing, his left arm may just graze his breast. When the leading guide shall have approached near to the marker, the chief of his platoon will command:

***1. Right wheel. 2. MARCH.***

214. The first command will be given when the platoon is at the distance of four paces from the marker.

215. At the command march, which will be pronounced at the instant the guide shall have arrived opposite the marker, the platoon will wheel to the right, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 396

216. The wheel being finished, the chief of each platoon will command:

**3. Forward. 4. MARCH.**

217. These commands will be pronounced and executed as is prescribed in the school of the soldier, Nos. 398 and 399. The guide of the first platoon will take points on the ground in the new direction, in order the better to regulate the march.

218. The second platoon will continue to march straight forward till up with the marker, when it will wheel to the right, and retake the direct march by the same commands and the same means which governed the first platoon.

219. The column being in march right in front, if the instructor should wish to change direction to the left, he will command, guide right. At this command, the two guides will move rapidly to the right of their respective platoons, each passing in front of his subdivision; the men will take the touch of elbows to the right; the instructor will afterwards conform to what is prescribed No. 212.

220. The change of direction to the left will then be executed according to the same principles as the change of direction to the right, but by inverse means.

221. When the change of direction is completed, the instructor will command, guide left.

222. The changes of direction in a column, left in front, will be executed according to the same principles.

223. In changes of direction in double quick time, the platoons will wheel according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 404.

224. In order to prepare the men for those formations in line, which can be executed only by turning to the right or the left, the instructor will sometimes cause the column to change direction to the side of the guide. In this case, the chief of the leading platoon will command: left (or right) turn, instead of left (or right) wheel. The subdivisions will each turn, in succession, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 402. The leading guide, as soon as he has turned, will take points on the ground the better to regulate the direction of the march. .

225 It is highly important, in order to preserve distances and the direction, that all the subdivisions of the column should change direction precisely at the point where the leading subdivision changed; it is for this reason that that point ought to be marked in advance, and that it is prescribed that the guides direct their march on the marker, also that each chief of subdivision shall not cause the change to commence till the guide of his subdivision has grazed the breast of this marker.

226. Each chief will take care that his subdivision arrives at the point of change in a square with the line of direction; with this view, he will face to his subdivision when the one which precedes has commenced to turn or to wheel, and he will be watchful that it continues to march squarely until it arrives at the point where the change of direction is to commence.

227. If, in changes of direction, the pivot of the subdivision which wheels should not clear the wheeling point, the next subdivision would be arrested and distances lost; for the guide who conducts the marching flank having to describe an arc, in length about a half greater than the front of the subdivision, the second subdivision would be already up with the wheeling point, whilst the first which wheels has yet the half of its front to execute, and hence would be obliged to mark time until that half be executed. It is therefore prescribed, that the pivot of each subdivision should take steps of nine or eleven inches in length, according to the swiftness of the gait, in order not to arrest the march of the next subdivision. The chiefs of subdivision will look well to the step of the pivot, and cause his step to be lengthened or shortened as may be judged necessary. By the nature of this movement, the centre of each subdivision will bend a little to the rear.

228. The guides will never alter the length or the cadence of the step, whether the change of direction be to the side of the guide or to the opposite side.

229. The marker, placed at the wheeling point, will always present his breast to the flank of the column. The instructor will take the greatest pains in causing the prescribed principles to be observed; he will see that each subdivision only commences the change of direction when the guide, grazing the breast of the marker, has nearly

passed him, and, that the marching flank does not describe the arc of too large a circle, in order that it may not be thrown beyond the new direction.

230. In change of direction by wheel, the guide of the wheeling flank will cast his eyes over the ground at the moment of commencing the wheel, and will describe an arc of a circle whose radius is equal to the front of the subdivision.

#### ***ARTICLE FOURTH.***

##### ***To halt the column.***

231. The column being in march, when the instructor shall wish to halt it, he will command:

##### ***1. Column. 2. HALT***

232. At the second command, promptly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the column will halt; the guides will also stand fast, although they may have lost both distance and direction.

233. If the command *halt*, be not repeated with the greatest vivacity, and executed at the same instant, distances will be lost.

234. If a guide, having lost his distance, seek to recover it after that command, he will only throw his fault on the following guide, who, if he have marched well, will no longer be at his proper distance; and if the latter regain what he has thus lost, the movement will be propagated to the rear of the column.

#### ***ARTICLE FIFTH.***

##### ***Being in column by platoon, to form to the right or left into line of battle, either at a halt or on the march.***

235. The instructor having halted the column, right in front, and wishing to form it into line of battle, will place himself at platoon distance in front of the leading guide, face to him, and rectify, if necessary, the position of the guide beyond; which being executed, he will command:

##### ***Left-DRESS.***

236. At this command, which will not be repeated by the chiefs of platoon, each of them will place himself briskly two paces outside of his guide, and direct the alignment of the platoon perpendicularly to the direction of the column.

237. Each chief having aligned his platoon, will command ***FRONT***, and return quickly to his place in column.

238. This disposition being made, the instructor will command:

##### ***1. Left into line, wheel. 2. MARCH.***

239. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by chiefs of platoon, the front rank man on the left of each platoon will face to the left, and place his breast lightly against the arm of the guide by his side, who stands fast; the platoons will wheel to the left on the principle of wheels from a halt, and in conformity to what is prescribed No. 194. Each chief will turn to his platoon, to observe its movement, and when the marching flank has approached near the line of battle, he will command:

##### ***1. Platoon. 2. HALT.***



240. The command *halt* will be given when the marching flank of the platoon is three paces from the line of battle.

241. The chief of the second platoon, having halted it, will return to his place as a file closer, passing around the left of his subdivision.

242. The captain having halted the first platoon, will move rapidly to the point at which the right of the company will rest in line of battle, and command:

***Right- DRESS.***

243. At this command, the two platoons will dress up on the alignment; the front rank man on the right of the leading platoon, who finds himself opposite the instructor established on the direction of the guides, will place his breast lightly against the left arm of this officer. The captain will direct the alignment from the right on the man on the opposite flank of the company.

244. The company being aligned, the captain will command

***FRONT.***

245. The instructor, seeing the company in line of battle, will command:

***Guides-POSTS.***

246. At this command, the covering sergeant will cover the captain, and the left guide will return to his place as a file closer.

247. If the column be left in front, and the instructor should wish to form it to the right into line of battle, he will place himself at platoon distance in front of the leading guide, face to him, and rectify, if necessary, the position of the guide beyond; which being executed, he will command:

***1. Right into line, wheel. 2. MARCH.***

248. At the command *march*, the front rank man on the right of each platoon will face to the right and place his breast lightly against the left arm of the guide by his side, who stands fast; each platoon will wheel to the right, and will be halted by its chief, when the marching flank has approached near the line of battle; for this purpose, the chief of each platoon will command:

***1. Platoon. 2. HALT.***

249. The command *halt* will be given when the marching flank of the platoon is three paces from the line of battle. The chief of the second platoon having halted his platoon, will resume his place in the rank of file closers.

250. The captain having halted the first platoon, will move briskly to the point at which the left of the company will rest, and command:

***Left-DRESS.***

251. At this command, the two platoons will dress up on the alignment; the man on the left of the second platoon, opposite the instructor, will place his breast lightly against the right arm of this officer, and the captain will direct the alignment from the left on the man on the opposite flank of the company.

252. The company being aligned, the captain will command:

***FRONT.***

253. The instructor will afterwards command:

*Guides-POSTS.*

254. At this command, the captain will move to the right of his company, the covering sergeant will cover him and the left guide will return to his place as a file closer.

255. The instructor may omit the command *left* or *right dress*, previous to commanding left or right into line, wheel, unless, after rectifying the position of the guides, it should become necessary to dress the platoons, or one of them, laterally to the right or left.

256. The instructor, before the command left (or right) into line, wheel, will assure himself that the rearmost platoon is at its exact wheeling distance from the one in front. This attention is important, in order to detect negligence on the part of guides in this essential point.

257. If the column be marching right in front, and the instructor should wish to form it into line without halting the column, he will give the commands prescribed No. 238, and move rapidly to platoon, distance in front of the leading guide.

258. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of platoon the left guides will halt short, the instructor, the chiefs of platoon: and the platoons, will conform to what is prescribed No. 239 and following.

259. If the column be in march left in front, this formation will be made according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

260. If the column be marching, right in front and the instructor should wish to form it into line without halting the column, and to march the company in line to the front, he will command:

*1. By platoons left wheel. 2. MARCH.*

261. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the left guides will halt; the man next to the left guide in each platoon will mark time; the platoons will wheel to the left, conforming to the principles of a wheel on a fixed pivot. When the right of the platoons shall arrive near the line of battle, the instructor will command:

*3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide right (or left).*

262. At the fourth command, given at the instant the wheel is completed, all the men of the company will move off together with the step of twenty-eight inches; the captain, the chief of the second platoon, the covering sergeant, and the left guide will take their positions as in line of battle.

263. At the fifth command, which will be given immediately after the fourth, the captain and covering sergeant, if not already there, will move briskly to the side on which the guide is designated. The non-commissioned officer charged with the direction will move rapidly in front of the guide, and will be assured in his line of march by the instructor, as is prescribed No. 104. That non-commissioned officer will immediately take points on the ground as indicated in the same number. The men will take the touch of elbows to the side of the guide, conforming themselves to the principles of the march in line.

264. The same principles are applicable to a column left in front.

**LESSON SIXTH.****ARTICLE FIRST.*****To break the company into platoons, and to re-form the company.******To break the company into platoons.***

265. The company marching in the cadenced step, and supposed to make part of a column, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to break by platoon, he will give the order to the captain, who will command: **1. Break into platoons**, and immediately place himself before the centre of the first platoon.

266. At the command *break into platoons*, the first lieutenant will pass quickly around the left to the center of his platoon, and give the caution: **Mark time**.

267. The captain will then command: **2. March**.

268. The first platoon will continue to march straight forward; the covering sergeant will move rapidly to the left flank of this platoon (passing by the front rank) as soon as the flank shall be disengaged.

269. At the command *march*, given by the captain, the second platoon will begin to mark time; its chief will immediately add: **1. Right oblique. 2. MARCH**. The last command will be given so that this platoon may commence obliquing the instant the rear rank of the first platoon shall have passed. The men will shorten the step in obliquing, so that when the command *forward march* is given, the platoon may have its exact distance.

270. The guide of the second platoon being near the direction of the guide of the first, the chief of the second will command **Forward**, and add **MARCH**, the instant that the guide of his platoon shall cover the guide of the first.

271. In a column, left in front, the company will break into platoons by inverse means, applying to the first platoon all that has been prescribed for the second, and reciprocally.

272. In this case, the left guide of the company will shift to the right flank of the second platoon, and the covering sergeant will remain on the right of the first.

***To re-form the company.***

273. The column, by platoon, being in march, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to form company, he will give order to the captain, who will command:

***Form company.***

274. Having given this command, the captain will immediately add:

***1. First platoon. 2. Right oblique.***

275. The chief of the second platoon will caution it to continue to march straight forward.

276. The captain will then command: **3. MARCH**.

277. At this command, repeated by the chief of the second, the first platoon will oblique to the right, in order to unmask the second; the covering sergeant, on the left of the first platoon, will return to the right of the company, passing by the front rank.

278. When the first platoon shall have nearly unmasked the second, the captain will command: **1. Mark time**, and at the instant the unmasking shall be complete, he will add: **2. MARCH**. The first platoon will then cease to oblique, and mark time.

279. In the mean time the second platoon will have continued to march straight

forward, and when it shall be nearly up with the first, the captain will command Forward, and at the instant the two platoons shall unite, add MARCH; the first platoon will then cease to mark time.

280. In a column, left in front, the same movement will be executed by inverse means, the chief of the second platoon giving the command Forward, and the captain adding the command MARCH, when the platoons are united.

281. The guide of the second platoon, on its right, will pass to its left flank the moment the platoons begin to oblique; the guide of the first, on its right, remaining on that flank of the platoon.

282. The instructor will also sometimes cause the company to break and re-form by platoon, by his own direct commands. In this case, he will give the general commands prescribed for the captain above:

***1. Break into platoons; 2. MARCH; and 1. Form Company; 2. MARCH.***

283. If, in breaking the company into platoons, the subdivision that breaks off should mark time too long, it might, in a column of many subdivisions, arrest the march of the following one, which would cause a lengthening of the column, and a loss of distances.

284. In breaking into platoons, it is necessary that the platoons which oblique should not shorten the step too much, in order not to lose distance in column, and not to arrest the march of the following subdivision.

285. If a platoon obliques too far to a flank, it would be obliged to oblique again to the opposite flank, to regain the direction, and by the double movement arrest, probably, the march of the following subdivision.

286. The chiefs of those platoons which oblique will face to their platoons, in order to enforce the observance of the foregoing principles.

287. When, in a column of several companies, they break in succession, it is of the greatest importance that each company should continue to march in the same step, without shortening or slackening, whilst that which precedes breaks, although the following company should close upon the preceding one. This attention is essential to guard against an elongation of the column.

288. Faults of but little moment, in a column of a few companies, would be serious inconveniences in a general column of many battalions. Hence the instructor will give the greatest care in causing all the prescribed principles to be strictly observed. To this end, he will bold himself on the directing flank, the better to observe all the movements.

***ARTICLE SECOND.***

***Being in column, to break files to the rear, and to cause them to re-enter into line.***

289. The company being in march, and supposed to constitute a subdivision of a column, right (or left) in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause files to break off he will give the order to the captain, who will immediately turn to his company, and command:

***1. Two files from left (or right) to rear. 2. MARCH.***

290. At the command *march*, the two files on the left (or right) of the company, will mark time, the others will continue to march straight forward; the two rear rank men of these files will, as soon as the rear rank of the company shall clear them, move to the right by advancing the outer shoulder; the odd number will place himself behind the third file from that flank, the even number behind the fourth, passing for this

purpose behind the odd number; the two front rank men will, in like manner, move to the right when the rear rank of the company shall clear them, the odd number will place himself behind the first file, the even number behind the second file, passing for this purpose behind the odd number. If the files are broken from the right, the men will move to the left, advancing the outer shoulder, the even number of the rear rank will place himself behind the third file, the odd number of the same rank behind the fourth; the even number of the front rank behind the first file, the odd number of the same rank behind the second, the odd numbers for this purpose passing behind the even numbers. The men will be careful not to lose their distances and to keep aligned.

291. If the instructor should still wish to break two files from the same side, he will give the order to the captain, who will proceed as above directed.

292. At the command *march*, given by the captain, the files already broken, advancing a little the outer shoulder, will gain the space of two files to the right, if the files are broken from the left, and to the left, if the files are broken from the right, shortening, at the same time, the step, in order to make room between themselves and the rear rank of the company for the files last ordered to the rear; the latter will break by the same commands and in the same manner as the first. The men who double should increase the length of the step in order to prevent distances from being lost.

293. The instructor may thus diminish the front of a company by breaking off successive groups of two files, but the new files must always be broken front the same side.

294. The instructor, wishing to cause files broken off to return into line, he will give the order to the captain, who will immediately command:

***1. Two files into line. 2. MARCH.***

295. At the command *march*, the first two files of those marching by the flank will return briskly into line, and the others will gain the space of two files by advancing the inner shoulder towards the flank to which they belong.

296. The captain will turn to his company, to watch the observance of the principles which have just been prescribed.

297. The instructor having caused groups of two files to break one after another, and to return again into line, will afterwards cause two or three groups to break together, and for this purpose, will command: **Four or six files from left (or right) to rear; MARCH.** The files designated will mark time; each rank will advance a little the outer shoulder as soon as the rear rank of the company shall clear it, will oblique at once, and each group will place itself behind the four neighboring files, and in the same manner, as if the movement had been executed group by group, taking care that the distances are preserved.

298. The instructor will next order the captain to cause two or three groups to be brought into line at once, who turning to the company, will command:

***Four (or six) files into line-MARCH.***

299. At the command *march*, the files designated will advance the inner shoulder, move up and form on the flank of the company by the shortest lines.

300. As often as files shall break off to the rear, the guide on that flank will gradually close on the nearest front rank man remaining in line, and he will also open out to make room for files ordered into line.

301. The files which march in the rear are disposed in the following order: the left files as if the company was marching by the right flank, and the right files as if the company was marching by the left flank. Consequently, whenever there is on the right or left of a subdivision, a file which does not belong to a group, it will be broken singly.

302. It is necessary to the preservation of distances in column that the men should be habituated in the schools of detail to execute the movements of this article with precision.

303. If new files broken off do not step well to the left or right in obliquing; if, when files are ordered into line, they do not move up with promptitude and precision, in either case the following files will be arrested in their march, and thereby cause the column to be lengthened out.

304. The instructor will place himself on the flank from which the files are broken, to assure himself of the exact observance of the principles.

305. Files will only be broken off from the side of direction, in order that the whole company may easily pass from the front to the flank march.

### **ARTICLE THIRD.**

#### ***To march the column in route, and to execute the movements incident thereto.***

*Marching "en route typically means a road march, with the unit moving by the right or left flank in columns of fours. The march is at the Route Step.*

*At the route step, the company commander typically falls back to the rear of his company to make sure the men stay in ranks, and to control and limit stragglers. When the march column halts, or is called back "to the step," to a cadenced march, he hustles back up and retakes his position at the left of the head of the company.*

306. The swiftness of the route step will be one hundred and ten steps in a minute; this swiftness will be habitually maintained in columns in route, when the roads and ground may permit.

307. The company being at a halt, and supposed to constitute a subdivision of a column, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march in the route step he will command:

***1. Column, forward. 2. Guide left (or right.) 3. Route step. 4. MARCH.***

308. At the command *march*, repeated by the captain, the two ranks will step off together; the rear rank will take, in marching, by shortening a few steps, a distance of one pace (twenty-eight inches) from the rank preceding, which distance will be computed from the breasts of the men in the rear rank, to the knapsacks of the men in the front rank. The men, without farther command, will immediately carry their arms at will, as indicated in the school of the soldier, No. 219. They will no longer be required to march in the cadenced pace, or with the same foot, or to remain silent. The files will march at ease; but care will be taken to prevent the ranks from intermixing, the front rank from getting in advance of the guide, and the rear rank from opening to too great a distance.

309. The company marching in the route step, the instructor will cause it to change direction, which will be executed without formal commands, on a simple caution from the captain; the rear rank will come up to change direction in the same manner as the front rank. Each rank will conform itself, although in the route step, to the principles which have been prescribed for the change in closed ranks, with this difference only; that the pivot man, instead of taking steps of nine, will take steps of fourteen inches, in order to clear the wheeling point.

310. The company marching in the route step, to cause it to pass to the cadenced step, the instructor will first order pieces to be brought to the right shoulder, and then command:

***1. Close order. 2. MARCH.***

311. At the command *march*, the men will resume the cadenced step, and will close so as to leave a distance of sixteen inches between each rank.

312. The company marching in the cadenced pace, the instructor to cause it to take the route step will command:

***1. Route step. 2. MARCH.***

313. At the command *march*, the front rank will continue the step of twenty-eight inches; the rear rank will take, by gradually shortening the step, the distance of

twenty-eight inches from the front rank; the men will carry their arms at will.

314. If the company be marching in the route step, and the instructor should suppose the necessity of marching by the flank in the same direction, he will command:

**1. Company by the right (or left) flank. 2. By file left (or right.) 3. MARCH.**

315. At the command *march*, the company will face to the right (or left) in marching, the captain will place himself by the side of the guide who conducts the leading flank; this guide will wheel immediately to the left or right; all the files will come in succession to wheel on the same spot as the guide; if there be files broken off to the rear, they will, by wheeling, regain their respective places, and follow the movement of the company.

316. The instructor having caused the company to be again formed into line, will exercise it in increasing and diminishing front, by platoon: which will be executed by the same commands and the same means, as if the company were marching in the cadenced step. When the company breaks into platoons, the chief of each will move to the flank of his platoon and will take the place of the guide, who will step back into the rear rank.

317. The company being in column by platoon, and supposed to march in the route step, the instructor can cause the front to be diminished and increased, by section, if the platoons have a front of twelve files or more.

318. The movements of diminishing and increasing front, by section, will be executed according to the principles indicated for the same movements by platoon. The right sections of platoons will be commanded by the captain and first lieutenant, respectively; the left sections by the two next subalterns in rank, or, in their absence, by sergeants.

319. The instructor wishing to diminish by section, will give the order to the captain, who will command:

**1. Break into sections. 2. MARCH.**

320. As soon as the platoons shall be broken, each chief of section will place himself on its directing flank in the front rank the guides who will be thus displaced, will fall back into the rear rank; the file closers will close up to within one pace of this rank.

321. Platoons will be broken into sections only in the column in route; the movement will never be executed in the manoeuvres, whatever may be the front of the company.

322. When the instructor shall wish to re-form platoons, he will give the order to the captain, who will command:

**1. Form platoons. 2. MARCH.**

323. At the first command, each chief of section will place himself before its centre, and the guides will pass into the front rank. At the command *march*, the movement will be executed as has been prescribed for forming company. The moment the platoons are formed, the chiefs of the left sections will return to their places as file closers.

324. The instructor will also cause to be executed the diminishing and increasing front by files, as prescribed in the preceding article, and in the same manner, as if marching in the cadenced step. When the company is broken into sections, the subdivisions must not be reduced to a front of less than six files, not counting the chief of the section.

325. The company being broken by platoon or by section the instructor will cause it, marching in the route step, to march by the flank in the same direction, by the commands and the means indicated, Nos. 314 and 315. The moment the subdivisions

shall face to the right (or left,) the first file of each will wheel to the left (or right,) in marching, to prolong the direction, and to unite with the rear file of the subdivision immediately preceding. The file closers will take their habitual places in the march by the flank, before the union of the subdivisions.

326. If the company be marching by the right flank, and the instructor should wish to undouble the files, which might sometimes be found necessary, he will inform the captain, who, after causing the cadenced step to be resumed, and arms to be shouldered or supported, will command:

*1. In two ranks, undouble files. 2. MARCH.*

327. At the second command, the odd numbers will continue to march straight forward, the even numbers will shorten the step, and obliquing to the left will place themselves promptly behind the odd numbers; the rear rank will gain a step to the left, so as to retake the touch of elbows on the side of the front rank.

328. If the company be marching by the left flank, it will be the even numbers who will continue to march forward, and the odd numbers who will undouble.

329. If the instructor should wish to double the files, he will give the order to the captain, who will command:

*1. In four ranks, double files. 2. MARCH.*

330. At the command *march*, the files will double in the manner as explained, when the company faces by the right or the left flank. The instructor will afterwards cause the route step to be resumed.

331. The various movements prescribed in this lesson may be executed in double quick time. The men will be brought, by degrees, to pass over at this gait about eleven hundred yards in seven minutes.

332. When the company marching in the route step shall halt, the rear rank will close up at the command *halt*, and the whole will shoulder arms.

333. Marching in the route step, the men will be permitted to carry their pieces in the manner they shall find most convenient, paying attention only to holding the muzzles up, so as to avoid accidents.

## **ARTICLE FOURTH.**

### ***Countermarch.***

334. The company being at a halt, and supposed to constitute part of a column, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to countermarch, he will command:

*1. Countermarch. 2. Company, right-FACE. 3. By file left. 4. MARCH.*

335. At the second command the company will face to the right, the two guides to the right about; the captain will go to the right of his company and cause two files to break to the rear, and then place himself by the side of the front rank man, to conduct him.

336. At the command *march*, both guides will stand fast; the company will step off smartly; the first file conducted by the captain, will wheel around the right guide, and direct its march along the front rank so as to arrive behind, and two paces from the left guide; each file will come in succession to wheel on the same ground around the right guide; the leading file having arrived at a point opposite to the left guide, the captain will command:



**1. Company. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. Right-DRESS.**

337. The first command will be given at four paces from the point where the leading file is to rest.

338. At the second command, the company will halt.

339. At the third, it will face to the front.

340. At the fourth, the company will dress by the right; the captain will step two paces outside of the left guide, now on the right, and direct the alignment, so that the front rank may be enclosed between the two guides; the company being aligned, he will command **FRONT**, and place himself before the centre of the company as if in column; the guides, passing along the front rank, will shift to their proper places, on the right and left of that rank.

341. In a column, by platoon, the countermarch will be executed by the same commands, and according to the same principles; the guide of each platoon will face about, and its chief will place himself by the Hide of the file on the right, to conduct it.

342. In a column, left in front, the countermarch will be executed by inverse commands and means, but according to the same principles. Thus, the movement will be made by the right flank of subdivisions, if the right be in front, and by the left flank, if the left be in front; in both cases the subdivisions will wheel by file to the side of the front rank.

**ARTICLE FIFTH.**

*Being in column by platoon, to form on the right (or left) into line of battle.*

343. The column by platoon, right in front, being in march, the instructor, wishing to form it on the right into line of battle, will command:

**1. On the right into line. 2. Guide right.**

344. At the second command, the guide of each platoon will shift quickly to its right flank, and the men will touch elbows to the right; the column will continue to march straight forward.

345. The instructor having given the second command, will move briskly to the point at which the right of the company ought to rest in line, and place himself facing the point of direction to the left which he will choose.

346. The line of battle ought to be so chosen that the guide of each platoon, after having turned to the right, may have, at least, ten paces to take before arriving upon that line.

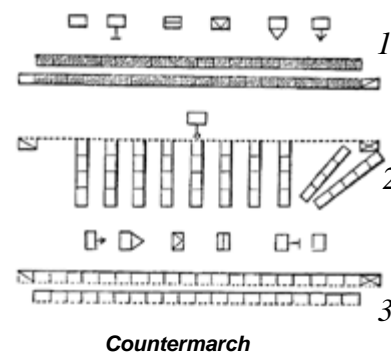
347. The head of the column being nearly opposite to the instructor, the chief of the first platoon will command: 1. Right turn; and when exactly opposite to that point, he will add:

**2. MARCH.**

348. At the command *march*, the first platoon will turn to the right, in conformity with the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 402. Its guide will so direct his march as to bring the front rank man, next on his left, opposite to the instructor; the chief of the platoon will march before its centre; and when its guide shall be near the line of battle, he will command:

**1. Platoon. 2. HALT.**

349. At the command halt, which will be given at the instant the right of the



platoon shall arrive at the distance of three paces from the line of battle, the platoon will halt; the files, not yet in line, will come up promptly. The guide will throw himself on the line of battle, opposite to one of the three left files of his platoon; he will face to the instructor, who will align him on the point of direction to the left. The chief of platoon having, at the same time, gone to the point where the right of the company is to rest, will, as soon as he sees all the files of the platoon in line, command

*Right-DRESS.*

350. At this, the first platoon will align itself; the front rank man, who finds himself opposite to the guide, will rest his breast lightly against the right arm of this guide, and the chief of the platoon, from the right, will direct the alignment on this man.

351. The second platoon will continue to march straight forward, until its guide shall arrive opposite to the left file of the first; it will then turn to the right at the command of its chief, and march towards the line of battle, its guide directing himself on the left file of the first platoon.

352. The guide having arrived at the distance of three paces from the line of battle, this platoon will be halted, as prescribed for the first; at the instant it halts, its guide will spring on the line of battle, opposite to one of the three left files of his platoon, and will be assured in his position by the instructor.

353. The chief of the second platoon, seeing all its files in line, and its guide established on the direction, will command:

*Right-DRESS.*

354. Having given this command, he will return to his place as a file closer, passing around the left; the second platoon will dress up on the alignment of the first, and, when established, the captain will command:

*FRONT.*

355. The movement ended, the instructor will command:

*Guides-POSTS.*

356. At this command, the two guides will return to their places in line of battle.

357. A column, by platoon, left in front, will form on the left into line of battle, according to the same principles, and, by inverse means, applying to the second platoon what is prescribed for the first, and reciprocally. The chief of the second platoon having aligned it, from the point of appui, (the left,) will retire to his place as a file closer. The captain having halted the first platoon three paces behind the line of battle, will go to the same point to align is this platoon, and then command: **FRONT.** At the command, *guides-posts*, given by the instructor, the captain will shift to his proper flank, and the guides take their places in the line of battle.

358. When the companies of a regiment are to be exercised, at the same time, in the school of the company, the colonel will indicate the lesson or lessons they are severally to execute. The whole will commence by a bugle signal, and terminate in like manner.

*Formation of a company from two ranks into single rank, and reciprocally.*

359. The company being formed into two ranks, in the manner indicated No. 8, school of the soldier, and supposed to make part of a column, right or left in front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into single rank, he will command:

**1. In one rank, form company. 2. MARCH.**

360. At the first command, the right guide will face to the right.

361. At the command *march*, the right guide will step off and march in the prolongation of the front rank.

362. The first file will step off at the same time with the guide; the front rank man will turn to the right at the first step, follow the guide, and be himself followed by the rear rank man of his file, who will come to turn on the same spot where he had turned. The second file, and successively all the other files, will step off as has been prescribed for the first, the front rank man of each file following the rear rank man of the file next on his right. The captain will superintend the movement, and when the last man shall have stepped off, he will half the company, and face it to the front.

363. The file closers will take their places in the line of battle, two paces in the rear of the rank.

364. The company being in single rank, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command:

**1. In two ranks, form company. 2. Company, right-FACE. 3. MARCH.**

365. At the second command, the company will face to the right: the right guide and the man on the right will remain faced to the front.

366. At the command *march*, the men who have faced to the right, will step off, and form files in the following manner: the second man in the rank will place himself behind the first to form the first file; the third will place himself by the side of the first in the front rank; the fourth behind the third in the rear rank. All the others will, in like manner, place themselves, alternately, in the front and rear rank, and will thus form files of two men, on the left of those already formed.

367. The formations above described will be habitually executed by the right of companies; but when the instructor shall wish to have them executed by the left, he will face the company about, and post the guides in the rear rank.

368. The formation will then be executed by the same commands and according to the same principles as by the front rank; the movement commencing with the left file, now become the right, and in each file by the rear rank man, now become the front; the left guide will conform to what has been prescribed for the right.

369. The formation ended, the instructor will face the company to its proper front.

370. When a battalion in line has to execute either of the formations above described, the colonel will cause it to break to the rear by the right or left of companies, and will then give the commands just prescribed for the instructor. Each company will execute the movement as if acting singly.

**Formation of a company front two ranks into four, and reciprocally, at a halt, and in march.**

371. The company being formed in two ranks, at a halt, and supposed to form part of a column right in front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into four ranks, he will command:

**1. In four ranks, form company. 2. Company left-FACE. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

372. At the second command, the left guide will remain faced to the front, the company will face to the left; the rear rank will gain the distance of one pace from the front rank by a side step to the left and rear, and the men will form into four ranks as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

373. At the command *march*, the first file of four men will reface to the front without undoubling. All the other files of four will step off, and closing successively to about five inches of the preceding file, will halt, and immediately face to the front, the men remaining doubled.

374. The file closers will take their new places in line of battle, at two paces in rear of the fourth rank.

375. The captain will superintend the movement.

376. The company being in four ranks, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command:

***1. In two ranks, form company. 2. Company right-FACE. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH)***

377. At the second command the left guide will stand fast, the company will face to the right.

378. At the command *march*, the right guide will step off and march in the prolongation of the front rank. The leading file of four men will step off at the same time, the other files standing fast; the second file will step off when there shall be between it and the first space sufficient to form into two ranks. The following files will execute successively what has been prescribed for the second. As soon as the last file shall have its distance, the instructor will command:

***1. Company. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.***

379. At the command *front*, the company will face to the front and the files will undouble.

380. The company being formed in two ranks, and marching to the front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into four ranks he will command:

***1. In four ranks, form company. 2. By the left double files. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH)***

381. At the command *march*, the left guide and the left file of the company will continue to march straight to the front; the company will make a half face to the left, the odd numbers placing themselves behind the even numbers. The even numbers of the rear rank will shorten their steps a little, to permit the odd numbers of the front rank to get between them and the even numbers of that rank. The files thus formed of fours, except the left file, will continue to march obliquely, lengthening their steps slightly, so as to keep constantly abreast of the guide; each file will close successively on the file next on its left, and when at the proper distance from that file, will face to the front by a half face to the right, and take the touch of elbows to the left.

382. The company being in march to the front in four ranks, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command:

***1. In two ranks, form company. 2. By the right, undouble files. 3. MARCH (or double quick MARCH).***

383. At the command *march*, the left guide and the left file of the company will continue to march straight to the front; the company will make a half face to the right and march obliquely, lengthening the step a little, in order to keep, as near as possible, abreast of the guide. As soon as the second file from the left shall have gained to the right the interval necessary for the left file to form into two ranks, the second file will face to the front by a half face to the left and march straight forward; the left file will immediately form into two ranks, and take the touch of elbows to the left. Each file will execute successively, what has just been prescribed for the file next to the left, and each file will form into two ranks when the file next on its right has obliqued the required distance and faced to the front.

384. If the company be supposed to make part of a column, left in front, these different movements will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, substituting the indication left for right.

-- End of the School of the Company. --

## INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

### *General principles and division of the instruction.*

1. The movements of skirmishers should be subjected to such rules as will give to the commander the means of moving them in any direction with the greatest promptitude.
2. It is not expected that these movements should be executed with the same precision as in closed ranks, nor is it desirable, as such exactness would materially interfere with their prompt execution.
3. When skirmishers are thrown out to clear the way for, and to protect the advance of, the main corps, their movements should be so regulated by this corps, as to keep it constantly covered.
4. Every body of skirmishers should have a reserve, the strength and composition of which will vary according to circumstances.
5. If the body thrown out be within sustaining distance of the main corps, a very small reserve will be sufficient for each company, whose duty it shall be to fill vacant places, furnish the line with cartridges, relieve the fatigued, and serve as a rallying point for the skirmishers.
6. If the main corps be at a considerable distance, besides the company reserves, another reserve will be required, composed of entire companies, which will be employed to sustain and reinforce such parts of the line as may be warmly attacked; this reserve should be strong enough to relieve at least half the companies deployed as skirmishers.
7. The reserves should be placed behind the centre of the line of skirmishers, the company reserves at one hundred and fifty, and the principle reserve at four hundred paces. This rule, however, is not invariable. The reserves, while holding themselves within sustaining distance of the line, should be, as much as possible, in a position to afford each other mutual protection, and must carefully profit by any accidents of the ground to conceal themselves from the view of the enemy, and to shelter themselves from his fire.
8. The movements of skirmishers will be executed in quick, or double quick time. The run will be resorted to only in cases of urgent necessity.
9. Skirmishers will be permitted to carry their pieces in the manner convenient to them.
10. The movements will be habitually indicated by the sounds of the bugle.
11. The officers, and, if necessary, the non-commissioned officers, will repeat, and cause the commands to be executed, as soon as they are given; but to avoid mistakes, when the signals are employed, they will wait until the last bugle note is sounded before commencing the movement.
12. When skirmishers are ordered to move rapidly, the officers and non-commissioned officers will see that the men economize their strength, keep cool, and profit by all the advantages which the ground may offer for cover. It is only by this continual watchfulness on the part of all grades, that a line of skirmishers can attain success.
13. This instruction will be divided into five articles, and subdivided as follows:

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

1. To deploy forward.
2. To deploy by the flank.
3. To extend intervals.
4. To close intervals.
5. To relieve skirmishers.

#### ARTICLE SECOND.

1. To advance in line.
2. To retreat in line.

3. To change direction.
4. To march by the flank.

ARTICLE THIRD.

1. To fire at a halt.
2. To fire marching.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

1. The rally.
2. To retreat in line.
3. The assembly.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

1. To deploy a battalion as skirmishers.
2. To rally the battalion deployed as skirmishers.

14. In the first four articles, it is supposed that the movements are executed by a company deployed as skirmishers, on a front equal that of the battalion in order of battle. In the fifth article, it is supposed that each company of the battalion, being deployed as skirmishers, occupies a front of one hundred paces. From these two examples, rules may be deduced for all cases, whatever may be the numerical strength of the skirmishers, and the extent of the ground they ought to occupy.

**ARTICLE FIRST.**

***Deployments.***

15. A company may be deployed as skirmishers in two ways: *forward*, and *by the flank*.

16. The deployment forward will be adopted when the company is behind the line on which it is to be established as skirmishers; it will be deployed by the flank, when it finds itself already on that line.

17. Whenever a company is to be deployed as skirmishers, it will be divided into two platoons, and each platoon will be subdivided into two sections; the comrades in battle, forming groups of four men, will be careful to know and to sustain each other. The captain will assure himself that the files in the centre of each platoon and section are designated.

18. A company may be deployed as skirmishers on its right, left, or centre file, or on any other named file whatsoever. In this manner, skirmishers may be thrown forward with the greatest possible rapidity on any ground they may be required to occupy.

19. A chain of skirmishers ought generally to preserve their alignment, but no advantages which the ground may present should be sacrificed to attain this regularity.

20. The interval between skirmishers depends on the extent of ground to be covered; but in general, it is not proper that the groups of four men should be removed more than forty paces from each other. The habitual distance between men of the same group in open grounds will be five paces; in no case will they lose sight of each other.

21. The front to be occupied to cover a battalion comprehends its front and the half of each interval which separates it from the battalion on its right and left. If a line, whose wings are not supported, should be covered by skirmishers, it will be necessary either to protect the flanks with skirmishers, or to extend them in front of the line so far beyond the wings as effectually to oppose any attempt which might be made by the enemy's skirmishers to disturb his flanks.

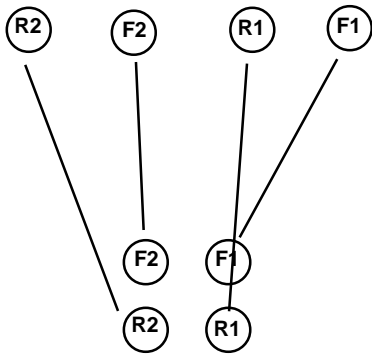
The main job of skirmishers is **security** – to protect the formed bodies of troops while at the same time forcing the enemy to stop and deploy, thus giving you the element of maneuver over your enemy while preventing being surprised yourself.

1. *Protect your battalions...* one of the most dangerous positions an infantry battalion can be in is in the middle of changing formation (column into line). it is not easy to do, especially under fire ... (aside)... it is preferable to deploy your men out of site/range ... because once you engage, all heck breaks loose and you will find it difficult, if not impossible, to withdraw, redeploy, or break off and maneuver afterwards).

2. *To screen them so that they enemy will not get too close and cause your battalions to deploy before it is necessary.* (i.e., stay in column to maneuver to any point in the line quickly, deploy, and engage). if you deploy too soon, you commit, and lose the ability to maneuver/change the focal point of the contest.

3. *To force the enemy to deploy...* if you can drive in his skirmishers, he will be forced to deploy... he will have played his hand... and then you are at an advantage.

*Deployment of the Comrades in Battle when the skirmishers deploy on line. Each rear rank man moves up on line to the left of his front-rank file partner, with a 5-pace interval between each skirmisher.*



**To deploy forward.**

22. A company being at a halt or in march, when the captain shall wish to deploy it forward on the left file of the first platoon, holding the second platoon in reserve, he will command:

**1. First platoon - as skirmishers. 2. On the left file - take intervals. 3. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).**

23. At the first command, the second and third lieutenants will place themselves rapidly two paces behind the centres of the right and left sections of the first platoon; the fifth sergeant will move one pace in front of the centre of the first platoon, and will place himself between the two sections in the front rank as soon as the movement begins; the fourth sergeant will place himself on the left of the front of the same platoon, as soon as he can pass. The captain will indicate to the sergeant the point on which he wishes him to direct his march. The first lieutenant, placing himself before the centre of the second platoon, will command:

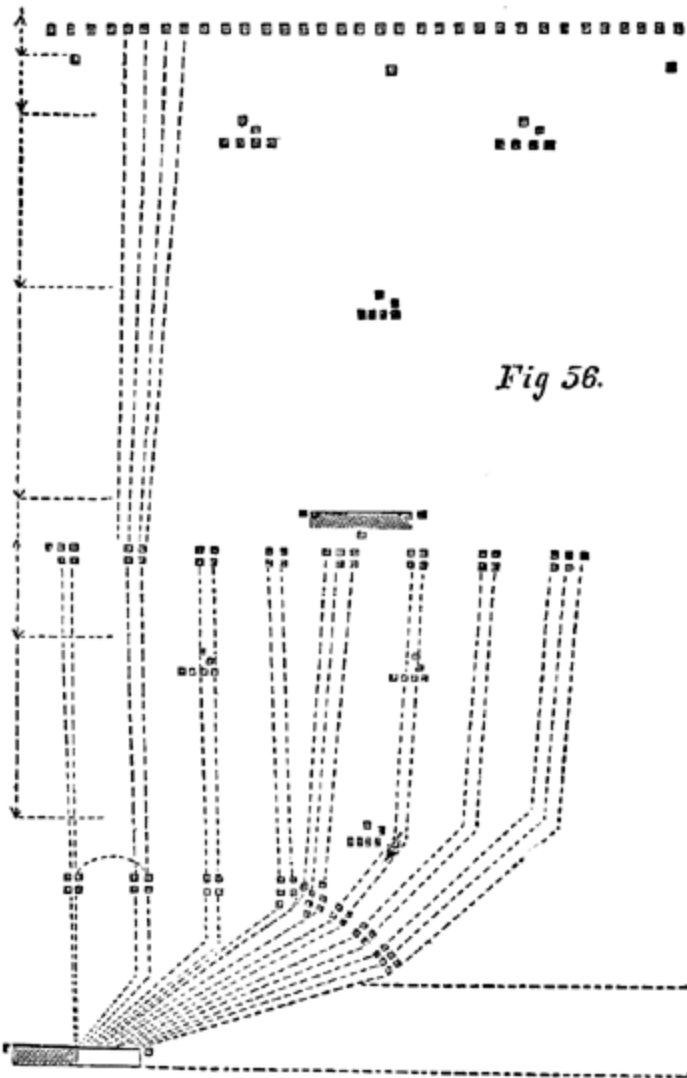
**Second platoon backward - MARCH.**

24. At this command, the second platoon will step three paces to the rear so as to unmask the flank of the first platoon. It will then be halted by its chief, and the second sergeant will place himself on the left, and the third sergeant on the right flank of the platoon.

25. At the command *march*, the left group of four men, conducted by the fourth sergeant, will direct itself on the point indicated; all the other groups of fours throwing forward briskly the left shoulder, will move diagonally to the front in double quick time, so as to gain to the right the space of twenty paces, which shall be the distance between each group and that immediately on its left. When the second group from the left shall arrive on a line with, and twenty paces from the first, it will march straight to the front, conforming to the gait and direction of the first, keeping constantly on the same alignment and at twenty paces from it. The third group, and all the others, will conform to what has just been prescribed for the second; they will arrive successively on the line. The right guide will arrive with the last group.

26. The left guide having reached the point where the left of the line should rest, the captain will command the skirmishers to halt; the men composing each group of fours will then immediately deploy at five paces from each other, and to the right and left of the front rank men of the even file in each group, the rear rank men placing themselves on the left of their file leaders. If any groups be not in line at the command halt, they will move up rapidly, conforming to what has just been prescribed.

27. If, during the deployment, the line should be fired upon by the enemy, the captain may



**"1st Platoon, Deploy as skirmishers on the left file, take intervals, MARCH"**



cause the groups of fours to deploy, as they gain their proper distances.

28. The line being formed, the non-commissioned officers on the right, left and centre of the platoon, will place themselves ten paces in rear of the line, and opposite the positions they respectively occupied. The chiefs of sections will promptly rectify any irregularities, and then place themselves twenty-five or thirty paces in rear of the centre of their sections, each having with him four men taken from the reserve, and also a bugler, who will repeat, if necessary, the signals sounded by the captain.

29. Skirmishers should be particularly instructed to take advantage of any cover which the ground may offer, and should lie flat on the ground whenever such a movement is necessary to protect them from the fire of the enemy. Regularity in the alignment should yield to this important advantage.

30. When the movement begins, the first lieutenant will face the second platoon about, and march it promptly, and by the shortest line, to about 150 paces in rear of the centre of the line. He will hold it always at this distance, unless ordered to the contrary.

31. The reserve will conform itself to all the movements of the line. This rule is general.

32. Light troops will carry their bayonets habitually in the scabbard, and this rule applies equally to the skirmishers and the reserve; whenever bayonets are required to be fixed, a particular signal will be given. The captain will give a general superintendence to the whole deployment, and then promptly place himself about eighty paces in rear of the centre of the line. He will have with him a bugler and four men taken from the reserve.

33. The deployment may be made on the right or the centre of the platoon by same commands, substituting the indication right or centre, for that of left file.

34. The deployment on the right or the centre will be made according to the principles prescribed above; in this latter case, the centre of the platoon will be marked by the right group of fours in the second section; the fifth sergeant will place himself on the right of this group, and serve as the guide of the platoon during the deployment.

35. In whatever manner the deployment be made, on the right, left, or centre, the men in each group of fours will always deploy at five paces from each other, and upon the front rank man of the even numbered file. The deployments will habitually be made at twenty paces interval; but if a greater interval be required, it will be indicated in the command.

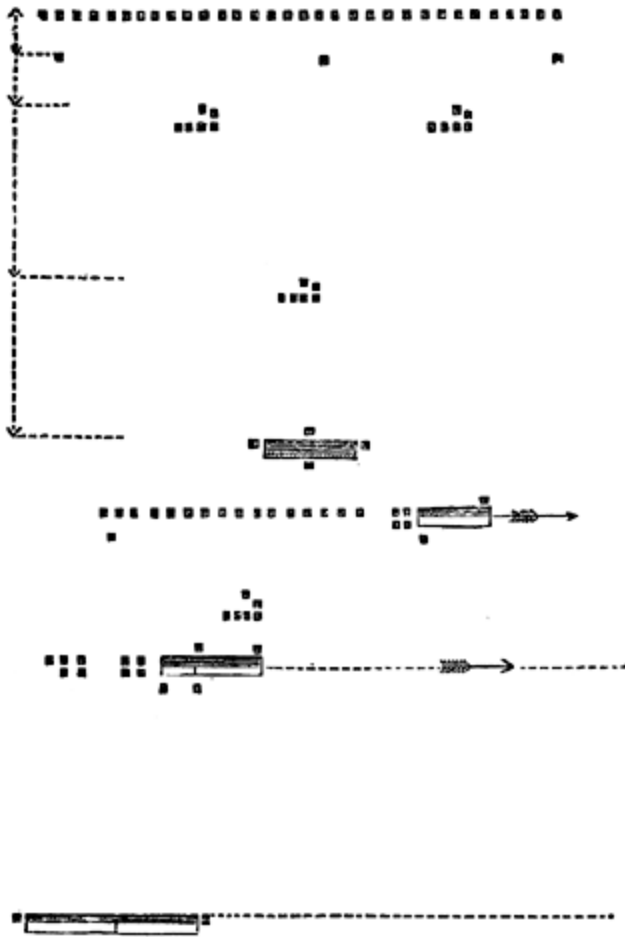
36. If a company be thrown out as skirmishers, so near the main body as to render a reserve unnecessary, the entire company will be extended in the same manner, and according to the same principles, as for the deployment of a platoon. In this case, the third lieutenant will command the fourth section, and a non-commissioned officer designated for that purpose, the second section; the fifth sergeant will act as centre guide; the file-closers will place themselves ten paces in rear of the line, and opposite their places in line of battle. The first and second lieutenant will each have a bugler near him.

### *To deploy by the flank.*

37. The company being at a halt, when the captain shall wish to deploy it by the flank, holding the first platoon in reserve, he will command:

*1. Second platoon-as skirmishers. 2. By the right flank-take intervals. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

38. At the first command, the first and third lieutenants will place themselves, respectively, two paces behind the centres of the first and second sections of the second platoon; the fifth sergeant will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the second platoon; the third sergeant, as soon as he can pass, will place himself on the right of the front rank of the same platoon. The captain will indicate to him the



"2nd Platoon, Deploy as Skirmishers. By the right flank, take intervals, MARCH."

point on which he wishes him to direct his march. The chief of the first platoon will execute what has been prescribed for the chief of the second platoon, No. 263 and 24. The fourth sergeant will place himself on the left flank of the reserve, the first sergeant will remain on the right flank.

39. At the second command, the first and third lieutenants will place themselves two paces behind the left group of their respective sections.

40. At the command *march*, the second platoon will face to the right and commence the movement; the left group of fours will stand fast, but will deploy as soon as there is room on its right, conforming to what has been prescribed, No. 26; the third sergeant will place himself on the left of the right group, to conduct it; the second group will halt at twenty paces from the one on its left, the third group at twenty paces from the second, and so on to the right. As the groups halt, they will face to the enemy, and deploy as has been explained for the left group.

41. The chiefs of sections will pay particular attention to the successive deployments of the groups, keeping near the group about to halt, so as to rectify any errors which may be committed. When the deployment is completed, they will place themselves thirty paces in rear of the centre of their sections, as has been heretofore prescribed. The non-commissioned officers will also place themselves as previously indicated.

42. As soon as the movement commences, the chief of the first platoon, causing it to face about, will move it as indicated No. 39.

43. The deployment may be made by the left flank according to the same principles, substituting left flank for right flank.

44. If the captain should wish to deploy the company upon the centre of one of the platoons, he will command:

**1. Second platoon - as skirmishers. 2. By the right and left flanks - take intervals. 3. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).**

45. At the first command, the officers and non-commissioned officers will conform to what has been prescribed No. 38.

46. At the second command, the first lieutenant will place himself behind the left group of the right section of the second platoon, the third lieutenant behind the right group of the left section of the same platoon.

47. At the command *march*, the right section will face to the right, the left section will face to the left, the group on the right of this latter section will stand fast. The two sections will move off in opposite directions; the third sergeant will place himself on the left of the right file to conduct it, the second sergeant on the right the left file. The two groups nearest that which stands fast, will each halt at twenty paces from this group, and each of the other groups will halt at twenty paces from the group which is in rear of it. Each group will deploy as heretofore prescribed No. 40.

48. The first and third lieutenants will direct the movement, holding themselves always abreast of the group which is about to halt.

49. The captain can cause the deployment to be made on any named group whatsoever; in this case the fifth sergeant will place himself before the group indicated, and the deployment will be made according to the principles heretofore prescribed.

50. The entire company may be also deployed, according to the same principles.

***To extend intervals.***

51. This movement, which is employed to extend a line of skirmishers, will be executed according to the principles prescribed for deployments.

52. If it be supposed that the line of skirmishers is at a halt, and that the captain wishes to extend it to the left, he will command:

***1. By the left flank (so many paces) extend interval. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).***

53. At the command *march*, the group on the right will stand fast, all the other groups will face to the left, and each group will extend its interval to the prescribed distance by the means indicated No. 40.

54. The men of the same group will continue to preserve between each other the distance of five paces, unless the nature of the ground should render it necessary that they should close nearer, in order to keep in sight of each other. The intervals refer to the spaces between the groups, and not to the distances between the men in each group. The intervals will be taken from the right or left man of the neighboring group.

55. If the line of skirmishers be marching to the front, and the captain should wish to extend it to the right, he will command:

***1. On the left group (so many paces) extend intervals. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

56. The left group, conducted by the guide, will continue to march on the point of direction; the other groups throwing forward the left shoulder, and taking the double quick step, will open their intervals to the prescribed distance, by what the means indicated, No. 25, conforming also to what is prescribed, No. 54.

57. Intervals may be extended on the centre of this line, according to the same principles.

58. If, in extending intervals, it be intended that one company or platoon should occupy a line which had been previously occupied by two, the men of the company or platoon which is to retire, will fall successively to the rear as they are relieved by the extension of the intervals.

***To close intervals.***

59. This movement, like that of opening intervals, will be executed according to the principles prescribed for the deployments.

60. If the line of skirmishers be halted, and the captain should wish to close intervals to the left, he will command:

***1. By the left flank (so many paces) close intervals. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).***

61. At the command *march*, the left group will stand fast, the other groups will face to the left and close to the prescribed distance, each group facing to the enemy as it attains its proper distance.

62. If the line be marching to the front, the captain will command:

***1. On the left group (so many paces) close intervals. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).***

63. The left group, conducted by the guide, will continue to move on in the

direction previously indicated; the other groups, advancing the right shoulder, will close to the left, until the intervals are reduced to the prescribed distance.

64. Intervals may be closed on the right, or on the centre, according to the same principles.

65. When intervals are to be closed up, in order to reinforce a line of skirmishers, so as to cause two companies to cover the ground which had been previously occupied by one, the new company will deploy so as to finish its movement at twenty paces in rear of the line it is to occupy, and the men will successively move upon that line, as they shall be unmasked by the men of the old company. The reserves of the two companies will unite behind the centre of the line.

### *To relieve a company deployed as skirmishers.*

66. When a company of skirmishers is to be relieved, the captain will be advised of the intention, which he will immediately communicate to the first and second lieutenants.

67. The new company will execute its deployment forward, so as to finish the movement at about twenty paces in rear of the line.

68. Arrived at this distance, the men of the new company, by command of their captain, will advance rapidly a few paces beyond the old line and halt; the new line being established, the old company will assemble on its reserve, taking care not to get into groups of fours until they are beyond the fire of the enemy.

69. If the skirmishers to be relieved are marching in retreat, the company thrown out to relieve them will deploy by the flank, as prescribed No. 38 and following. The old skirmishers will continue to retire with order, and having passed the new line, they will form upon the reserve.

## **ARTICLE SECOND**

### *To advance.*

#### *To advance in line, and to retreat in line.*

70. When a platoon or a company deployed as skirmishers is marching by the front, the guide will be habitually in the centre. No particular indication to this effect need be given in the commands, but if on the contrary it be intended that the directing guide should be on the right, or left, the command *guide right*, or *guide left*, will be given immediately after that of forward.

71. The captain, wishing the line of skirmishers to advance, will command:

#### **1. Forward. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).**

72. This command will be repeated with the greatest rapidity by the chiefs of sections, and in case of need, by the sergeants. This rule is general, whether the skirmishers march by the front or by the flank.

73. At the first command, three sergeants will move briskly on the line, the first on the right, the second on the left, and the third in the centre.

74. At the command *march*, the line will move to the front, the guide charged with the direction will move on the point indicated to him, the skirmishers will hold themselves aligned on this guide, and preserve their intervals towards him.

75. The chiefs of sections will march immediately behind their sections, so as to direct their movements.

76. The captain will give a general superintendence to the movement.

77. When he shall wish to halt the skirmishers, he will command:

### **HALT.**

78. At this command, briskly repeated, the line will halt. The chiefs of sections will promptly rectify any irregularity in the alignment and intervals, and after taking every possible advantage which the ground may offer for protecting the men, they, with the three sergeants in the line, will retire to their proper places in rear.

79. The captain, wishing to march the skirmishers in retreat, will command:

*1. In retreat. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).*

80. At the first command, the three sergeants will move on the line as prescribed No. 73.

81. At the command march, the skirmishers will face about individually, and march to the rear, conforming to the principles prescribed No. 74.

82. The officers and sergeants will use every exertion to preserve order.

83. To halt the skirmishers, marching in retreat, the captain will command:

*HALT.*

84. At this command, the skirmishers will halt, and immediately face to the front.

85. The chiefs of sections and the three guides will each conform himself to what is prescribed No. 78.

### *To change direction.*

86. If the commander of a line of skirmishers shall wish to cause it to change direction to the right, he will command:

*1. Right wheel. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).*

87. At the command *march*, the right guide will mark time in his place; the left guide will move in a circle to the right, and that he may properly regulate his movements, will occasionally cast his eyes to the right, so as to observe the direction of the line, and the nature of the ground to be passed over. The centre guide will also march in a circle to the right, and in order to conform his movements to the general direction, will take care that his steps are only half the length of the steps of the guide on the left.

88. The skirmishers will regulate the length of their steps by their distance from the marching flank, being less as they approach the pivot, and greater as they are removed from it; they will often look to the marching flank, so as to preserve the direction and their intervals.

89. When the commander of the line shall wish to resume the direct march, he will command:

*1. Forward. 2. MARCH.*

90. At the command *march*, the line will cease to wheel, and the skirmishers will move direct to the front; the centre guide will march on the point which will be indicated to him.

91. If the captain should wish to halt the line, in place of moving it to the front, he will command:

*HALT.*

92. At this command, the line will halt.

93. A change of direction to the left will be made according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

94. A line of skirmishers marching in retreat will change direction by the same means, and by the same commands, as a line marching in advance; for example, if the captain should wish to reverse his left, now become the right, he will command: *1. Left wheel. 2. MARCH.* At the command halt, the skirmishers will face to the enemy.

95. But if; instead of halting the line, the captain should wish to continue to march it in retreat, he will, when he judges the line has wheeled sufficiently, command:

*1. In retreat. 2. MARCH.*

### *To march by the flank.*

96. The captain, wishing the skirmishers to march by the right flank, will command:

*1. By the right flank. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).*

97. At the first command, the three sergeants will place themselves on the line.

98. At the command *march*, the skirmishers will face to the right and move off; the right guide will place himself by the side of the leading man on the right to conduct him, and will march on the point indicated; each skirmisher will take care to follow exactly in the direction of the one immediately preceding him, and to preserve his distance.

99. The skirmishers may be marched by the left flank, according to the same principles, and by the same commands, substituting left for right; the left guide will place himself by the side of the leading man to conduct him.

100. If the skirmishers be marching by the flank, and the captain should wish to halt them, he will command:

*HALT.*

101. At this command, the skirmishers will halt and face to the enemy. The officers and sergeants will conform to what has been prescribed No. 78.

102. The reserve should execute all the movements of the line, and be held always about one hundred and fifty paces from it, so as to be in position to second its operations.

103. When the chief of the reserve shall wish to march it in advance, he will command: *1. Platoon forward. 2. Guide left. 3. MARCH.* If he should wish to march it in retreat, he will command: *1. In retreat. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide right.* At the command **halt**, it will re-face to the enemy.

104. The men should be made to understand that the signals or commands, such as forward, mean that the skirmishers shall march on the enemy; in retreat, that they shall retire, and to the right or left flank, that the men must face to the right or left, whatever may be their position.

105. If the skirmishers be marching by the flank, and the captain should wish to change direction to the right (or left), he will command: *1. By file right (or left). 2. MARCH.* These movements will also be executed by the signals Nos. 14 and 15.

## *ARTICLE THIRD.*

### *The firings.*

106. Skirmishers will fire either at a halt or marching.

***To fire at a halt.***

107. To cause this fire to be executed, the captain will command:

**Commence - FIRING.**

108. At this command, briskly repeated, the men of the front rank will commence firing; they will reload rapidly, and hold themselves in readiness to fire again. During this time the men of the rear rank will come to a ready, and as soon as their respective file leaders have loaded, they will also fire and reload. The men of each file will thus continue the firing, conforming to this principle, that the one or the other shall always have his piece loaded.

109. Light troops should be always calm, so as to aim with accuracy; they should, moreover, endeavor to estimate correctly the distances between themselves and the enemy to be hit, and thus be enabled to deliver their fire with the greater certainty of success.

110. Skirmishers will not remain in the same place whilst reloading, unless protected by accidents in the ground.

***To fire marching.***

111. This fire will be executed by the same commands as the fire at a halt.

112. At the command *commence firing*, if the line be advancing, the front rank man of every file will halt, fire, and reload before throwing himself forward. The rear rank man of the same file will continue to march, and after passing ten or twelve paces beyond his front rank man will halt, come to a ready, select his object, and fire when his front rank man has loaded; the fire will thus continue to be executed by each file; the skirmishers will keep united, and endeavor, as much as possible, to preserve the general direction of the alignment.

113. If the line be marching in retreat at the command *commence firing*, the front rank man of every file will halt, face to the enemy, fire, and then reload whilst moving to the rear; the rear rank man of the same file will continue to march, and halt ten or twelve paces beyond his front rank man, face about, come to a ready, and fire, when his front rank man has passed him in retreat and loaded; after which, he will move to the rear and reload; the front rank man in his turn after marching briskly to the rear, will halt at ten or twelve paces from the rear rank, face to the enemy; load his piece and fire, conforming to what has just been prescribed; the firing will thus be continued.

114. If the company be marching by the right flank, at the command, *commence firing*, the front rank man of every file will face to the enemy, step one pace forward, halt, and fire; the rear rank man will continue to move forward. As soon as the front rank man has fired, he will place himself briskly behind his rear rank man and reload whilst marching. When he has loaded, the rear rank man will, in his turn, step one pace forward, halt, and fire, and returning to the ranks, will place himself behind his front rank man; the latter, in his turn, will act in the same manner, observing the same principles. At the command, *cease firing*, the men of the rear rank will retake their original positions, if not already there.

115. If the company be marching by the left flank, the fire will be executed according to the same principles, but in this case it will be the rear rank men who will be first.

116. The following rules will be observed in the cases to which they apply:

117. If the line be firing at a halt, or whilst marching by the flank at the command, *Forward - MARCH*, it will be the men whose pieces are loaded, without regard to the particular rank to which they belong, who will move to the front. Those men whose pieces have been discharged, will remain in their places to load them before moving forward, and the firing will be continued agreeably to the principles prescribed

above.

118. If the line be firing either at a halt, advancing, or whilst marching by the flank, at the command, *In retreat - MARCH*, the men whose pieces are loaded will remain faced to the enemy, and will fire in this position; the men whose pieces are discharged will retreat loading them, and the fire will be continued agreeably to principles prescribed No. 112.

119. If the line of skirmishers be firing either at a halt, advancing, or in retreat, at the command, *By the right (or left) flank - MARCH*, the men whose pieces are loaded will step one pace out of the general alignment, face to the enemy, and fire in this position; the men whose pieces are unloaded will face to the right (or left) and march in the direction indicated. The men who stepped out of the ranks will place themselves, immediately after firing, upon the general direction, and in rear of their front or rear rank men, as the case may be. The fire will be continued according to the principles prescribed for firing when marching by a flank.

120. Skirmishers will be habituated to load their pieces whilst marching; but they will be enjoined to halt always an instant, when in the act of charging cartridge, and priming.

121. They should be practised to fire and load kneeling, lying down, and sitting, and much liberty should be allowed in these exercises, in order that they may be executed in the manner found to be most convenient. Skirmishers should be cautioned not to forget that, in whatever position they may load, it is important that the piece should be placed upright before ramming, in order that the entire charge of powder may reach the bottom of the bore.

122. In commencing the fire, the men of the same rank should not all fire at once, and the men of the same file should be particular that one or the other of them be always loaded.

123. In retreating, the officer commanding the skirmishers should seize on every advantage which the ground may present, for arresting the enemy as long as possible.

124. At the signal to cease firing, the captain will see that the order is promptly obeyed; but the men who may not be loaded, will load. If the line be marching, it will continue the movement; but the man of each file who happens to be in front, will wait until the man in rear shall be abreast with him.

125. If a line of skirmishers be firing advancing, at the command halt, the line will re-form upon the skirmishers who are in front; when the line is retreating, upon the skirmishers who are in rear.

126. Officers should watch with the greatest possible vigilance over a line of skirmishers; in battle, they should neither carry a rifle or fowling piece. In all the firings, they, as well as the sergeants, should see that order and silence are preserved, and that the skirmishers do not wander imprudently; they should especially caution them to be calm and collected; not to fire until they distinctly perceive the objects at which they aim, and are sure that those objects are within proper range. Skirmishers should take advantage promptly, and with intelligence, of all shelter, and of accidents of the ground, to conceal themselves from the view of the enemy, and to protect themselves from his fire. It may often happen that intervals are momentarily lost when several men near each other find a common shelter; but when they quit this position, they should immediately resume their intervals and their places in line, so that they may not, by crowding, needlessly expose themselves to the fire of the enemy.



## **ARTICLE FOURTH**

### **THE RALLY.**

#### ***To form column.***

127. A company deployed as skirmishers, is rallied in order oppose the enemy with better success; the rallies are made at a run, and with bayonets fixed; when ordered to rally, the skirmishers fix bayonets without command.

128. There are several ways of rallying, which the chief of the line will adopt according to circumstances.

129. If the line, marching or at a halt, be merely disturbed by scattered horsemen, it will not be necessary to fall back on the reserve, but the captain will cause bayonets to be fixed. If the horsemen should, however, advance to charge the skirmishers, the captain will command, rally by fours. The line will halt if marching, and the four men of each group will execute this rally in the following manner: the front rank man of the even numbered file will take the position of guard against cavalry; the rear rank man of the odd numbered file will also take the position of guard against cavalry, turning his back to him, his right foot thirteen inches from the right foot of the former, and parallel to it; the front rank man of the odd file, and the rear rank man of the even file, will also place themselves back to back, taking a like position, and between the two men already established, facing to the right and left; the right feet of the four men will be brought together, forming a square and serving for mutual support. The four men in each group will come to a ready, fire as occasion may offer, and load without moving their feet.

130. The captain and chiefs of sections will each cause the four men who constitute his guard to form square, the men separating so as to enable him and the bugler to place themselves in the centre. The three sergeants will each promptly place himself in the group nearest him in the line of skirmishers.

131. Whenever the captain shall judge these squares too weak, but should wish to hold his position by strengthening his line, he will command:

#### ***Rally by sections.***

132. At this command, the chiefs of sections will move rapidly on the centre group of their respective sections, or on any other interior group whose position might offer a shelter, or other particular advantage; the skirmishers will collect rapidly at a run on this group, and without distinction of numbers. The men composing the group on which the formation is made, will immediately form square, as heretofore explained, and elevate their pieces, the bayonets uppermost, in order to indicate the point on which the rally is to be made. The other skirmishers, as they arrive, will occupy and fill the open angular spaces between these four men, and successively rally around this first nucleus, and in such manner as to form rapidly a company circle. The skirmishers will take as they arrive, the position of charge bayonet, the point of the bayonet more elevated, and will cock their pieces in this position. The movement concluded, the two exterior ranks will fire as occasion may offer, and load without moving the feet.

133. The captain will move rapidly with his guard, wherever he may judge his presence most necessary.

134. The officers and sergeants will be particular to observe that the rally is made in silence, and with promptitude and order; that some pieces in each of their subdivisions be at all times loaded, and that the fire is directed on those points only where it will be most effective.

135. If the reserve should be threatened, it will form into a circle around its chief.

136. If the captain, or commander of a line of skirmishers formed of many platoons, should judge that the rally by section does not offer sufficient resistance, he

will cause the rally by platoons to be executed, and for this purpose, will command:

***Rally by platoons.***

137. This movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by the same means, as the rally by sections. The chiefs of platoon will conform to what has been prescribed for the chiefs of section.

138. The captain wishing to rally the skirmishers on the reserve, will command:

***Rally on the reserve.***

139. At this command, the captain will move briskly on the reserve; the officer who commands it will take immediate steps to form square; for this purpose, he will cause the half sections on the flanks to be thrown perpendicularly to the rear; he will order the men to come to a ready.

140. The skirmishers of each section, taking the run, will form rapidly into groups, and upon that man of each group who is nearest the centre of the section. These groups will direct themselves diagonally towards each other, and in such manner as to form into sections with the greatest possible rapidity while moving to the rear; the officers and sergeants will see that this formation is made in proper order, and the chiefs will direct their sections upon the reserve, taking care to unmask it to the right and left. As the skirmishers arrive, they will continue and complete the formation of the square begun by the reserve, closing in rapidly upon the latter, without regard to their places in line; they will come to a ready without command, and fire upon the enemy; which will also be done by the reserve as soon as it is unmasked by the skirmishers.

141. If a section should be closely pressed by cavalry while retreating its chief will command halt; at this command, the men will form rapidly into a compact circle around the officer, who will re-form his section and resume the march, the moment he can do so with safety.

Formation of the square in a prompt and efficient manner, requires coolness and activity on the part of both officers and sergeants.

143. The captain will also profit by every moment of respite which the enemy's cavalry may leave him; as soon as he can, he will endeavor to place himself beyond the reach of their charges, either by gaining a position where he may defend himself with advantage, or by returning to the corps to which he belongs. For this purpose, being in square, he will cause the company to break into column by platoons at half distance; to this effect, he will command:

***1. Form column. 2. MARCH.***

144. At the command *march*, each platoon will dress on its centre, and the platoon which was facing to the rear will face about without command. The guides will place themselves on the right and left of their respective platoons, those of the second platoon will place themselves at half distance from those of the first, counting from the rear rank. These dispositions being made, the captain can move the column in whatever direction he may judge proper.

145. If he wishes to march it in retreat, he will command:

***1. In retreat. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH).***

146. At the command *march*, the column will immediately face by the rear rank, and move off in the opposite direction. As soon as the column is in motion, the captain will command:

***3. Guide right (or left).***

147. He will indicate the direction to the leading guide; the guides will march at their proper distances, and the men will keep aligned.

148. If again threatened by cavalry, the captain will command:

**1. Form square. 2. MARCH**

149. At the command march, the column will halt; the first platoon will face about briskly, and the outer half sections of each platoon will be thrown perpendicularly to the rear, so as to form the second and third fronts of the square. The officers and sergeants will promptly rectify any irregularities which may be committed.

150. If he should wish to march the column in advance, the captain will command:

**1. Form column. 2. MARCH.**

151. Which will be executed as prescribed No. 144.

152. The column being formed, the captain will command:

**1. Forward. 2. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH). 3. Guide left (or right).**

153. At the second command, the column will move forward, and at the third command, the men will take the touch of elbows to the side of the guide.

154. If the captain should wish the column to gain ground to the right or left, he will do so by rapid wheels to the side opposite the guide, and for this purpose, will change the guide whenever it may be necessary.

155. If a company be in column by platoon, at half distance, right in front, the captain can deploy the first platoon as skirmishers by the means already explained; but if it should be his wish to deploy the second platoon forward on the centre file, leaving the first platoon in reserve, he will command:

**1. Second platoon - as skirmishers. 2. On the centre file take intervals. 3. MARCH (or double quick - MARCH.)**

156. At the first command, the chief of the first platoon will caution his platoon to stand fast; the chiefs of sections of the second platoon will place themselves before the centre of their sections; the fifth sergeant will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the second platoon.

157. At the second command, the chief of the right section, second platoon, will command: Section right face; the chief of the left section: Section left face.

158. At the command *march*, these sections will move off briskly in opposite directions, and having unmasked the first platoon, the chiefs of sections will respectively command: **By the left flank - MARCH**, and **By the right flank - MARCH**; and as soon as these sections arrive on the alignment of the first platoon, they will command: **As skirmishers - MARCH**. The groups will then deploy according to prescribed principles, on the right group of the left section, which will be directed by the fifth sergeant on the point indicated.

159. If the captain should wish the deployment made by the flank, the second platoon will be moved to the front by the means above stated, and halted after passing some steps beyond the alignment of the first platoon; the deployment will then be made by the flank according to the principles prescribed.

160. When one or more platoons are deployed as skirmishers, and the captain should wish to rally them on the battalion, he will command:

**Rally on the battalion.**

161. At this command, the skirmishers and the reserve, no matter what position the company to which they belong may occupy in order of battle, will rapidly unmask

the front of the battalion, directing themselves in a run towards its nearest flank, and then form in its rear.

162. As soon as the skirmishers have passed beyond the line of file closers, the men will take the quick step, and the chief of each platoon or section will reform his subdivision, and place it in column behind the wing on which it is rallied, and at ten paces from the rank of the file closers. These subdivisions will not be moved except by order of the commander of the battalion, who may, if he thinks proper, throw them into line of battle at the extremities of the line, or in the intervals between the battalions.

163. If many platoons should be united behind the same wing of a battalion, or behind any shelter whatsoever, they should be formed always into close column, or into column at half distance.

164. When the battalion, covered by a company of skirmishers, shall be formed into square, the platoons and sections of the covering company will be directed by their chiefs to the rear of the square which will be opened at the angles to receive the skirmishers, who will be then formed into close column by platoons in rear of the first front of the square.

165. If circumstances should prevent the angles of the square from being opened, the skirmishers will throw themselves at the feet of the front rank men, the right knee on the ground, the butt of the piece resting on the thigh, the bayonet in a threatening position. A part may also place themselves about the angles, where they render good service by defending the sectors without fire.

166. If the battalion on which the skirmishers are rallied be in column ready to form square, the skirmishers will be formed into close column by platoon, in rear of the centre of the third division, and at the command, *Form square - MARCH*, they will move forward and close on the buglers.

167. When skirmishers have been rallied by platoon or section behind the wings of a battalion, and it be wished to deploy them again to the front, they will be marched by the flank towards the intervals on the wings, and be then deployed so as to cover the front of the battalion.

168. When platoons or sections, placed in the interior of squares or columns, are to be deployed, they will be marched out by the flanks, and then thrown forward, as is prescribed, No. 157; as soon as they shall have unmasked the column or square, they will be deployed, the one on the right, the other on the left file.

### *The assembly.*

169. A company deployed as skirmishers will be assembled when there is no longer danger of its being disturbed; the assembly will be made habitually in quick time.

170. The captain wishing to assemble the skirmishers on the reserve, will command:

#### *Assemble on the reserve.*

171. At this command, the skirmishers will assemble by groups of fours; the front rank men will place themselves behind their rear rank men; and each group of fours will direct itself on the reserve, where each will take its proper place in the ranks. When the company is re-formed, it will rejoin the battalion to which it belongs.

172. It may be also proper to assemble the skirmishers on the centre, or on the right or left of the line, either marching or at a halt.

173. If the captain should wish to assemble them on the centre while marching, he will command:

#### *Assemble on the centre.*

174. At this command, the centre guide will continue to march directly to the front on the point indicated; the front rank man of the directing file will follow the guide, and be covered by his rear rank man; the other two comrades of this group, and likewise those on their left will march diagonally, advancing the left shoulder and accelerating the gait, so as to reform the groups while drawing nearer and nearer the directing file; the men of the right section will unite in the same manner into groups, and then upon the directing file, throwing forward the right shoulder. As they successively unite on the centre, the men will bring their pieces to the right shoulder.

175. To assemble on the right or left file will be executed according to the same principles.

176. The assembly of a line marching in retreat will also be executed according to the same principles, the front rank men marching behind their rear rank men.

177. To assemble the line of skirmishers at a halt, and on the line they occupy, the captain will give the same commands; the skirmishers will face to the right or left, according as they should march by the right or left flank, re-form the groups while marching, and to arrive on the file which served as the point of formation. As they successively arrive, the skirmishers will support arms.

## ***ARTICLE FIFTH.***

### ***To deploy a battalion as skirmishers, and to rally the battalion.***

#### ***To deploy the battalion as skirmishers.***

178. A battalion being in line of battle, if the commander should wish to deploy it on the right of the sixth company, holding the three right companies in reserve, he will signify his intention to the lieutenant colonel and the adjutant, and also to the major who will be directed to take charge of the reserve. He will point out to the lieutenant colonel the direction he wishes to give the line, as well as the point where he wishes the right of the sixth company to rest, and to the commander of the reserve the place he may wish it established.

179. The lieutenant colonel will move rapidly in front of the right of the sixth company, and the adjutant in front of the left of the same company. The commander of the reserve will dispose of it in the manner to be hereinafter indicated.

180. The colonel will command:

***1. First (or second) platoons-as skirmishers.***

***2. On the right of the sixth company-take intervals.***

***3. MARCH. (or double quick-MARCH.)***

181. At the second command, the captains of the fifth and sixth companies will prepare to deploy the first platoons of their respective companies, the sixth on its right, the fifth on its left file.

182. The captain of the fourth company will face it to the right, and the captains of the seventh and eighth companies will face the respective companies to the left.

183. At the command *march*, the movement will commence. The platoons of the fourth and sixth companies will deploy forward; the right guide will march on the point which will be indicated to him by the lieutenant colonel

184. The company which has faced to the right, and also the companies which have faced to the left, will march straight forward. The fourth company will take an interval of one hundred paces counting from the left of the fifth, and its chief will deploy its first platoon on its left file. The seventh and eighth companies will each take an interval of one hundred paces, counting from the first file of the company, which

is immediately on its right; and the chiefs of these companies will afterwards deploy their first platoons on the right file.

185. The guides who conduct the files on which the deployment is made, should be careful to direct themselves towards the outer man of the neighboring company, already deployed as skirmishers; or if the company has not finished its deployment, they will judge carefully the distance which may still be required to place all these files in line, and will march on the point thus marked out. The companies, as they arrive on the line, will align themselves on those already deployed.

186. The lieutenant colonel and adjutant will follow the deployment, the one on the right, the other on the left; the movement concluded, they will place themselves near the colonel.

187. The reserves of the companies will be established in echelon in the following manner; the reserve of the sixth company will be placed one hundred and fifty paces in the rear of the right of this company; the reserves of the fourth and fifth companies, united, opposite the centre of their line of skirmishers, and thirty paces in advance of the reserve of the sixth company; the reserves of the seventh and eighth companies, also united, opposite the centre of their line of skirmishers, and thirty paces further to the rear than the reserve of the sixth company.

188. The major commanding the companies comprising the reserve, on receiving an order from the colonel to that effect, will march these companies thirty paces to the rear, and will then play them into column by company, at half distance; after which, he will conduct the column to the point which shall have been indicated to him.

189. The colonel will have a general superintendence of the movement; and when it is finished, will move to a point in rear of the line, where his view may best embrace all the parts, in order to direct their movements.

190. If, instead of deploying forward, it be desired to deploy by the flank, the sixth and fifth companies will be moved to the front ten or twelve paces, halted, and deployed by the flank, the one on the right, the other on the left file, by the means already indicated. Each of the other companies will be marched by the flank, and as soon as the last file of the company, next towards the direction, shall have taken its interval, it will be moved upon the line established by the fifth and sixth companies, halted, and deployed.

191. In the preceding example, it has been supposed that the battalion has been in the order of battle, but if in column, it would be deployed as skirmishers by the same commands and according to the same principles.

192. If the deployment is to be made forward, the directing company, as soon as it is unmasked, will be moved ten or twelve paces in front of the head of the column, and will be then deployed on the file indicated. Each of the other companies will take its interval to the right of left, and deploy as soon as soon as it is taken.

193. If the deployment is to be made by the flank, the directing company will be moved in the same manner to the front, as soon as it is unmasked, and will then be halted and deployed by the flank on the file indicated. Each of the other companies will be marched by the flank, and when its interval is taken, will be moved on the line, halted, and deployed as soon as the company next towards the direction shall have finished its deployment.

194. It has been prescribed to place the reserves in echelon, in order that they may, in the event of a rally, be able to protect themselves without injuring each other; and the reserves of the two contiguous companies have been united, in order to decrease the number of the echellons, and to increase their capacity for resisting cavalry.

195. The echellons, in the example given, descend from right to left, but they may, on an indication from the colonel to that effect, be posted on the same principle, so as to descend from left to right.

196. When the color-company is to be deployed as skirmishers, the color, without its guard, will be detached, and will remain with the battalion reserve.

***The rally.***

197. The colonel may cause all the various movements prescribed for a company, to be executed by the battalion, and by the same commands and the same signals. When he wishes to rally the battalion, he will cause the rally on the battalion to be sounded, and will so dispose his reserve to protect this movement.

198. The companies deployed as skirmishers will be rallied in squares on their respective reserves; each reserve of two contiguous companies will form the first front of the square, throwing to the rear the sections on the flanks; the skirmishers who arrive first will complete the lateral fronts, and the last the fourth front. The officers and sergeants will superintend the rally, and as fast as the men arrive, they will form them into two ranks, without regard to height, and cause them to face outwards,

199. The rally being effected, the commanders of the squares will profit by any interval of time the cavalry may allow for putting them in safety, either by marching upon the battalion reserve, or by seizing an advantageous position; to this end, each of the squares will be formed into column, and march in this order; and if threatened anew, it will halt, and again form itself into square.

200. As the companies successively arrive near the battalion-reserve, each will reform as promptly as possible, and without regard to designation or number, take place in the column next in rear of the companies already in it.

201. The battalion reserve will also form square, if itself threatened by cavalry. In this case, the companies in marching towards it will place themselves promptly in the sectors without fire, and thus march on the squares.





# MANUAL OF THE SWORD OR SABRE, FOR OFFICERS.

## *POSITION OF THE SWORD OR SABRE, UNDER ARMS.*

*The carry.* The gripe in the right hand, which will be supported against the right hip, the back of the blade against the shoulder.

## *TO SALUTE WITH THE SWORD OR SABRE.*

Three times (or pauses.)

*One.* At the distance of six paces from the person to be saluted, raise the sword or sabre perpendicularly, the point up, the flat of the blade opposite to the right eye, the guard at the height of the shoulder, the elbow supported on the body.

*Two.* Drop the point of the sword or sabre by extending the arm, so that the right hand may be brought to the side of the right thigh, and remain in that position until the person to whom the salute is rendered shall be passed, or shall have passed, six paces.

*Three.* Raise the sword or sabre smartly, and place the back of the blade against the right shoulder.

---

## *COLOR-SALUTE.*

In the ranks, the color-bearer, whether at a halt or in march, will always carry the heel of the color-lance supported at the right hip, the right hand generally placed on the lance at the height of the shoulder, to hold it steady. When the color has to render honors, the color-bearer will salute as follows:

At the distance of six paces slip the right hand along the lance to the height of the eye; lower the lance by straightening the arm to its full extent, the heel of the lance remaining at the hip, and bring back the lance to the habitual position when the person saluted shall be passed, or shall have passed, six paces.

---

## *MANUAL FOR RELIEVING SENTINELS.*

### *Arms-PORT*

*One time and one motion.*

Throw the piece diagonally across the body, the lock to the front, seize it smartly at the same instant with both hands, the right at the handle, the left at the lower band, the two thumbs pointing towards the muzzle, the barrel sloping upwards and crossing opposite to the point of the left shoulder, the butt proportionally lowered. The palm of the right hand will be above, and that of the left hand under the piece, the nails of both hands next to the body, to which the elbows will be closed.

### *Shoulder-ARMS.*

*One time and two motions.*

*(First motion.)* Bring the piece smartly to the left shoulder, placing the right hand as in the position of shoulder arms, slip the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended.



**ARMS PORT**

*(Second motion.)* Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

---

### ***INSTRUCTION FOR THE CHIEF BUGLER AND DRUM-MAJOR***

The posts of the field music and band have been given, Title I, for the order in battle.

In column in manoeuvre, the field music and band will march abreast with the left centre company, on the side opposite the guide.

In column in route, as well as in the passage of defiles to the front or in retreat, they will march at the head of their respective battalions.

#### **GENERAL CALLS**

1. *Attention*
2. *The general*
3. *The assembly*
4. *To the color*
5. *The recall*
6. *Quick time*
7. *Double quick time*
8. *The charge*
9. *The reveille*
10. *Retreat*
11. *Tattoo*
12. *To extinguish lights*
13. *Assembly of the buglers*
14. *Assembly of the guard*
15. *Orders for orderly sergeants*
16. *For officers to take their place in line after firing*
17. *The disperse*
18. *Officers' call*
19. *Breakfast call*
20. *Dinner call*
21. *Sick call*
22. *Fatigue call*
23. *Church call*
24. *Drill call*
25. *School call*

#### **CALLS FOR SKIRMISHERS**

1. *Fix bayonet*
2. *Unfix bayonet*
3. *Quick time*
4. *Double quick time*
5. *The run*
6. *Deploy as skirmishers*
7. *Forward*
8. *In retreat*
9. *Halt*
10. *By the right flank*
11. *By the left flank*
12. *Commence firing*

13. *Cease firing*
14. *Change direction to the right*
15. *Change direction to the left*
16. *Lie down*
17. *Rise up*
18. *Rally by fours*
19. *Rally by sections*
20. *Rally by platoons*
21. *Rally on the reserve*
22. *Rally on the battalion*
23. *Assemble on the battalion*

NOTE. -- When the whole of the troops, in the same camp or area are to depart, *the general, the assembly, and to the color* will be beaten or sounded, at the proper intervals, in the order her mentioned. At the first, the troops will prepare for the movement; at the second, they will form by company; and at the third unite by battalion.



## MANUAL FOR CEREMONIES

In many cases in reenacting, we find ourselves supporting specific functions, including dress parade, memorial services, and funerals, where the tactics manuals do not address some of the particular operations needed. Such ceremonial functions are addressed in the Army Regulations, not the tactics manual. For reference, and since these are quite commonly used in the hobby as well as living history, these procedures are included here.

### PARADE REST

From: *Regulations for the Army of the Confederate States* (1863):

**322.** *On all parades of ceremony, such as Reviews, Guard-mounting, at Troop or Retreat parades, instead of the word "Rest," which allows the men to move or change the position of their bodies, the command will be "Parade-REST!" At the last word of this command, the soldier will carry the right foot six inches in rear of the left heel, the left knee slightly bent, the body upright upon the right leg; the musket resting against the hollow of the right shoulder, the hands crossed in front, the backs of them outward, and the left hand uppermost. At the word "Attention!" the soldier will resume the correct position at ordered arms. In the positions here indicated, the soldier will remain silent and motionless; and it is particularly enjoined upon all officers to cause the commands above given, on the part of tale soldier, to be executed with great briskness and spirit.*

**323.** *Officers on all duties under arms are to have their swords drawn, without waiting for any words of command for that purpose.*



**PARADE REST.** A period image of two soldiers standing in the regulation manner. The three soldiers are the Booth brothers: Lt. William, Pvt. George, and Sgt. Samuel Booth, all of the 2nd Wisconsin V.I. Company C.

Under the regulations, the musket should be leaned against the hollow of the right shoulder rather than the standard reenacting practice of holding the musket away from the body. Also, the hands should be placed across the body at the waist rather placed on the musket towards the upper band. Note on the left, as LT Booth demonstrates this position for the officer with sword.

A caveat: Although the against-the-shoulder method is taken directly from the regulations, photos of soldiers standing in this manner are rare. The against-the-shoulder method is seen more frequently in early war photos than late war photos. Some argue the shoulder method was a holdover from the smoothbore days which was also practiced by companies using the two band rifle with the sword bayonet. The bulk of wartime photos picture individual soldiers or entire units standing in the typical, musket-across-the-body method. The across-the-body method is frequently seen with companies using the rifle musket. So, what is proper? It depends upon the manual, small arm, theater, and year portrayed by your unit.



#### PARADE -REST

*Hardee's, Casey's, and the 1861 U.S. Infantry Tactics provide for this position in the instructions for posting and relieving sentinels:*

*When the command, "Parade - Rest," is ordered during parade, reenactors generally follow the rule as stated by Hardee:*

*Being on parade or at order arms, if it be wished to give the men rest, the command will be:*

#### Parade-REST.

*At the command rest, turn the piece on the heel of the butt, the barrel to the left, the muzzle in front of the centre of the body; seize it at the same time with the left hand just above, and with the right at the upper band; carry the right foot six inches to the rear, the left knee slightly bent.*

*U.S. Infantry Tactics (1861), pp. 191-92.*

***This is the typical, most-commonly documented position for Parade Rest per the period manuals.***



Soldier marching at **Reverse Arms**

## REVERSE ARMS

From: *Regulations for the Army of the Confederate States*, para. 278:

*“The arms will be reversed at the order by bringing the firelock under the left arm, butt to the front, barrel downward, left hand sustaining the lock, the right steadying the firelock behind the back; swords are reversed in a similar manner under the right arm.”*

From: *The U.S. Army and Navy Journal*, April 28, 1866:

“There being no Manual for “Reverse Arms,” “Rest on Arms,” or “Shoulder Arms,” from either of those positions, the following Manual will be taught the men of this command until further orders.

The men being at shouldered arms, the Instructor will command:

### *Reverse-ARMS.*

*One time and three motions.*

*(First motion.)* Grasp the piece at the lower band with the left hand, palm to the front; bring it erect before the centre of the body, barrel to the rear; turn it to the left, (keeping the piece close to the body, and letting it turn loosely in the left hand, obliquing the muzzle, slightly to the front in turning), bring it to a perpendicular, butt uppermost, barrel to the front, before the centre of the body.

*(Second motion.)* Carry the piece under the left arm, rammer uppermost, the back of the left hand resting on the back of the hip; hold the piece firmly under the right hand; quit it with the left, and seize it again at the small of the stock, back of the hand to the front, pressing the piece firmly against the body with the left elbow.

*(Third motion.)* Quit the piece with the right hand; carry the hand behind the back, and seize the piece again between the middle and the lower bands, back of the hand downward; the right arm resting across the back, just above the hips.

### *Shoulder-ARMS.*

*One time and three motions.*

*(First motion.)* Press the piece tightly against the body with the left elbow; quit it with the right hand, carry the hand in front of the body, and seize the piece again, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the remaining fingers closed together, and grasping the swell of the stock just under the hammer (as in shouldered arms); quit the piece with the left hand; seize it again at the lower band, palm uppermost, thumb over the stock.

*(Second motion.)* Bring the piece to a perpendicular, in front of the centre of the body, barrel to the front, butt uppermost; turn it to the right (keeping the piece close to the body, and letting it turn loosely in the left hand, obliquing the muzzle slightly to the front in turning); bring it to a perpendicular, butt downward, barrel to the rear, before the centre of the body.

*(Third motion.)* Carry the piece to the right shoulder. and drop the left hand quickly by the side.”

## REST ON ARMS

From: *Regulations for the Army of the Confederate States*, para. 279:

“The rest on arms is done by placing the muzzle on the left foot, both hands on the butt, the head on the hands or bowed, right knee bent.”

From: *The U.S. Army and Navy Journal*, April 28, 1866:

### *Rest on ARMS.*

*One time and three motions.*

*(First motion.)* Same as in Reverse Arms. [See above.]

*(Second motion.)* Carry the piece perpendicularly over the left foot; let it slide through the left hand, the muzzle resting upon the toe of the left foot; place the left hand on the top of the butt, and the right hand upon the left.

*(Third motion.)* Slightly bend the right knee, at the same time bow the head, and rest it upon the hands.

### *Shoulder-ARMS.*

*(First motion.)* Raise the head, seize the piece with the right hand, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the remaining fingers closed together and grasping the swell of the stock just under the hammer (as in shouldered arms); raise the piece with the right hand, seize it at the lower band with the left [hand], back of hand to the front, and bring the piece vertically in front of the centre of the body, barrel to the front, butt uppermost.

*(Second motion.)* Turn it to the right, (keeping the piece close to the body, and letting it turn loosely in the left hand, obliquing the muzzle slightly to the front in turning), bring it to a perpendicular, butt downward, barrel to the rear, before the centre of the body.

*(Third motion.)* Carry the piece to the right shoulder, and drop the left hand quickly by the side.



*The Minnesota monument at Little Rock's National Cemetery is a good example of "Rest on Arms" as you can find...*





THE ONLY COPY-RIGHT EDITION

# RIFLE

AND

# INFANTRY TACTICS,

REVISED AND IMPROVED

BY

**Col. W.J. Hardee, C. S. Army**

SECOND EDITION.

VOL. II.  
SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION

MOBILE :  
S. H. GOETZEL & CO.

-----  
FIRST YEAR OF THE CONFEDERACY



# RIFLE AND INFANTRY TACTICS.

---

## TITLE FOURTH.

---

### SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

#### *Formation of the Battalion.*

1. Every colonel will labor to habituate his battalion to form line of battle, by night as well as by day, with the greatest possible promptitude.
2. The color-company will generally be designated as the directing company. That, as soon as formed, will be placed on the direction the colonel may have determined for the line of battle. The other companies will form on it, to the right and left, on the principles of successive formations which will be herein prescribed.
3. The color-bearer may have received the color from the hands of the colonel; but if there be daylight, and time, the color will be produced with due solemnity.

#### *Composition and march of the color-escort.*

4. When the battalion turns out under arms, and the color is wanted, a company, other than that of the color, will be put in march to receive and escort it.
5. The march will be in the following order, in quick time, and without music; the field music, followed by the band; the escort in column by platoon, right in front, with arms on the right shoulder, and the color-bearer between the platoons.
6. Arrived in front of the tent or quarters of the colonel, the escort will form line, the field music and band on the right, and arms will be brought to a shoulder.
7. The moment the escort is in line, the color-bearer, preceded by the first lieutenant, and followed by a sergeant of the escort, will go to receive the color.
8. When the color-bearer shall come out, followed by the lieutenant and sergeant, he will halt before the entrance; the escort will present arms, and the field music will sound *To The Color*.
9. After some twenty seconds, the captain will cause the sound to cease, arms to be shouldered, and then break by platoon into column; the color-bearer will place himself between the platoons, and the lieutenant and sergeant will resume their posts.
10. The escort will march back to the battalion to the sound of music in quick time, and in the same order as above, the guide on the right. The march will be so conducted that when the escort arrives at one hundred and fifty paces in front of the right of the battalion, the direction of the march will be parallel to its front, and when the color arrives nearly opposite its place in line, the column will change direction to the left, and the right guide will direct himself on the centre of the battalion.

#### *Honors paid to the color.*

11. Arrived at the distance of twenty paces from the battalion, the escort will halt, and the music cease; the colonel will place himself six paces before the centre of the battalion, the color-bearer will approach the colonel, by the front, in quick time; when at the distance of ten paces, he will halt: the colonel will cause arms to be presented, and to the color to be sounded, which being executed, the color-bearer will take his place in the front rank of the color-guard, and the battalion, by command, shoulder arms.

12 The escort, field music, and band, will return in quick time to their several places in line of battle, marching by the rear of the battalion.

13. The color will be escorted back to the colonel's tent or quarters in the above order.

### ***General Rules and Division of the School of the Battalion.***

14. This school has for its object the instruction of battalions singly, and thus to prepare them for manoeuvres in line. The harmony so indispensable in the movements of many battalions, can only be attained by the use of the same commands, the same principles, and the same means of execution. Hence, all colonels and actual commanders of battalions will conform themselves, without addition or curtailment, to what will herein be prescribed.

15. When a battalion instructed in this drill shall manoeuvre in line, the colonel will regulate its movements, as prescribed in the third volume of the Tactics for heavy infantry.

16. The school of the battalion will be divided into five parts.

17. The first will comprehend opening and closing ranks, and the execution of the different fires

18. The second, the different modes of passing from the order in battle, to the order in column.

19. The third, the march in column, and the other movements incident thereto.

20. The fourth, the different modes of passing from the order in column to the order in battle.

21. The fifth will comprehend the march in line of battle, in advance and in retreat; the passage of defiles in retreat; the march by the flank; the formation by file into line of battle; the change of front; the column doubled on the centre; dispositions against cavalry; the rally, and rules for manoeuvring by the rear rank.

## ***PART FIRST.***

### ***Opening and closing ranks, and the execution of the different fires.***

#### ***ARTICLE FIRST.***

##### ***To open and to close ranks.***

22. The colonel, wishing the ranks to be opened, will command:

##### ***1. Prepare to open ranks.***

23. At this command, the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves on the right of the battalion, the first on the flank of the file closers, and the second four paces from the front rank of the battalion.

24. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

##### ***2. To the rear, open order. 3. MARCH.***

25. At the second command, the covering sergeants, and the sergeant on the left of the battalion, will place themselves four paces in rear of the front rank, and opposite their places in line of battle, in order to mark the new alignment of the rear rank; they will be aligned by the major on the left sergeant of the battalion, who will be careful to place himself exactly four paces in rear of the front rank, and to hold his piece between the eyes, erect and inverted, the better to indicate to the major the direction to be given to the covering sergeants.

26. At the command *march*, the rear rank and the file closers will step to the rear without counting steps; the men will pass a little in rear of the line traced for this rank, halt, and dress forward on the covering sergeants, who will align correctly the men of their respective companies.

27. The file closers will fall back and preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank, glancing eyes to the right; the lieutenant colonel will, from the right, align them on the file closer of the left, who, having placed himself accurately two paces from the rear rank, will invert his piece, and hold it up erect between his eyes, the better to be seen by the lieutenant colonel.

28. The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command:

#### 4. FRONT.

At this command, the lieutenant colonel, major, and the left sergeant, will retake their places in line of battle.

29. The colonel will cause the ranks to be closed by the commands prescribed for the instructor in the school of the company, No. 28.

### ARTICLE SECOND.

#### Manual of arms.

30. The ranks being closed, the colonel will cause the following times and pauses to be executed:

<i>Present arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Order arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Support arms.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Fix bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Charge bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>
<i>Unfix bayonet.</i>	<i>Shoulder arms.</i>

### ARTICLE THIRD.

#### *Loading at will, and the Firings.*

31. The colonel will next cause to be executed loading at will, by the commands prescribed in the school of the company No. 45; the officers and sergeants in the ranks will half face to the right with the men at the eighth time of loading, and will face to the front when the men next to them come to a shoulder.

32. The colonel will cause to be executed the *fire by company*, the *fire by wing*, the *fire by battalion*, the *fire by file*, and the *fire by rank*, by the commands to be herein indicated.

33. The fire by company and the fire by file will always be direct; the fire by battalion, the fire by wing, and the fire by rank, may be either direct or oblique.

34. When the fire ought to be oblique, the colonel will give, at every round, the caution *right* (or *left*) *oblique*, between the commands *ready* and *aim*.

35. The fire by company will be executed alternately by the right and left companies of each division, as if the division were alone. The right company will fire first; the captain of the left will not give his first command till he shall see one or two

pieces at a ready in the right company; the captain of the latter, after the first discharge, will observe the same rule in respect to the left company; and the fire will thus be continue alternately.

36 The colonel will observe the same rule in the firing by wing.

37. The fire by file will commence in all the companies at once, and will be executed as has been prescribed in the school of the company No 55 and following. The fire by rank will be executed by each rank alternately, as has been prescribed in the school of the company No. 58 and following.

38. The color-guard will not fire, but reserve itself for the defence of the color.

### *The fire by company.*

39. The colonel, wishing the fire by company to be executed, will command:

#### *1. Fire by company. 2. Commence firing.*

40. At the first command, the captains and covering sergeants will take the positions indicated in the school of the company 49.

41. The color and its guard will step back at the same time, so as to bring the front rank of the guard in a line with the rear rank of the battalion. This rule is general for all the different firings.

42. At the second command, the odd numbered companies will commence to fire; their captains will each give the commands prescribed in the school of the company No. 50, observing to precede the command company by that of first, third, fifth, or seventh, according to the number of each.

43. The captains of the even numbered companies will give, in their turn, the same commands, observing to precede them by the number of their respective companies.

44. In order that the odd numbered companies may not all fire at once, their captains will observe, but only for the first discharge, to give the command *fire* one after another; thus, the captain of the third company will not give the command *fire* until he has heard the fire of the first company; the captain of the fifth will observe the same rule with respect to the third, and the captain of the seventh the same rule with respect to the fifth.

45. The colonel will cause the fire to cease by the sound to *cease firing*; at this sound, the men will execute what is prescribed in the school of the company No. 63; at the sound, for *officers to take their places after firing*, the captains, covering sergeants, and color-guard, will promptly resume their places in line of battle: this rule is general for all the firings.

### *The fire by wing.*

46. When the colonel shall wish this fire to be executed, he will command:

#### *1. Fire by wing. 2. Right wing. 3. READY. 4. Aim. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.*

47. The colonel will cause the wings to fire alternately, and he will recommence the fire by the commands, **1. Right wing; 2. Aim; 3. FIRE; 4. LOAD. 1. Left wing; 2. Aim; 3. FIRE; 4. LOAD;** in conforming to what is prescribed No. 35.

### *The fire by battalion.*

48. The colonel will cause this fire to be executed by the commands last prescribed, substituting for the first two, **1. Fire by battalion; 2. Battalion.**

***The fire by file.***

49. To cause this to be executed, the colonel will command:

**1. Fire by file. 2. Battalion. 3. READY. 4. Commence firing.**

50. At the fourth command, the fire will commence on the right of each company, as prescribed in the school of the company No. 57. The colonel may, if he thinks proper, cause the fire to commence on the right of each platoon.

***The fire by rank.***

51. To cause this fire to be executed, the colonel will command:

**1. Fire by rank. 2. Battalion. 3. READY. 4. Rear rank. 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.**

52. This fire will be executed as has been explained in the school of the company No. 59, in following the progression prescribed for the two ranks which should fire alternately.

***To fire by the rear rank.***

53. When the colonel shall wish the battalion to fire to the rear, he will command:

**1. Face by the rear rank. 2. Battalion. 3. About-FACE**

54. At the first command, the captains, covering sergeants, and file closers will execute what has been prescribed in the school of the company No. 69; the color-bearer will pass into the rear rank, and for this purpose, the corporal of his file will step before the corporal next on his right to let the color-bearer pass, and will then take his place in the front rank; the lieutenant colonel, adjutant, major, sergeant major, and the music will place themselves before the front rank, and face to the rear, each opposite his place in the line of battle, the first two passing around the right, and the others around the left of the battalion.

55. At the third command, the battalion will face about; the captains and covering sergeants observing what is prescribed in the School of the company No. 70.

56. The battalion facing thus by the rear rank, the colonel will cause it to execute the different fires by the same commands as if it were faced by the front rank.

57. The right and left wings will retain the same designations, although faced about; the companies also will preserve their former designations, as first, second, third, &c.

58. The fire by file will commence on the left of each company, now become the right.

59. The fire by rank will commence by the front rank, now become the rear rank. This rank will preserve its denomination.

60. The captains, covering sergeants, and color-guard will, at the first command given by the colonel, take the places prescribed for them in the fires, with the front rank leading.

61. The colonel, after firing to the rear, wishing to face the battalion to its proper front, will command:

**1. Face by the front rank. 2. Battalion. 3. About-FACE.**

62. At these commands, the battalion will return to its proper front by the means

prescribed Nos. 54 and 55.

63. The fire by file being that most used in war, the colonel will give it the preference in the preparatory exercises, in order that the battalion may be brought to execute it with the greatest possible regularity.

64. When the colonel may wish to give some relaxation to the battalion, without breaking the ranks, he will execute what has been prescribed in the school of the company Nos. 37 and 38 or Nos. 39 and 40.

65. When the colonel shall wish to cause arms to be stacked, he will bring the battalion to ordered arms, and then command:

*1. Stack-ARMS. 2. Break ranks. 3. MARCH.*

66. The colonel wishing the men to return to the ranks, will cause attention to be sounded, at which the battalion will re-form behind the stacks of arms. The sound being finished, the colonel after causing the stacks to be broken, will command.

*Battalion.*

67. At this command, the men will fix their attention, and remain immovable.

## *PART SECOND.*

### *Different modes of passing from the order in battle to the order in column.*

#### *ARTICLE FIRST.*

#### *To break to the right or the left into column.*

68. Lines of battle will habitually break into column by company; they may also break by division or by platoon.

69. It is here supposed that the colonel wishes to break by company to the right; he will command:

*1. By company, right wheel. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

70. At the first command, each captain will place himself rapidly before the centre of his company, and caution it that it has to wheel to the right; each covering sergeant will replace his captain in the front rank.

71. At the command *march*, each company will break to the right, according to the principles prescribed in the school of the company, No. 173; each captain will conform himself to what is prescribed for the chiefs of platoon; the left guide, as soon as he can pass, will place himself on the left of the front rank to conduct the marching, flank and when he shall have approached near to the perpendicular, the captain will command: *1. Such company. 2. HALT.*

72. At the second command, which will be given at the instant the left guide shall be at the distance of three paces from the perpendicular, the company will halt; the guide will advance and place his left arm lightly against the breast of the captain, who will establish him on the alignment of the man who has faced to the right; the covering sergeant will place himself correctly on the alignment on the right of that man; which being executed, the captain will align his company by the left, command *FRONT*, and place himself two paces before its centre.

73. The captains having commanded *FRONT*, the guides, although some of them may not be in the direction of the preceding guides, will stand fast, in order that the error of a company that has wheeled too much or too little may not be propagated;



the guides not in the direction will readily come into if when the column is put in march.

74. A battalion in line of battle will break into column by company to the left, according to the same principles; and by inverse means; the covering sergeant of each company will conduct the marching flank, and the left guide will place himself on the left of the front rank at the moment the company halts.

75. When the battalion breaks by division, the indication division will be substituted in the commands for that of company; the chief of each division (the senior captain) will conform himself to what is prescribed for the chief of company, and will place himself two paces before the centre of his division ; the junior captain, if not already there, will place himself in the interval between the two companies in the front rank, and be covered by the covering sergeant of the left company in the rear rank. The right guide of the right company will be the right guide, and the left guide of the left company, the left guide of the division.

76. When the battalion shall break by platoon to the right or to the left, each first lieutenant will pass around the left of his company to place himself in front of the second platoon, and for this purpose, each covering sergeant, except the one of the right company, will step, for the moment, in rear of the right file of his company.

77. When the battalion breaks by division to the right, and there is an odd company, the captain of this company, (the left), after wheeling into column, will cause it to oblique to the left, halt it at company distance from the preceding division, place his left guide on the direction of the column, and then align his company by the left. When the line breaks by division to the left, the odd company will be in front; its captain, having wheeled it into column, will cause it to oblique to the right, halt it at division distance from the division next in the rear, place his right guide on the direction of the other guides, and align the company by the right.

78. The battalion being in column, the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves on the directing flank, the first abreast with the leading subdivision and the other abreast with the last, and both six paces from the flank. The adjutant will be near the lieutenant colonel, and the sergeant major near the major.

The colonel will have no fixed place as the instructor of his battalion; but in columns composed of many battalions, he will place himself habitually on the directing flank fifteen or twenty paces from the guides, and abreast with the centre of his battalion.

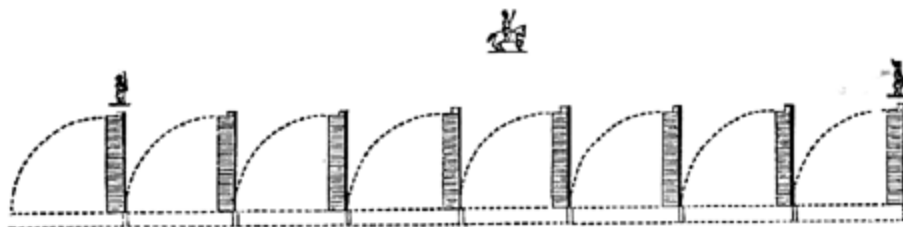
80. When the colonel shall wish to move the column forward without halting it, he will caution the battalion to that effect, and command:

*1, By company, right wheel. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

81. At the first command, the captains of companies will execute what is prescribed for breaking column from a halt.

82. At the second command, they will remain in front of their companies to superintend the movement; the companies will wheel to the right on fixed pivots as indicated in the school of the company No. 185; the left guides will conform to what is prescribed above; when they shall arrive near the perpendicular, the colonel will command:

*3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide left.*



*By company, right wheel.*

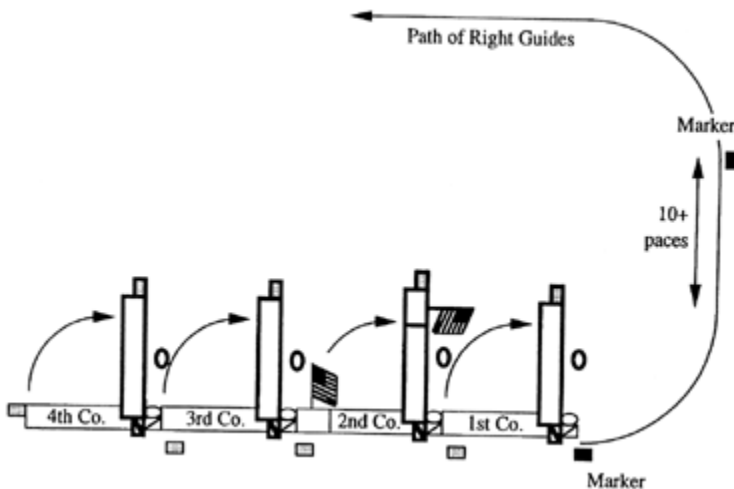
83. At the third command, each covering sergeant will place himself by the right side of the man on the right of the front rank of his company. At the fourth command, which will be given at the instant the wheel is completed, the companies will cease to wheel and march straight forward. At the fifth, the men will take the touch of elbows to the left, The leading guide will march in the direction indicated to him by the lieutenant colonel. The guides will immediately conform themselves to the principles of the march in column, school of the company, No. 200 and following.

84. If the battalion be marching in line of battle, the colonel will cause it to wheel to the right or left, by the same commands and the same means; but he should previously caution the battalion that it is to continue the march.

85. A battalion in line of battle will break into column by company to the left, according to the same principles and by inverse means; the covering sergeant of each company will conduct the marching flank, and the left guides will place themselves on the left of their respective companies at the command forward.

86. When a battalion has to prolong itself in column towards the right or left, or has to direct its march in column perpendicularly or diagonally in front, or in rear of either flank, the colonel will cause it to break by company to the right or left, as has just been prescribed; but when the line breaks to the right, in order to march towards the left, or the reverse, the colonel will command: **Break to the right to march to the left** or **break to the left to march to the right**, before the command, *by company, right*

*(or left) wheel.* As soon as the battalion is broken, the lieutenant colonel will place a marker abreast with the right guide of the leading company. The instant the column is put in motion, this company will wheel to the left (or right) march ten paces to the front without changing the guide, and wheel again to the left (or right.) The second wheel being completed, the captain will immediately command *guide left* (or *right*.) The guide of this company will march in a direction parallel to the guides of the column. The lieutenant colonel will be careful to place a second marker at the point where the first company is to change direction the second time.



**“Break to the Right to March to the Left.”** The battalion breaks into column of companies as each company wheels right 90 degrees. When the column is ordered forward, the 1st Company will immediately wheel left, then left again at the second marker, the other companies follow in column. (Image from dal Bello, *Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion*, 4th Ed.)

**ARTICLE SECOND.**

**To break to the rear, by the right or left, into column, and to advance or retire by the right or left of companies.**

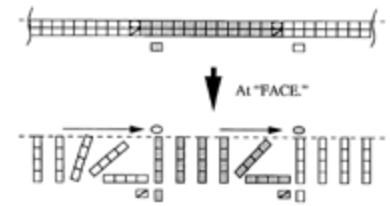
87. When the colonel shall wish to cause the battalion to break to the rear, by the right, into column by company, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.*
2. *Battalion right-FACE.*
3. *MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

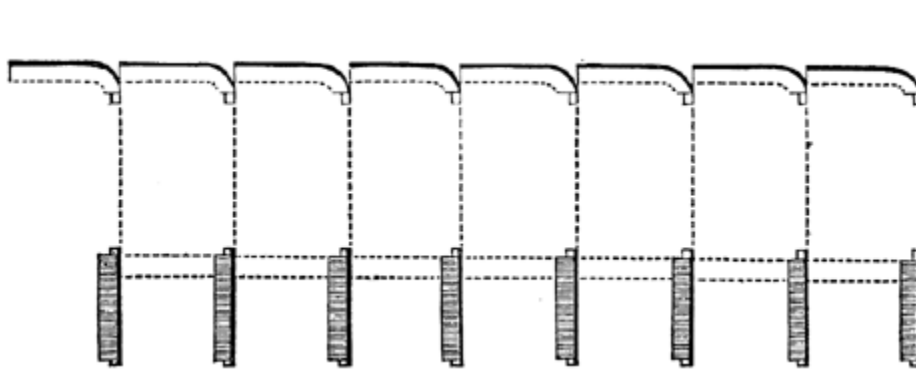
88. At the first command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company, and caution it to face to the right; the covering sergeants will step into the front rank.

89. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right ; each captain will hasten to the right of his company, and break two files to the rear; the first will break the whole depth of the two ranks; the second file less; which being executed, the captain will place himself so that his breast may touch lightly the left arm of the front rank man of the last file in the company next on the right of his own. The captain of the right company will place himself as if there were a company on his right, and will align himself on the other captains. The covering sergeant of each company will break to the rear with the right files, and place himself before the front rank of the first file, to conduct him.

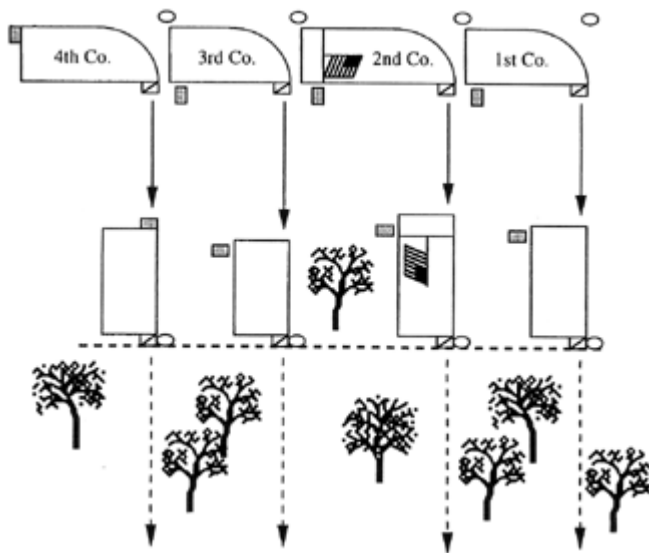
90. At the command *march*, the first file of each company will wheel to the right; the covering sergeant, placed before this file, will conduct it perpendicularly to the rear. The other files will come successively to wheel on the same spot. The captains will stand fast, see their companies file past, and at the instant the last file shall have wheeled, each captain will command:



*The details of "breaking files"... At the command, FACE, the first two files will double, then wheel 90 degrees to the rear (or front) so as to be ready to step off at a "by file right" (or left) at the next command, MARCH. The next file of fours double and pivot 45 degrees, and follow the lead file at MARCH. (Image from dal Bello, **Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion**, 4th Ed.)*

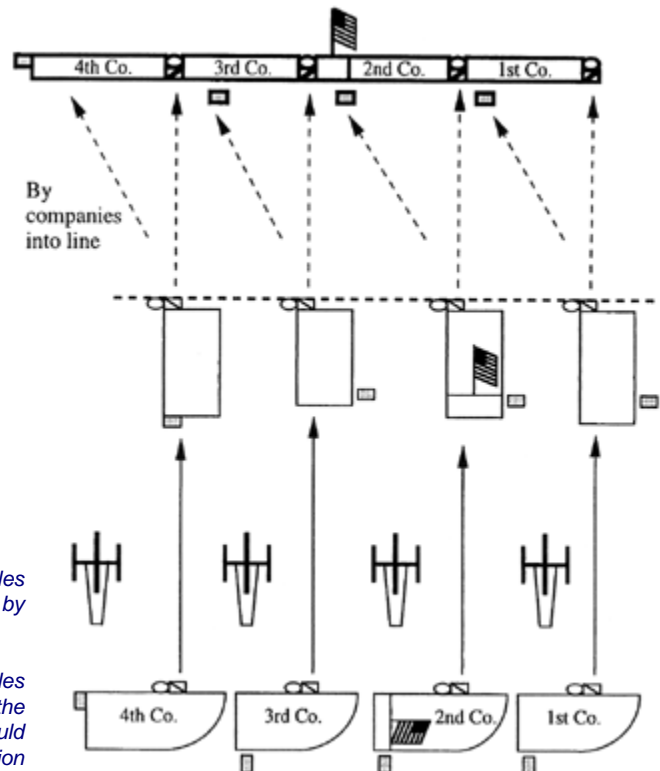


*By the right of companies to the rear into column.*



**Above:** "By the right of companies to the rear." Each company breaks files to the rear, and the Battalion moves off in parallel columns of fours by company. Here, the Battalion withdraws through a tree line.

**Right:** "By the right of companies to the front." Each company breaks files forward, and the Battalion moves forward in parallel columns of fours (by the flank) by company. Note in both case that the heads of the columns should stay dressed on line. To deploy back into line of battle, the Battalion commander orders, "By compny, into line." Here, the battalion moves forward through an artillery gun line, then re-forms into line of battle on the other side. (Images from dal Bello, **Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion**, 4th Ed.)



**1. Such company. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. Left—DRESS.**

91. At the instant the company faces to the front, its left guide will place himself so that his left arm may touch lightly the breast of his captain.

92. At the fourth command, the company will align itself on its left guide, the captain so directing it, that the new alignment may be perpendicular to that which the company had occupied line of battle, and, the better to judge this, he will step back two paces from the flank.

93. The company being aligned, the captain will command: *FRONT*, and take his place before its centre.

94. The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to break into column by company, to the rear, by the right, he will command:

**1. By the right of companies to the rear into column. 2. Battalion, by the right flank. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

95. At the first command, each captain will step briskly in front of the centre of his company, and caution it to face by the right flank.

96. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the right; each captain will move rapidly to the right of his company and cause it to break to the right; the first file of each company will wheel to the right, and the covering sergeant placed in front of this file will conduct it perpendicularly to the rear; the other files will wheel successively at the same place as the first. The captains will see their companies file past them; when the last files have wheeled, the colonel will command:

**3. Battalion, by the left flank-MARCH. 4. Guide-left.**

97. At the command *march*, the companies will face to the left, and march in column in the new direction. The captains will place themselves in front of the centres of their respective companies. At the fourth command, the guides will conform to the principles of the march in column; the leading one will move in the direction indicated to him by the lieutenant colonel. The men will take the touch of elbows to the left.

98. To break to the rear by the left, the colonel will give the same commands as in the case of breaking to the rear by the right, substituting the indication left, for that of right.

99. The movement will be executed according to the same principles. Each captain will hasten to the left of his company, cause the first two files to break to the rear, and then place his breast against the right file of the company next on the left of his own, in the manner prescribed above.

100. As soon as the two files break to the rear, the left guide of each company will place himself before the front rank man of the headmost file, to conduct him.

101. The instant the companies face to the front, the right guide of each will place himself so that his right arm may lightly touch the breast of his captain.

102. The battalion may be broken by division to the rear, by the right or left, in like manner in this case, the indication divisions will be substituted, in the first command, for that of companies; the chiefs of division will conform themselves to what is prescribed for the chiefs of company. The junior captain in each division will place himself, when the division faces to a flank, by the side of the covering sergeant of the left company, who steps into the front rank.

103. If there be an odd number of companies and the battalion breaks by division to the rear, whether by the right or left, the captain of the left company will conform to what is prescribed, No. 77.

104. This manner of breaking into column being at once the most prompt and regular, will be preferred on actual service, unless there be some particular reason for breaking to the front.

105. If the battalion be in line and at a halt, and the colonel should wish to advance

or retire by the right of companies, he will command:

- 1. By the right of companies to the front (or rear) 2. Battalion, right-FACE.  
3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH). 4. Guide right, (left) or (centre).**

106. At the first command, each captain will move rapidly two paces in front of the centre of his company, and caution it to face to the right; the covering sergeants will replace the captains in the front rank.

107. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right, and each captain moving quickly to the right of his company will cause files to break to the front, according to the principles indicated No. 89.

108. At the command *march*, each captain placing himself on the left of his leading guide will conduct his company perpendicularly to the original line. At the fourth command, the guide of each company will dress to the right, left, or centre, according to the indication given, taking care to preserve accurately his distance.

109. If the colonel should wish to move to the front, or rear, by the left of companies, the movement will be executed by the same means and the same commands, substituting left for right.

110. If the battalion be in march, and the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the right of companies, he will command:

- 1. By the right of companies to the front (or rear). 2. Battalion, by the right flank. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH). 4. Guide right (left) or (centre).**

111. Which will be executed according to the principles and means prescribed Nos. 95 and following, and 106 and following. At the first command, the color and general guides will take their places as in column.

112. If the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the left of companies, the movement will be executed by the same means and the same commands, substituting left for right.

113. If the battalion be advancing by the right or left of companies, and the colonel should wish to form line to the front, he will command:

- 1. By companies into line. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH). 3. Guide centre.**

114. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will be formed into line, as prescribed in the school of the company No. 154.

115. At the third command, the color and general guides will move rapidly to their places in line, as will be hereinafter prescribed No. 405.

116. If the battalion be retiring by the right or left of companies, and the colonel should wish to form line facing the enemy, he will first cause the companies to face about while marching, and immediately form in line by the commands and means prescribed Nos. 113 and following.

### **ARTICLE THIRD.**

#### ***To ploy the battalion into close column.***

117. This movement may be executed by company or by division, on the right or left subdivision, or on any other subdivision, right or left in front.

118. The examples in this school will suppose four divisions, with directions for the presence of an odd company; but what will be prescribed for four, will serve equally for two, three or five divisions.

119. To ploy the battalion into close column by division in rear of the first, the colonel will command:

**1. Close column, by division. 2. On the first division, right in front. 3. Battalion, right-FACE. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

120. At the second command, all the chiefs of division will place themselves before the centres of their divisions; the chief of the first will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the three others will remind them that they will have to face to the right, and the covering sergeant of the right company of each division will replace his captain in the front rank, as soon as the latter steps out.

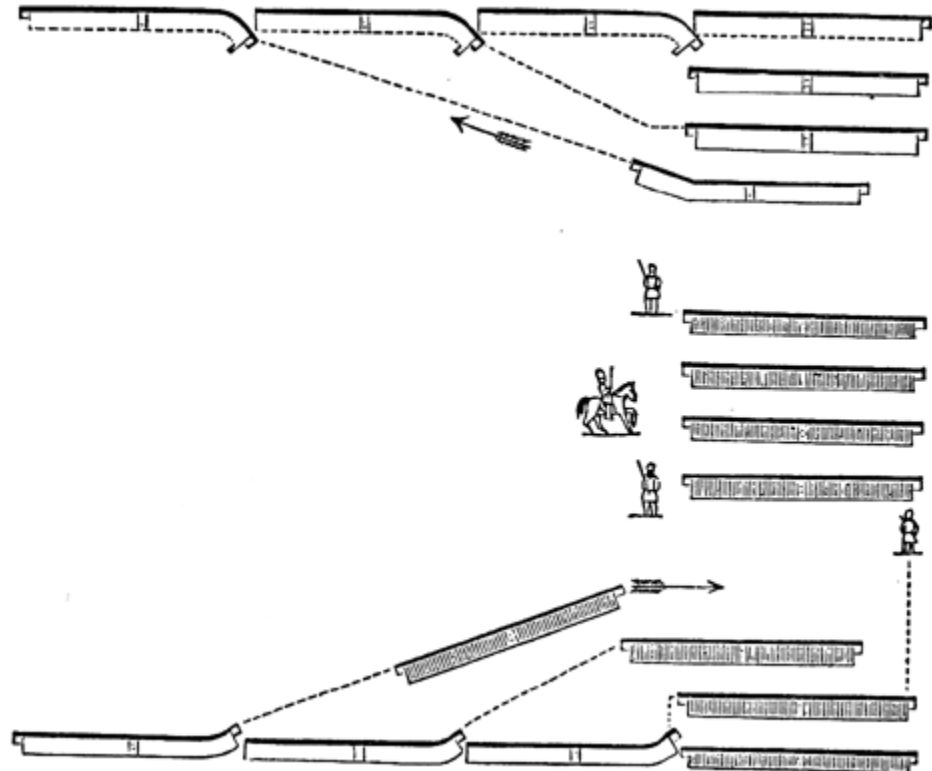
121. At the third command, the last three divisions will face to the right; the chief of each division will hasten to its right, and cause files to be broken to the rear, as indicated No. 89; the right guide will break at the same time, and place himself before the front rank man of the first file, to conduct him, and each chief of division will place himself by the side of this guide.

122. The moment these divisions face to the right, the junior captain in each will place himself on the left of the covering sergeant of the left company, who will place himself in the front rank.

*This rule is general for all the ployments by division.*

123. At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will add, *guide left*; at this, its left guide will place himself on its left, as soon as the movement of the second division may permit, and the file closers will advance one pace upon the rear rank.

124. All the other divisions, each conducted by its chief, will step off together, to take their places in the column; the second will gain, in wheeling by file to the rear, the space of six paces, which ought to separate its guide from the guide of the first division, and so direct its march as to enter the column on a line parallel to this division; the third and fourth divisions will direct themselves diagonally towards, but a little in rear of, the points at which they ought, respectively, to enter the column; at six paces from the left flank of the column, the head of each of these divisions will incline a little to the left, in order to enter the column as has just been prescribed for the second, taking care also to leave the distance of six paces between its guide and the guide of the preceding division. At the moment the divisions put themselves in



**Close column, by division.**

march to enter the column, the file closers of each will incline to the left, so as to bring themselves to the distance of a pace from the rear rank.

125. Each chief of these three divisions will conduct his division till he shall be up with the guide of the directing one; the chief will then himself halt, see his division file past, and halt it the instant the last file shall have passed, commanding: **1. Such division; 2. HALT; 3. FRONT. 4. Left-DRESS.**

126. At the second command, the division will halt; the left guide will place himself promptly on the direction, six paces from the guide which precedes him, in order that, the column being formed, the divisions may be separated the distance of four paces.

127. At the third command, the division will face to the front; at the fourth, it will be aligned by its chief, who will place himself two paces outside of his guide, and direct the alignment so that his division may be parallel to that which precedes which being done, he will command, **FRONT** and place himself before the centre of his division.

128. If any division, after the command *front*, be not at its proper distance, and this can only happen through the negligence of its chief, such division will remain in its place, in order that the fault may not be propagated.

129. The colonel will superintend the execution of the movement, and cause the prescribed principles to be observed.

130. The lieutenant colonel, placing himself in succession in rear of the left guides, will assure them on the direction as they arrive, and then move to his place outside of the left flank of the column six paces from, and abreast with, the first division. In assuring the guides on the direction, he will be a mere observer, unless one or more should fail to cover exactly the guide or guides already established. This rule is general.

131. The major will follow the movement abreast with the left of the fourth division, and afterwards take his position outside of the left flank of the column, six paces from, and abreast with, this division.

132. To ploy the battalion in front of the first division, the colonel will give the same commands, substituting the indication *left* for that of *right in front*.

133. At the second and third commands, the chiefs of division and the junior captains will conform themselves to what is prescribed, Nos. 120, 121, 122; but the chiefs of the last three divisions, instead of causing the first two files to break to the rear, will cause them to break to the front.

134. At the fourth command, the chief of the first division will add: **Guide right.**

135. The three other divisions will step off together to take their places in the column in front of the directing division; each will direct itself as prescribed, No. 124, and will enter in such manner that, when halted, its guide may find himself six paces from the guide of the division next previously established in the column.

136. Each chief of these divisions will conduct his division, till his right guide shall be nearly up with the guide of the directing one; he will then halt his division, and cause it to face to the front; at the instant it halts, its right guide will face to the rear, place himself six paces from the preceding guide, and cover him exactly, which being done, the chief will align his division by the right.

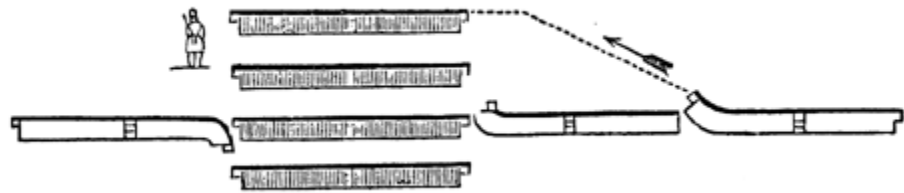
137. The lieutenant colonel, placed in front of the right guide of the first division, will assure the guides on the direction as they successively arrive, and then move outside of the right flank of the column, to a point six paces from, and abreast with, the fourth division, now in front.

138. The major will conform himself to what is prescribed, No. 131, and then move outside of the right flank of the column, six paces from, and abreast with, the first division, now in the rear.

139. The movement being ended, the colonel will command: **Guides, about-FACE.**

140. At this, the guides, who are faced to the rear, will face to the front.

141. To ploy the battalion in rear, or in front of the fourth division, the colonel will command:



*Close column on an interior division*

***1. Close column by division. 2. On the fourth division, left (or right) in front. 3. Battalion, left - FACE. 4. MARCH (or double quick -MARCH).***

142. These movements will be executed according to the principles of those which precede, but by inverse means: the fourth division on which the battalion ploys will stand fast; the instant the movement commences, its chief will command, *guide, right (or left)*.

143. The foregoing examples embrace all the principles: thus, when the colonel shall wish to ploy the battalion on an interior division, he will command:

***1. Close column by division. 2. On such division, right (or left) in front. 3. Battalion, inwards-FACE. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

144. The instant the movement commences, the chief of the directing division will command, *guide left (or right)*.

145. The divisions which, in the order in battle, are to the right of the directing division, will face to the left; those which are to the left, will face to the right.

146. If the right is to be in front, the right divisions will ploy in front of the directing division, and the left in its rear; the reverse, if the left is to be in front. And in all the foregoing suppositions, the division or divisions contiguous to the directing one, in wheeling by file to the front or rear, will gain the space of six paces, which ought to separate their guides from the guide of the directing division.

147. In all the ployments on an interior division, the lieutenant colonel will assure the positions of the guides in front, and the major those in rear of the directing division.

148. If the battalion be in march, instead of at a halt, the movement will be executed by combining the two gaits of quick and double quick time, and always in rear of one of the flank divisions.

149. The battalion being in march, to ploy it in rear of the first division, the colonel will command:

***1. Close column by division. 2. On the first division. 3. Battalion - by the right flank. 4. Double quick-MARCH.***

150. At the second command, each chief of division will move rapidly before the centre of his division and caution it to face to the right.

151. The chief of the first division will caution it to continue to march to the front, and he will command: *Quick march*.

152. At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will command: *Guide left*. At this, the left guide will move to the left flank of the division and direct himself on the point indicated. .

153. The three other divisions will face to the right and move off in double quick time, breaking to the right to take their places in column; each chief of division will move rapidly to the right of his division in order to conduct it. The files will be careful to preserve their distances, and to march with a uniform and decided step. The color-bearer and general guides will retake their places in the ranks.



154. The second division will immediately enter the column, marching parallel to the first division; its chief will allow it to file past him, and when the last file is abreast of him-, will command: *1. Second division, by the left flank- MARCH. 2. Guide left* and place himself in front of the centre of his division.

155. At the command *march*, the division will face to the left; at the second command, the left guide will march in the trace of the left guide of the first division; the men will take the touch of elbows to the left. When the second division has closed to its proper distance, its chief will command: *Quick time-MARCH*. This division will then change its step to quick time.

156. The chiefs of the third and fourth divisions will execute their movements according to the same principles, taking care to gain as much ground as possible towards the head of the column.

157. If the battalion had been previously marching in line at double quick time, when the fourth division shall have gained its distance, the colonel will command: *Double quick-MARCH*.

158. In this movement, the lieutenant colonel will move rapidly to the side of the leading guide, give him a point of direction, and then follow the movements of the first division. The major will follow the movement abreast with the left of the fourth division.

### **Remarks on plying the battalion into column.**

159. The battalion may be ployed into column at full, or half distance, on the same principles, and by the same commands, substituting for the first command: *Column at full (or half) distance by division*.

160. In the ployments and movements in column, when the subdivisions execute the movements successively, such as to take or close distances, to change direction by the flank of subdivisions, each chief of subdivision will cause his men to *support arms* after having aligned it and commanded, *FRONT*.

## ***PART THIRD.***

### ***ARTICLE FIRST.***

#### ***To march in column at full distance.***

161. When the colonel shall wish to put the column in march, he will indicate to the leading guide two distinct objects in front, on the line which the guide ought to follow. This guide will immediately put his shoulders in a square with that line, take the more distant object as the point of direction, and the nearer one as the intermediate point.

162. If only a single prominent object present itself in the direction the guide has to follow, he will face to it as before, and immediately endeavor to catch on the ground some intermediate point, by which to give steadiness to his march on the point of direction.

163. There being no prominent object to serve as the point of direction, the colonel will dispatch the lieutenant colonel or adjutant to place himself forty paces in advance, facing the column, and by a sign of the sword establish him on the direction he may wish to give to the leading guide; that officer being thus placed, this guide will take him as the point of direction, conforming himself to what is prescribed in the school of the company, No. 87.

164. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

**1. Column, forward. 2. Guide left (or right.) 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

165. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of subdivision, the column will put itself in march, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the company No. 200 and following.

166. The leading guide may always maintain himself correctly on the direction by keeping steadily in view the two points indicated to him, or chosen by himself; if these points have a certain elevation, he may be assured he is on the true direction, when the nearer masks the more distant point.

167. The following guides will preserve with exactness both step and distance; each will march in the trace of the guide who immediately precedes him, without occupying himself with the general direction.

168. The lieutenant colonel will hold himself, habitually, abreast with the leading guide, to see that he does not deviate from the direction, and will observe, also, that the next guide marches exactly in the trace of the first.

169. The major will generally be abreast with the last subdivision; he will see that each guide marches exactly in the trace of the one immediately preceding; if either deviate from the direction, the major will promptly rectify the error, and prevent its becoming propagated; but he need not interfere, in this way, unless the deviation has become sensible, or material.

170. The column being in march, the colonel will frequently cause the about to be executed while marching; to this effect, he will command:

**1. Battalion, right about. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide right.**

171. At the second command, the companies will face to the right about, and the column will then march forward in an opposite direction; the chiefs of subdivision will remain behind the front rank, the file closers in front of the rear rank, and the guides will place themselves in the same rank. The lieutenant colonel will remain abreast of the first division, now in rear; the major will give a point of direction to the leading guide, and march abreast of him.

172. The colonel will hold himself habitually on the directing flank; he will look to the step and to the distances, and see that all the principles prescribed for the march in column, school of the company, are observed.

173. These means, which the practice in that school ought to have rendered familiar, will give sufficient exactness to the direction of the column, and also enable it to form forward or face the rear, on the right, or on the left, into line of battle, and to close in mass.

174. But when a column, arriving in front, or in rear of the line of battle, or, rather, on one of the extremities of that line, has to prolong itself on it, in order to form to the left or to the right into line of battle, then, as it is essential, to prevent the column from cutting the line, or sensibly deviating from it, other means, as follows, will be employed.

***The column arriving in front of the line of battle, to prolong it on this line.***

175. If the column right in front arrive in front of the line of battle, as it should cross it and find itself four paces beyond it after having changed direction, the colonel will cause to be placed, in advance, a marker on the line to indicate than point at which the column ought to cross it, and another marker to indicate the point where the first subdivision should commence to wheel; he will be so placed that when the wheel is executed, the left guide will find himself four paces within the line of battle. The chief of the leading subdivision, when the head of the column shall have arrived near the line, will take the guide to the right, and direct himself on the this guide will

immediately direct himself on the second marker. On arriving abreast of him, this subdivision will be wheeled to the left, and when the wheel is completed, the guide will be changed to the left; this guide will then march parallel to the line of battle by the means to be hereinafter indicated.

176. The instant the first subdivision wheels, the right general guide, who, by a caution, from the lieutenant colonel, will before have placed himself on the line of battle at the point where the column crosses it, and who will have faced to the two points of direction in his front, indicated by the colonel, will march forward correctly on the prolongation of those points.

177. The color-bearer will place himself in like manner on the line of battle; and, at the instant the color subdivision wheels, he will prolong his march on that line, abreast with this subdivision, taking care to carry the color-lance before the centre of his person, and to maintain himself on the direction of the general guide who precedes him, and the point of direction in front which will have been indicated to him.

178. Finally, the left general guide will place himself in the same manner on the line of battle; and, at the instant the last subdivision of the battalion wheels, he will march correctly in the direction of the color-bearer, and the other general guide.

179. The guide of the first subdivision will march steadily abreast with the right general guide, and about four paces to his right; each of the guides of the following subdivisions will march in the trace of the guide who immediately precedes him, as prescribed, No. 167.

180. The colonel, placed outside of the general guides, will see that the column marches nearly parallel to, and about four paces within these guides.

181. The lieutenant colonel and major will look to the direction of the general guides, and to this end, place themselves sometimes in rear of the color-bearer, or the left general guide.

182. If the column be composed of several battalions, the general guides of each will successively place themselves on the line of battle to prolong their march on this line, as the leading subdivision, that of the color, and the one in the rear of their battalion, shall wheel into the new direction; these guides will conform themselves respectively, as will also the colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, to what is prescribed above for those of the leading battalion.

183. In the case of several battalions, the lieutenant colonel of each will maintain steadily the side of his leading subdivision about four paces within the line of general guides, even should the last subdivisions of the battalion immediately preceding deviate from the parallelism, in order that the false direction of one battalion may not influence that of the battalions which follow.

### ***The column arriving behind the line of battle to prolong it on this line.***

184. If the column, right in front, arrive behind the line of battle, as it ought to find itself four paces within this line, after having changed direction, the colonel will cause a marker to be placed at the point where, according to that condition, the first subdivision ought to commence wheeling. Another marker will be established on the line of battle, to indicate the point at which the general guides ought, in succession to begin to prolong themselves on that line; he will be so placed that each subdivision, having finished its wheel, may find itself nearly in a line with this marker.

185. At the instant the first subdivision, after having wheeled to the right, begins to prolong itself, parallelly to the line of battle, the leading general guide, placed in advance on that line, will direct himself on the two points taken in his front; the color-bearer and the other general guide will successively place themselves on the same line the instant that their respective subdivisions shall have finished their wheel.

186. If the column be composed of several battalions, the general guides of the following battalions will successively execute what has been just prescribed for those

of the leading battalion, and the whole will conform themselves, as well as the guides of subdivisions, and the field officers of the several battalions, to what is indicated, above, for a column arriving in front of a line of battle.

187. In a column, left in front, arriving in front or in rear of the line of battle, these movements will be executed on the same principles, and by inverse means.

***The column arriving on the right or the left of the line of battle, to prolong it on this line.***

188. If the column, instead of arriving in front or in rear of the line of battle, arrive on its right or left, and if it have to prolong itself on that line in order afterwards to form to the left or right into line of battle, the colonel will bring the color and general guides on the flank of the column by the command color and general guides on the line: and these guides will prolong themselves on the line of battle, conforming to what is prescribed above.

***Manner of prolonging a line of battle by markers.***

189. When a column prolongs itself on the line of battle, it being all-important that the general guides march correctly on that line, it becomes necessary that colonels, lieutenant colonels, and majors, whose duty it is to maintain the true direction, should be able to see, as far as practicable, the two objects, on which the march of the general guides ought to be directed; consequently, when no prominent objects present themselves in the desired direction, the chief of the column will supply the want of them in advance by aides-de-camp, or other mounted officers, and in such number as may be necessary.

190. Three such officers may prolong a line as far as may be desired in the following manner: they will place themselves in advance on the line of battle, the first at the point where the head of the column ought to enter; the second, three or four hundred paces behind the first, and the third, a like distance behind the second. The first of these officers will remain in position till the leading general guide shall have entered on the line of battle, and then, at a gallop, place himself at a convenient distance behind the third. The second will do the like in respect to the first, when the head of the column shall be near him, and so on in continuation. These officers, without dismounting, will face to the column, and cover each other accurately in file. It will be on them that the general guides will steadily direct their march, and it will be so much the more easy for the latter to maintain themselves on the direction, as they will always be able to see the mounted officers over the heads of the preceding guides; thus the deviation from the direction, by one or more general guides, need not mislead these who follow.

191. A single mounted officer may suffice to assure the direction of a column, when the point of direction towards which it marches is very distinct. In this case, that officer will place himself on the line of battle within that point, and beyond the one at which the head of the column will halt, and remain in position till the column halts; serving thus as the intermediate point for giving steadiness to the march of the general guides.

192. For a column of one or two battalions, markers on foot will suffice to indicate the line to be followed by the general guides.

**Remarks on the march in column.**

193. Although the uncadenced step be that of columns in route marches, and also that which ought to be habitually employed in the *Evolutions of the Line*, because it leaves the men more at ease, and, consequently is better adapted to movements on a large scale and to difficult grounds, nevertheless, as it is of paramount importance

to confirm soldiers in the measure and the movement of the cadenced pace, the route step will be but little practised in the exercises by battalion except in going to, and returning from, the ground of instruction, and for teaching the mechanism and movements of columns in route.

194. It is highly essential to the regularity of the march in column that each guide follow exactly in the trace of the one immediately preceding, without occupying his attention with the general direction of the guides. If this principle be steadily observed, the guides will find themselves aligned, provided that the leading one march exactly in the direction indicated to him; and even should obstacles in his way force him into a momentary deviation, the direction of the column would not necessarily be changed; whereas, if the following guides endeavor to conform themselves at once to all the movements of the leading one, in order to cover him in file, such endeavors would necessarily cause corresponding fluctuations in the column, from right to left, and from left to right, and render the preservation of distances extremely difficult.

195. As a consequence of the principle, that each guide shall exactly follow in the trace of one who immediately precedes, if, pending the march of the column, the colonel shall give a new point of direction, too near to the first to require a formal change of direction, the leading guide, advancing the one or the other shoulder will immediately direct himself on this point; the other guides will only conform themselves to this movement as each arrives at the point at which the first had executed it. Each subdivision will conform itself to the movement of its guide, the men insensibly lengthening or shortening the step, and advancing or refusing (throwing back) the shoulder opposite to the guide, but without losing the touch of the elbow towards his side.

196. The column, by company, being in march, the colonel will cause it to diminish front by platoon, from front to rear, at once, and to increase front by platoon in like manner, which movements will be commanded and executed as prescribed in the school of the company, Nos. 282 and 273 and following, changing the command *form company to form companies*. So may he increase and diminish, or diminish and increase front, according to the same principles and at once, by company, changing the command *form companies to form divisions*, and the command *break into platoons*, to break into companies. In this case, the companies and divisions will execute what is prescribed for platoons and companies respectively.

197. The column being at a halt, if the colonel should wish to march it to the rear, and the distance to be gained be so inconsiderable as to render a countermarch a disproportionate loss of time, he will cause the column to face about, and then put it in march by the commands prescribed No. 164: the chiefs of the subdivisions will remain behind the front rank, the file closers before the rear rank, and the guides will step into the rear rank, now in front. In a column, by division, the junior captains, in the intervals between companies, will replace their covering sergeants in the rear rank, and these sergeants will step into the line of file closers in front of their intervals.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### *Column in route.*

198. A column in route, like a column in manoeuvre, ought never to have a depth greater than about the front it had occupied in the line of battle, less the front of a subdivision.

199. The observance of this principle requires no particular rule for a column in manoeuvre; but, as a column in route may have hourly to pass narrow ways, bridges, or other defiles, rendering it necessary to diminish the front of subdivisions, it becomes important to give rules and means by which the column may, for any length of march, preserve the ease of the route step without elongation from front to rear.

200. A column in route will be habitually formed by company.

*Marching in columns of companies is one of the best ways to maneuver the battalion when you need to move fast, but anticipate being engaged at almost any time, or uncertain of the enemy's position and or disposition. It offers the fastest means of getting the battalion in line of battle or in an attack column on short notice.*

201. When a column in route shall arrive at a pass too narrow to receive the front of a company, the column will diminish front by platoon before entering. This movement will be executed successively, or by all the companies at once.

202. If, however, the defile be very short, and it may be passed by the diminution of a few files, it will be preferable to break to the rear the limited number of files.

203. The column being by platoon, and the want of space rendering a further diminution of front necessary, it will be diminished by section if the platoons be of twelve or more files.

204. The column being by section, will continue to march by that front as long as the defile may permit.

205. If the platoons have less than twelve files one or two files will be broken to the rear, according to the narrowing of the defile, and the rout step continued as long as six files can march abreast.

206. What has just been explained for breaking files to the rear in a column by platoon, is equally applicable to a column by section.

207. If the defile be too narrow to permit six men to march abreast, the subdivisions will be marched successively by the flank, conforming to what is prescribed Nos. 314 and 315, school of the company.

208. The battalion marching by the flank, will be formed into column, by section, by platoon, or by company, as soon as the breadth of the way may permit; the several movements which these formations include will be executed by the commands of the captains, as their companies successively clear the defile, observing the following rules.

209. As soon as the way is sufficiently broad to contain six men abreast, the captain will command:

**1. By section (or by platoon) into line. 2. MARCH.**

210. At the command *march*, the subdivisions indicated will form themselves into line; the files which have not been able to enter, will follow (by the flank) the last four files of their subdivision which have entered into line.

211. The column marching in this order, the files in rear will be caused to enter into line as the increased breadth of the way may permit.

212. The column marching by section or by platoon, platoons or companies will be formed as soon as the breadth of the way may permit.

213. The leading subdivision will follow the windings of the pass or defile; the following subdivisions will not occupy themselves with the direction, but all, in succession, pass over the trace of the subdivisions which precede them respectively. The men will not seek to avoid the bad parts of the way, but pass, as far as practicable, each in the direction of his file.

214. Changes of direction will always be made without command; if the change be important, a caution merely from the respective chiefs to their subdivisions will suffice, and the rear rank, as well as the files broken to the rear, will execute successively the movement where the front rank had executed it.

215. The colonel will hold himself at the head of the battalion; he will regulate the step of the leading subdivision, and indicate to its chief the instant for executing the various movement which the nature of the route may render necessary.

216. If the column be composed of several battalions, each will conform itself, in its turn, to what shall have been commanded for the leading battalion, observing to execute each movement at the same place, and in the same manner.

217. Finally, to render the mechanism of all those movements familiar to the troops, and to habituate them to march in the route step without elongating the column, commanders will generally cause their battalions to march in this step, going to, and returning from, fields of exercise. Each will occasionally conduct his battalion through narrow passes, in order to make it perceive the utility of the principles prescribed above; and he will several times, in every course of instruction march it in the route step, and cause to be executed, sometimes at once, and

sometimes successively, the divers movements which have just been indicated.

### **General remarks on the column in route.**

218. The lesson relative to the column in route is, by its frequent application, one of the most important that can be given to troops. If it be not well taught and established on right principles, it will happen that the rear of the column in route will be obliged to run, to regain distances, or that the front will be forced to halt till the rear shall have accomplished that object; thus rendering the march greatly slower, or greatly more fatiguing, generally both, than if it were executed according to rule.

219. The ordinary progress of a column in route ought to be, on good roads or good grounds, at the rate of one hundred and ten paces in a minute. This rate may be easily maintained by columns of almost any depth; but over bad roads, ploughed fields, loose sands, or mountainous districts, the progress cannot be so great, and must therefore be regulated according to circumstances.

220. The most certain means of marching well in route, is to preserve always a regular and equal movement, and, if obstacles oblige one or more subdivisions to slacken or to shorten the step, to cause the primitive rate of march to be resumed the moment the difficulties are passed.

221. A subdivision ought never to take more than the prescribed distance from the subdivision immediately preceding; but it is sometimes necessary to lessen that distance.

222. Thus: the head of the column encounters an obstacle which obliges it to relax its march all the following subdivisions will preserve the habitual step, and close up in mass, if necessary, on the subdivision nearest to the obstacle. Distances will afterwards naturally be recovered as each subdivision shall successively have passed the obstacle. Nevertheless, if the difficulty be too great to be overcome by one subdivision, whilst the next closing up, so that distances cannot afterwards be recovered without running, the chief of the column will halt the leading subdivision beyond the obstacle, at a distance sufficient to contain the whole column in mass. He will then put the column march, the subdivisions taking distances by the head, observing to commence the movement in time so that the last subdivision may not be obliged to halt, after having cleared the obstacle.

223. When the chief of a column shall wish change the rate of march, he will cause the leading subdivision to quicken or to relax the step insensibly, and send orders to the other subdivisions each to regulate itself by that which precedes it.

224. The column being composed of seven subdivisions, the general-in-chief will always leave an aide-de-camp with its rear to bring him prompt information if it find a difficulty in following.

225. Subdivisions ought always to step out well in obliquing, both in breaking and forming companies or platoons. When either is done in succession, it is highly important that no subdivision slacken or shorten the step whilst that which precedes it is engaged in the movement. The observance of this principle can alone prevent an elongation of the column.

226. If the battalion, marching by the flank encounter a pass so narrow as to oblige it to defile with a front of two men, the colonel will order *support arms*, take the cadenced step, and undouble the files, which will be executed as prescribed in the school of the company, No. 326; the files will double again as soon as the breadth of the way will permit.

227. If the defile be only sufficient to receive a front of one man, the colonel will cause the men to pass one at a time. The men of the same file should follow each other in their order as closely as possible, and without loss of time. As soon as the defile permits a front of two or four men, the battalion will be re-formed into two or four ranks, and will march in this order until there be space to form platoons or sections, as indicated No. 209.

228. In both cases, just supposed, the head of the battalion, after having passed the defile, will march till sufficient space be left to contain the whole of the subdivisions

in mass; afterwards it will be put in march by the means indicated No. 222.

229. When a command has to move rapidly over a given distance, the movements prescribed in this article will be executed in double quick time; if the distance be long, the chief of the column will not allow the march at this gait to be continued for more than fifteen minutes; at the end of this time, he will order the ordinary route step to be marched for five minutes, and then again resume the double quick. If the ground be uneven, having considerable ascents and descents, he will reserve the double quick for those parts of the ground most favorable to this march.

230. A column marching alternately in double quick time and the ordinary route step, in the manner stated, can easily accomplish very long distances in a very short space of time; but when the distance to be passed over be not greater than two miles, it ought to be accomplished, when the ground is favorable, without changing the rate of march.

**ARTICLE THIRD.**

***To change direction in column at full distance.***

231. The column being in march in the cadenced step, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to change direction, he will go to the point at which the change ought to be commenced, and establish a marker there presenting the breast to the flank of the column; this marker, no matter to which side the change of direction is to be made, will be posted on the opposite side, and he will remain in position till the last subdivision of the battalion shall have passed. The leading subdivision being within a few paces of the marker, the colonel will command:

***Head of column to the left (or right).***

232. At this, the chief of the leading subdivision will immediately take the guide on the side opposite the change of direction if not already there. This guide will direct himself so as to graze the breast of the marker; arrived at this point, the chief will cause his subdivision to change direction by the commands and according to the principles prescribed in the school of the company. When the wheel is completed, the chief of this subdivision will retake the guide, if changed, on the side of the primitive direction.

233 The chief of each succeeding subdivision, as well as the guides, will conform to what has just been explained for the leading subdivision.

234. The colonel will carefully see that the guide of each subdivision, in wheeling, does not throw himself without or within, but passes over all the points of the arc of the circle, which he ought to describe.

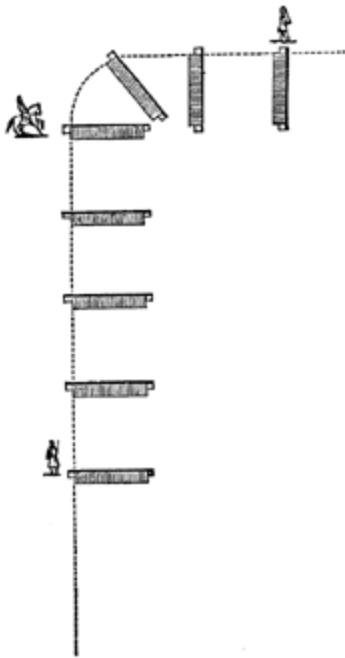
235. As often as no distinct object presents itself in the new direction, the lieutenant colonel will place himself upon it in advance, at the distance of thirty or forty paces from the marker, and be assured in this direction by the colonel; the leading guide will take, the moment he shall have changed direction, two points on the ground in the straight line which, drawn from himself, would pass between the heels of the lieutenant colonel, taking, afterwards, new points as he advances.

236. The major will see that the guides direct themselves on the marker posted at the point of change, so as to graze his breast.

237. If the column be composed of several battalions, the lieutenant colonel of the second, will cause the marker of the first battalion, to be replaced as soon as the last subdivision of this battalion shall have passed; this disposition will be observed by battalion after battalion, to the rear of the column.

**Remarks.**

238. It has been demonstrated, school of the company, how important it is, first,



**Head of the Column to the Right**



that each subdivision execute its change of direction precisely at the point where the leading one had change and that it arrive in a square with the direction; second, that the wheeling point ought, always, to be cleared in time, in order that the subdivision engaged in the wheel may not arrest the movement of the following one. The deeper the column, the more rigorously ought these principles to be observed; because, a fault that would be but slight in a column of a single battalion, would cause much embarrassment in one of great depth.

## *ARTICLE FOURTH.*

### *To halt the column.*

239. The column being in march, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command:

#### *1. Column. 2. HALT.*

240. At the second command, briskly repeated by the captains, the column will halt; no guide will stir, though he may have lost his distance, or be out of the direction of the preceding guides.

241. The column being in march, in double quick time, will be halted by the same commands. At the command halt the men will halt in their places, and will themselves rectify their positions in the ranks.

242. The column being halted, when the colonel shall wish to form it into line of battle, he will move a little in front of the leading guide, and face to him; this guide and the following one will fix their eyes on the colonel, in order promptly to conform themselves to his directions.

243. If the colonel judge it not necessary to give a general direction to the guides, he will limit himself to rectifying the position of such as may be without, or within the direction, by the command guide of (such) company, or guides of (such) companies, to the right, (or to the left;) at this command, the guides designated will place themselves on the direction; the others will stand fast.

244. If, on the contrary, the colonel judge it necessary to give a general direction to the guides of the column, he will place the first two on the direction he shall have chosen, and command:

#### *Guides, cover.*

245. At this, the following guides will promptly place themselves on the direction covering the first two in file, and each precisely at a distance equal to the front of his company, from the guide immediately preceding; the lieutenant colonel will assure them in the direction, and the colonel will command:

#### *Left, (or right)-DRESS.*

246. At this command, each company will incline to the right or left, and dress forward or backward, so as to bring the designated flank to rest on its guide; each captain will place himself two paces outside of his guide, promptly align his company parallelly with that which precedes, then command *FRONT*, and return to his place in column

247. Finally, if the general guides march on the flank of the column, the colonel, having halted it, will place himself in rear of the color-bearer, to ascertain whether the leading general guide and the color-bearer be exactly on the direction of the two points in advance, and establish them on that direction if they be not already on it: the

major will do the like, in respect to the general guide in the rear; which being executed, the colonel will command:

***1. Guides-ON THE LINE.***

248. At this command, the guide of each company of the directing flank will step promptly into the direction of the general guides, and face the front. The lieutenant colonel, placed in front of, and facing to, the leading general guide, and the major, placed in rear of the rearmost one will promptly align the company guides.

249. The colonel, having verified the direction of the guides, will command:

***Left (or right)-DRESS.***

250. This will be executed as prescribed, No. 246.

**Remarks.**

251. The means indicated, No. 244, and following for giving a general direction to the guides of a column, at full distance, will apply only to a column composed of two, or, at most, three battalions. If the number be more numerous, its chief will cause the colors and general guides of all the battalions to step out and place themselves on the direction which he may wish to give to the column, as is explained in the evolutions of the line.

***ARTICLE FIFTH.***

***To close the column to half distance, or in mass.***

252. A column by company being at full distance right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to close to half distance, on the leading company, he will command:

***1. To half distance, close column. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH.)***

253. At the first command, the captain of the leading company will caution it to stand fast.

254. At the command *march*, which will be repeated by all the captains, except the captain of the leading company, this company will stand fast, and its chief will align it by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

255. All the other companies will continue to march, and as each in succession arrives at platoon distance from the one which precedes, its captain will halt it.

256. At the instant that each company halts, its guide will place himself on the direction of the guides who precede, and the captain will align the company by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

257. No particular attention need be given to the general direction of the guides before they respectively halt; it will suffice if each follow in the trace of the one who precedes him.

258. The colonel, on the side of the guides, will superintend the execution of the movement, observing that the captains halt their companies exactly at platoon distance the one from the other.

259. The lieutenant colonel, a few paces in front, will face to the leading guide and assure the positions of the following guides as they successively place themselves on the direction.

260. The major will follow the movement abreast with the last guide.

261. If the column be in march, the colonel will cause it to close by the same

commands.

262. If the column be marching in double quick time, at the first command, the captain of the leading company will command *quick time*; the chiefs of the other companies will caution them to continue their march.

263. At the command *march*, the leading company will march in quick, and the other companies in double quick time and as each arrives at platoon distance from the preceding one, its chief will cause it to march in quick time.

264. When the rearmost company shall have gained its distance, the colonel will command:

***Double quick-MARCH.***

265. When the colonel shall wish to halt the column and to cause it to close to half distance at the same time, he will notify the captain of the leading company of his intention, who at the command *march* will halt his company and align it by the left.

266. If the column be marching in quick time, and the colonel should not give the command double quick, the captain of the leading company will halt his company at the command *march*, and align it by the left. In the case, where the colonel adds the command *double quick*, the captains of companies will conform to what is prescribed No. 262, and the movement will be executed as indicated No. 263.

***To close the column on the eighth, or rearmost company.***

267. The column being at a halt, if instead of causing it to close to half distance on the first company, the colonel should wish to cause it to close on the eighth, he will command:

***1. On the eighth company, to half distance close column. 2. Battalion about-FACE. 3. Column forward. 4. Guide right. 5. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

268. At the second command, all the companies except the eighth, will face about, and their guides will remain in the front rank, now the rear.

269. At the fourth command, all the captains will place themselves two paces outside of their companies on the directing flank.

270. At the command *march*, the eighth company will stand fast, and its captain will align it by the left, the other companies will put themselves in march, and, as each arrives at platoon distance from the one established before it, its captain will halt it and face it to the front. At the moment that each company halts, the left guide, remaining faced to the rear, will place himself promptly on the direction of the guides already established. Immediately after, the captain will align his company by the left, and the file closers will close one pace on the rear rank. If this movement be executed in double quick time, each captain, in turn, will halt, and command: ***Such company, right about-HALT.*** At this command, the company designated will face to the right about and halt.

271. All the companies being aligned, the colonel will cause the guides, who stand faced to the rear, to face about.

272. The lieutenant colonel, placing himself behind the rearmost guide, will assure successively the positions of the other guides, as prescribed No. 259; the major will remain abreast with the rearmost company.

273. The column being in march, when the colonel shall wish to close it on the eighth company, he will command:

***1. On the eighth company, to half distance, close column. 2. Battalion right about. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH-) 4. Guide right.***

274. At the first command, the captain of the eighth company will caution his

company that it will remain faced to the front; the captains of the other companies will caution their companies that they will have to face about.

275. At the command *march*, the captain of the eighth company will halt his company and align it by the left; the file closer's will close one pace upon the rear rank.

276. The captains of the other companies, at the same command, will place themselves on the flank of the column; the subdivisions will face about, and as each arrives at platoon distance from the company immediately preceding it, its chief will face it to the front and halt it, as prescribed No. 270. The instant each company halts, the guide on the directing flank, remaining faced to the rear, will quickly place himself on the direction of the guides already established. After which, the captain will align the company by the left, and the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

277. The lieutenant colonel will follow the movement abreast of the first company. The major will place himself a few paces in rear of the guide of the eighth company, and will assure successively the position of the other guides.

### **Remarks.**

278. A column by division at full distance will close to half distance by the same means and the same commands.

279. A column, by company, or by division, being at full or half distance, the colonel will cause it to close in mass by the same means and commands, substituting the indication, column, close in mass, for that of to half distance, close column. Each chief of subdivision will conform himself to all that has just been prescribed, except that he will not halt his subdivision till its guide shall be at a distance of six paces from the guide of the subdivision next preceding.

280. In a column, left in front, these various movements will be executed on the same principles.

## ***ARTICLE SIXTH.***

### ***To march in column at half distance, or closed in mass.***

281. A column at half distance or in mass, being at a halt, the colonel will put it in march by the commands prescribed for a column at full distance.

282. The means of direction will also be the same for a column at half distance or in mass, as for a column at full distance, except that the general guides will not step out.

283. A column at half distance or in mass, being in march, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will give the commands prescribed for halting a column at full distance, and if, afterwards, he judge it necessary to give a general direction to the guides of the column, he will employ, to this end, the commands and means indicated, No. 244 and following.

284. In columns at half distance or closed in mass, chiefs of subdivision will repeat the commands *march* and *halt*, as in columns at full distance.

285. The colonel will often march the column to the rear, by the means and the commands prescribed Nos. 170 and 171.

286. A column by division or company, whether at full or half distance or closed in mass, at a halt or marching, can be faced to the right or left, and marched off in the new direction.

**ARTICLE SEVENTH.*****To change direction in column at half distance.***

287. A column at half distance, being in march, will change direction by the same commands and according to the same principles as a column at full distance; but as the distance between the subdivisions is less, the pivot man in each subdivision will take steps of fourteen inches instead of nine, and of seventeen inches instead of eleven, according to the gait, in order to clear, in time, the wheeling point, and the marching flank will describe the arc of a larger circle, the better to facilitate the movement.

**ARTICLE EIGHTH.*****To change direction in column closed in mass.*****1st. To change direction in marching.**

288. A column by division, closed in mass being in march, will change direction by the front of subdivisions.

289. Whether the change be made to the reverse, or to the pivot flank, it will always be executed on the principle of wheeling in marching; to this end, the colonel will first cause the battalion to take the guide on the flank opposite to the intended change of direction, if it be not already on that flank.

290. A column by division, closed in mass, right in front, having to change direction to the right, the colonel, after having caused a marker to be placed at the point where the change ought to commence, will command:

***1. Battalion, right wheel. 2. MARCH.***

291. At the command *march*, the leading division will wheel as if it were part of a column at half distance.

292. The instant that this division commences the wheel, all the others will, at once, conform themselves to its movement; to this end the left guide of each, advancing slightly the left shoulder and lengthening a little the step, will incline to the left, and will observe, at the same time, to gain so much ground to the front that there may constantly be an interval of four paces between his division and that which precedes it; and as soon as he shall cover the preceding guide, he will cease to incline and then march exactly in his trace.

293. Each division will conform itself to the movement of its guide; the men will feel lightly the elbow towards him and advance a little the left shoulder the instant the movement commences; each file, in inclining, will gain so much the less ground to the front, as the file shall be nearer to the pivot, and the right guide will gain only so much as may be necessary to maintain between his own and the preceding division the same distance which separates their marching flanks.

294. Each chief of division, turning to it, will regular its march, and see that it remains constantly included between its guides, that its alignment continues nearly parallel to that of the preceding division, and that the centre bends only a little to the rear.

295. The colonel will superintend the movement, and cause the pivot of the leading division to lengthen or to shorten the step, conforming to the principle established, school of the company, No. 227 if either be necessary to facilitate the movement of the other divisions.

296. The lieutenant colonel, placed near the left guide of the leading division, will regulate his march, and take care, above all, that he does not throw himself within the arc he ought to describe.

297. The major, placed in the rear of the guides, will see that the last three conform themselves, each by slight degrees, to the movement of the guide immediately preceding, and that neither inclines too much in the endeavor to cover too promptly the guide in his front; he will rectify any serious fault that may be committed in either of those particulars.

298. The colonel, seeing the wheel nearly ended, will command:

**1. Forward. 2. MARCH.**

299. At the second command, which will be given at the instant the leading division completes its wheel, it will resume the direct march; the other divisions will conform themselves to this movement; and if any guide find himself not covering his immediate leader, he will, by slight degrees, bring himself on the trace of that guide, by advancing the right shoulder.

300. If the column, right in front, has to change direction to the left, the colonel will first cause it to take the guide to the right, and then command:

**1. Battalion, left wheel. 2. MARCH.**

301. At the command *march*, the battalion will change direction to the left, according to the principles just prescribed, and by inverse means.

302. When the battalion shall have resumed the direct march, the colonel will change the guide to the left, on seeing the last three guides nearly in the direction of the one in front.

303. The foregoing changes of direction will be executed according to the same principles in a column, left in front.

304. A column by company, closed in mass, will change direction in marching, by the commands and means indicated for a column by division.

305. The guide who is the pivot of the particular wheel, ought to maintain himself at his usual distance of six paces from the guide who precedes him; if this distance be not exactly preserved, the divisions would necessarily become confounded, which must be carefully avoided.

**2d. To change direction from a halt.**

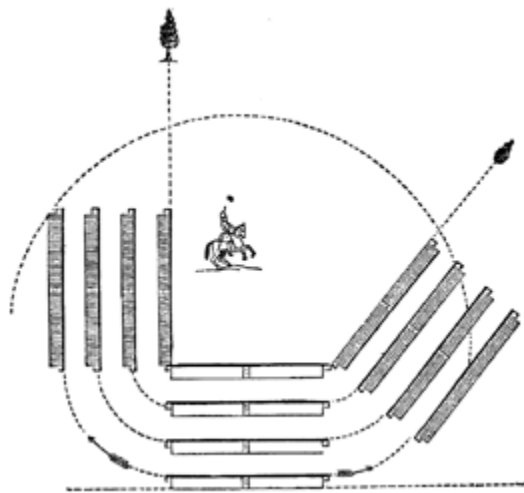
306. A column by company, or by division, closed in mass, being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to give it a new direction, and in which it is to remain, he will cause it to execute this movement by the flanks of subdivisions, in the following manner:

307. The battalion having the right in front, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to change direction by the right flank, he will indicate to the lieutenant colonel the point of direction to the right; this officer will immediately establish, on the new direction, two markers, distant from each other a little less than the front of the first subdivision, the first marker in front of the right file of this subdivision; which being executed, he will command:

**1. Change direction by the right flank. 2. Battalion, right-FACE. 3. MARCH (or double quick- MARCH).**

308. At the second command, the column will face to the right, and each chief of subdivision will place himself by the side of his right guide.

309. At the command *march*, all the subdivisions will step off together: the right guide of the leading one will direct himself from the first step, parallelly to the markers placed in advance on the new direction; the chief of the subdivision will not follow the movement, but see it file past, and as soon as the left guide shall



**Change Direction by a flank**

have passed, he will command:

*1. First company (or first division). 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. Left-DRESS.*

310. At the fourth command, the subdivision will place itself against the two markers, and be promptly aligned by its chief.

311. The right guide of each of the following subdivisions will conform himself to the direction of the right guide of the subdivision preceding his own in the column, so as to enter on the new direction parallelly to that subdivision, and at the distance of four paces from its rear rank.

312. Each chief of subdivision will halt in his own person, on arriving opposite to the left guides already placed on the new direction, see his subdivision file past, and conform himself, in halting and aligning it, to what is prescribed No. 309.

313. If the change of direction be by the left flank, the colonel will cause markers to be established as before, the first in front of the left file of the leading subdivision, and then give the same commands, substituting the indication left for right.

314. At the second command, all the subdivisions will face to the left, and each chief will place himself by the side of his left guide.

315. At the command *march*, all the subdivisions will step off together, each conducted by its chief.

316. The guide of the leading subdivision will direct himself, from the first step, parallelly to the markers; the subdivision will be conducted by its chief; and as soon as its left guide shall have passed the second marker, it will be halted and aligned as prescribed above; and so of each of the following subdivisions.

317. The colonel will hold himself on the designated flank, to see that each subdivision enters the new direction parallelly to the leading one, and at the prescribed distance from that which precedes.

318. The lieutenant colonel will place himself in front of, and facing to, the guide of the leading subdivision, and will assure the positions of the following guides, as they successively arrive on the new direction.

319. The major will follow the movement abreast with the last subdivision.

320. In order that this movement may be executed with facility and precision, it is necessary that the leading subdivision should entirely unmask the column; for example, the movement being made by the right flank, it is necessary, before halting the leading subdivision, that its left guide shall, at least, have arrived at the place previously occupied by its right guide, in order that each following subdivision which has to pass over a space at least equal to its front to put itself in the new direction, and whose left ought to pass the point at which the right had rested, may, at the command halt, find itself, in its whole front, parallel to the leading subdivision.

321. By this method there is no direction that may not be given to a column in mass.

## **ARTICLE NINTH.**

### ***Being in column at half distance, or closed in mass, to take distances.***

322. A column at half distance will take full distances by the head of the column when it has to prolong itself on the line of battle. If, on the contrary, it has to form itself in line of battle on the ground it occupies, it will take distances on the leading or on the rearmost subdivision, according as the one or other may find itself at the point where the right or left of the battalion ought to rest in line of battle.

#### **1st. To take distances by the head of the column.**

323. The column being by company at half distance and at a halt, when the colonel

shall wish to cause it to take full distances by the head, he will command:

*By the head of column, take wheeling distance.*

324. At this command, the captain of the leading company will put it in march; to this end, he will command:

*1. First company, forward. 2. Guide left. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

325. When the second shall have nearly its wheeling distance, its captain will command:

*1. Second company, forward. 2. Guide left 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

326. At the command *march*, which will be pronounced at the instant that this company shall have its wheeling distance, it will step off smartly, taking the step from the preceding company. Each of the other companies will successively execute what has just been prescribed for the second.

327. The colonel will see that each company puts itself in march at the instant it has its distance.

328. The lieutenant colonel will bold himself at the head of the column, and direct the march of the leading guide.

329. The major will hold himself abreast with the rearmost guide.

330. If the column, instead of being at a halt, be in march, the colonel will give the same commands, and add:

*MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

331. If the column be marching in quick time, at the command *march*, the captain of the leading company will cause double quick time to be taken; which will also be done by the other captains as the companies successively attain their proper wheeling distance.

332. If the column be marching in double quick time, the leading company will continue to march at the same gait. The captains of the other companies will cause quick time to be taken, and as each company gains its proper distance, its captain will cause it to retake the double quick step.

**2d. To take distances on the rear of the column.**

333. If the colonel wish to take distances on the rearmost company, he will establish two markers on the direction he shall wish to give to the line of battle, the first opposite to the rearmost company, the second marker towards the head of the column, at company distance from the first, and both facing to the rear; at the same time, the right general guide, on an intimation from the lieutenant colonel, will move rapidly a little beyond the point to which the head of the column will extend, and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

*1. On the eighth company, take wheeling distance. 2. Column forward. 3. Guide left. 4. MARCH. (or double quick-MARCH).*

334. At the third command, the captains will place themselves two paces outside of the directing flank; the captain of the eighth company will caution it to stand fast.

335. At the command *march*, repeated by all the captains, except the captain of the eighth company, this latter company will stand fast; its chief will align it by the left on the first marker, who is opposite to this company, and place himself before its



centre, after commanding: *FRONT*. At this command, the marker will retire, and the left guide will take his place.

336. All the other companies will put themselves in march, the guide of the leading one directing himself a little within the right general guide; when the seventh company has arrived opposite the second marker, its captain will halt, and align it on this marker, in the manner prescribed for the eighth company.

337. When the captain of the sixth company shall see that there is between his company and the seventh, the necessary space for wheeling into line, he will halt his company; the guide facing to the rear will place himself promptly on the direction, and the moment he shall be assured in his position, the captain will align the company by the left, and then place himself two paces before its centre the other companies will successively conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the sixth company.

338. The colonel will follow the movement, and see that each company halts at the prescribed distance; he will promptly remedy any fault that may be committed, and, as soon as all the companies shall be aligned, he will cause the guides, who are faced to the rear, to face about.

339. The lieutenant colonel will successively assure the left guides on the direction, placing himself in their rear, as they arrive.

340. The major will bold himself at the head of the column, and will direct the march of the leading guide.

### **3d. To take distances on the head of the column.**

341. The colonel, wishing to take distances on the leading company, will establish two markers in the manner just prescribed, one abreast with this company, and the other at company distance in rear of the first, but both facing to the front: the left general guide, on an intimation from the lieutenant colonel, will move rapidly to the rear and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers, a little beyond the point to which the rear of the column will extend: these dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

*1. On the first company, take wheeling distance. 2. Battalion, about-FACE. 3. Column, forward. 4. Guide right. 5. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

342. At the second command, all the companies, except the one designated, will face about, the guides remaining in the front rank, now become the rear.

343. At the fourth command, the captains will place themselves outside of their guides

344. At the command *march*, the captain of the designated company will align it, as prescribed, No. 335, on the marker placed by its side.

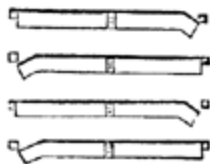
345. The remaining companies will put themselves in march, the guide of the rearmost one will direct himself a little within the left general guide; when the second company shall have arrived opposite the second marker, its captain will face it about, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 270, and align it, as has just been prescribed for the first company.

346. The instant that the third company shall have its wheeling distance, its captain will halt it facing it about, as prescribed, No. 270, and align it by the left; the captains of the remaining companies will each, in succession, conform himself to what has just been prescribed for the captain of the third.

347. The colonel will follow the movement, as indicated No. 338; the lieutenant colonel and major will conform themselves to what is prescribed, Nos. 339 and 340.

348. These various movements will be executed according to the same principles in a column with the left in front.

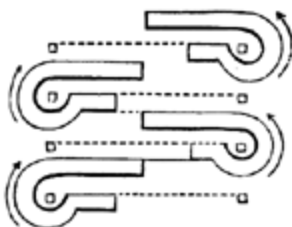
349. They will be executed in like manner in a column closed in mass; but, if it be the wish of the colonel to open out the column to half, instead of full distance, he will substitute, in the commands, the indication half distance for that of wheeling distance.



350. In a column by division, distances will be taken according to the same principles.

**ARTICLE TENTH.**

***Countermarch of a column at full or half distance.***



351. In a column at full or half distance, the countermarch will be executed by the means indicated, school of the company; to this end, the colonel will command:

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Battalion right (or left-FACE.* 3 *By file left (or right).* 4. *MARCH, (or double quick-MARCH).*

***To countermarch a column closed in mass.***

352. If the column be closed in mass, the countermarch will be executed by the commands and means subjoined.

353. The column being supposed formed by division, right in front, the colonel will command

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Battalion, right and left FACE.* 3. *By file left and right.* 4. *MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*



**Countermarch of a column**

354. At the first command, the chiefs of the odd numbered divisions will caution them to face to the right, and the chiefs of the others to face to the left.

355. At the second command, the odd divisions will face to the right, and the even to the left; the right and left guides of all the divisions will face about; the chiefs of odd divisions will hasten to their right and cause two files to break to the rear, and each chief place himself on the left the leading front rank man of his division ; the chiefs of even divisions will hasten to their left, and cause two files to break to the rear, and each chief place himself on the right of his leading front rank man.

356. At the command *march*, all the divisions, each conducted by its chief, will step off smartly, the guides standing fast; each odd division will wheel by file to the left around its right guide; each even division will wheel by file to the right around its left guide, each division so directing its march as to arrive behind its opposite guide, and when its head shall be up with this guide, the chief will halt the division, and cause it to face to the front.

357. Each division, on facing to the front, will be aligned by its chief by the right; to this end, the chiefs of the even divisions will move rapidly to the right of their respective divisions.

358. The divisions being aligned, each chief will command, *FRONT*; at this, the guides will shift to their proper flanks.

359. In a column with the left in front, the countermarch will be executed by the same commands and means; but all the divisions will be aligned by the left: to this end, the chiefs of the odd divisions will hasten to the left of their respective divisions as soon as the latter shall have been faced to the front.

360. The colonel, placed on the directing flank, will superintend the general movement.

361. The countermarch being ended, the lieutenant colonel will always place himself abreast with the leading, and the major abreast with the rearmost division.

362. In a column by company, closed in mass, the countermarch will be executed, by the same means and commands, applying to companies what is prescribed for divisions.

363. The countermarch will always take place from a halt, whether the column be closed in mass, or at full, or half distance.

### **ARTICLE ELEVENTH.**

#### ***Being in column by company, closed in mass, to form divisions.***

364. The column being closed in mass, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form divisions, he will command:

**1. Form divisions. 2. Left companies, left-FACE. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH.)**

365. At the first command, the captains of the left companies will caution them to face to the left.

366. At the second command, the left companies will face to the left, and their captains will place themselves by the side of their respective left guides.

367. The right companies, and their captains will stand fast; but the right and left guides of each of these companies will place themselves respectively before the right and left files of the company both guides facing to the right, and each resting his right arm gently against the breast of the front rank man of the file, in order to mark the direction.

368. At the command *march*, the left companies only will put themselves in march, their captains standing fast; as each shall see that his company, filing past, has nearly cleared the column, he will command:

**1. Such company. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.**

369. The first command will be given when the company shall yet have four paces to march; the second at the instant it shall have cleared its right company; and the third immediately after the second.

370. The company having faced to the front, the files, if there be intervals between them, will promptly incline to the right; the captain will place himself on the left of the right company of the division, and align himself correctly on the front rank of that company.

371. The left guide will place himself at the same time before one of the three left files of his company, face to the right, and cover correctly the guides of the right company; the moment his captain sees him established on the direction, he will command:

#### ***Right-DRESS.***

372. At this, the left company will dress forward on the alignment of the right company; the front rank man, who may find himself opposite to the left guide, will, without preceding his rank, rest lightly his breast against the right arm of this guide; the captain of the left company will direct its alignment on this man, and the alignment being assured, he will command, **FRONT**; but not quit his position.

373. The colonel seeing the divisions formed, will command:

#### ***Guides-POSTS.***

374. At this, the guides who have marked the fronts of divisions will return to their places, in column, the left guide of each right company passing through the interval in the centre of the division, and the captains will place themselves as

prescribed No. 75.

375. The colonel, from the directing flank of the column, will superintend the general execution of the movement.

376. If the column be in march, instead of at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form divisions, he will command:

*1. Form divisions. 2. Left companies, by the left flank. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

377. At the first command, the captains of the right companies will command, Mark time, the captains of the left companies will caution their companies to face by the left flank.

378. At the third command the right companies will mark time, the left companies will face to the left; the captains of the left companies will each see his company file past him, and when it has cleared the column, will command:

*Such company by the right flank.-MARCH.*

As soon as the divisions are formed, the colonel will command:

*4. Forward. 5. MARCH.*

379. At the fifth command, the column will resume the gait at which it was marching previous to the commencement of the movement. The guides of each division will remain on the right and left of their respective companies; the left guide of the right company will pass into the line of file closers, before the two companies are united; the right guide of the left company will step into the rear rank. The captains will place themselves as prescribed No. 75:

*Being in column at full or half distance to form divisions.*

380. If the column be at a halt, and, instead of being closed in mass, is at full or half distance, divisions will be formed in the same manner; but the captains of the left companies, if the movement be made in quick time, after commanding *FRONT*, will each place himself before the centre of his company and command, *1. Such company, forward. 2. Guide right. 3. MARCH.* If the movement be made in double quick time, each will command as soon as his company has cleared the column:

*1. Such company by the right flank. 2. MARCH.*

381. The right guide of each left company will so direct his march as to arrive by the side of the man on the left of the right company. The left company being nearly up with the rear rank of the right company, its captain will halt it, and the movement will be finished as prescribed No. 371 and following.

382. If the left be in front, the movement will be executed by inverse means: the right companies will conform themselves to what is prescribed above for the left companies; and the two guides, placed respectively, before the right and left files of each left company, will face to the left. At the command, *Guides posts*, given by the colonel, the guides, who have marked the front of divisions, and the captains, will quickly retake their places in the column.

383. If the column be marching at full distance, the divisions will be formed as prescribed No. 196. If it be marching at half distance, the formation will take place by the commands and according to the principles indicated No. 376; if the column be marching in double quick time, the companies which should mark time will march in quick time by the command of their captains.

**Remarks on the formation of divisions from a halt.**

384. As this movement may be considered as the element of deployments, it ought to be executed with the utmost accuracy.

385. If companies marching by the flank do not preserve exactly their distances, there will be openings between the files at the instant of facing to the front.

386. If captains halt their companies too early, they will want space, and the files which have not cleared the flanks of the standing companies will not be able to dress into line without pushing their ranks laterally.

387. If on the contrary the companies be halted too late, it will be necessary for them to incline to the right or left in dressing; and in deployments, either of these faults would lead to error in the following companies.

388. As often as a guide shall have to step out to place himself before his subdivision in order to mark the direction, he will be particularly careful to place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three outer files of the subdivision when they shall be aligned: if he take too much distance, and neither of those files finds itself against him, the chiefs of the subdivision will have no assured point on which to direct the alignment.

***PART FOURTH.******Different modes of passing from the order in column to the order in battle.******ARTICLE FIRST.******Manner of determining the line of battle.***

389. The line of battle may be marked or determined in three different manners: 1st, by placing two markers eighty or a hundred paces apart, on the direction it is wished to give to the line; 2d, by placing a marker at the point at which it may be intended to rest a flank, and then choosing a second point towards, or beyond the opposite flank, and there posting a second marker distant from each other a little less than the leading subdivision; 3d, by choosing at first the points of direction for the flanks, and then determining, by intermediate points, the straight line between those selected points, both of which may sometimes be beyond reach.

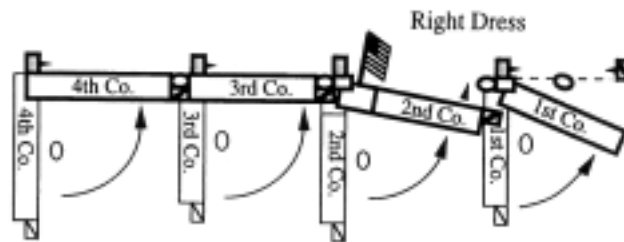
***ARTICLE SECOND.******Different modes of passing from column at full distance into line of battle.***

- |   |   |                             |
|---|---|-----------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>To the left (or right,)</i></li> <li>2. <i>On the right (or left)</i></li> <li>3. <i>Forward,</i></li> <li>4. <i>Faced to the rear,</i></li> </ol> | } | <i>into line of battle.</i> |
|---|---|-----------------------------|

**1st. Column at full distance, right in front, to the left into line of battle.**

390. A column, right in front, being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it to the left into line, he will assure the positions of the guides by the means previously indicated, and then command:

(Image from dal Bello, *Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion*, 4th Ed.)



**“Left into line, Wheel”.** A column of companies at full distance deploy to the left into a halted line. At “wheel,” the right guide of the rightmost company moves onto line with the left guides, facing them. At MARCH, the guides halt, the leftmost man of each company faces left to the right arm of his company’s left guide, and each company wheels on a fixed pivot into line.

**1. Left into line, wheel. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

391. At the first command, the right guide of the leading company will hasten to place himself on the direction of the left guides of the column, face to them, and place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three right files of his company, when they shall be in line: he will be assured this position by the lieutenant colonel.

392. At the command march, briskly repeated by the captains, the left front rank man of each company will face to the left, and rest his breast lightly against the right arm of his guide; the companies will wheel to the left on the principle of wheeling from a halt, conforming themselves to what is prescribed, school of the company, No. 239: each captain will turn to his company, to observe the execution of the movement, and, when the right of the company shall arrive at three paces from the line of battle, he will command:

**Such company. 2. HALT.**

393. The company being halted, the captain will place himself on the line by the side of the left front rank man of the company next on the right, align himself correctly, and command:

**3. Right-DRESS.**

394. At this command the company will dress up between the captain and the front rank man on its left, the captain directing the alignment on that man; the front rank man on the right of the right company, who finds himself opposite to its right-guide, will lightly rest his breast against the left arm of this guide.

395. Each captain, having aligned his company will command, **FRONT**, and the colonel will add:

**Guides-POSTS.**

396. At this command, the guides will return to their places in line of battle, each passing through the nearest captain’s interval; to permit him to pass, the captain will momentarily step before the first file of his company, and the covering sergeant behind the same file. This rule is general for all formations into line of battle.

397. When companies form line of battle, file closers will always place themselves exactly two paces from the rear rank, which will sufficiently assure their alignment.

398. The battalion being correctly aligned, the colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, as well as the adjutant and sergeant major, will return to their respective places in line of battle. This rule is general for all the formations into line of battle; nevertheless, the battalion being in the school of elementary instruction, the colonel will go to any point he may deem necessary.

399. A column, with the left in front, will form itself to the right into line of battle, according to the same principles; the left guide of the left company will place himself,

at the first command, on the direction of the right guides, in a manner corresponding to what is prescribed, No. 391, for the right guide of the right company.

400. At the command *guides posts*, the captains will take their places in line of battle as well as the guides. This rule is general for all formations into line of battle in which the companies are aligned by the left.

401. A column by division may form itself into line of battle by the same commands, and means, but observing what follows: if the right be in front, at the command halt, given by the chiefs of division, the left guide of each right company will place himself on the alignment opposite to one of the three files on the left of his company; the left de of the first company will be assured on the direction by the lieutenant colonel; the left guides of the other right companies will align themselves correctly on the division guides; to this end, the division guides (on the alignment) will invert, and hold their pieces up perpendicularly before the centre of their bodies, at the command *left into line, wheel*. If the column by division be with the left in front, the right guides of left companies will conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the left guides of right companies and place themselves on the line opposite to one of the three right files of their respective companies.

402. A column in march will be formed into line, without halting, by the same commands and means. At the command *march*, the guides will halt in their places, and the lieutenant colonel will promptly rectify their positions.

403. If, in forming the column into line, the colonel should wish to move forward, without halting, he will command:

**1. By companies left wheel. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

404. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will wheel to the left on a fixed pivot, as prescribed in the school of the company, No. 261 the left guides will step back into the rank of file closers before the wheel is completed, and when the right of the companies shall arrive near the line, the colonel will command:

**3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide centre.**

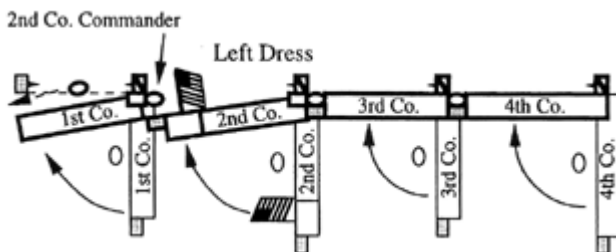
405. At the fourth command, given at the instant the wheel is completed, the companies will march directly to the front. At the fifth command, the color and the general guides will move rapidly six paces to the front. The colonel will assure the direction of the color; the captains of companies and the men will, at once, conform themselves to the principles of the march in line of battle, to be hereinafter indicated, No. 587, and following.

406. The same principles are applicable to a column left in front.

**By inversion to the right (or left) into line of battle.**

407. When a column, right in front, shall be under the necessity of forming itself into line faced to the reverse flank, and the colonel shall wish to execute this formation by the shortest movement, he will command:

**1. By inversion, right into line, wheel. 2. Battalion, guide right.**



**By inversion, right into line, wheel**

(Image from dal Bello, *Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion*, 4th Ed.)

408. At the first command, the lieutenant colonel will place himself in front, and facing to the right guide of the leading subdivision; at the second command, he will rectify, as promptly as possible, the direction of the right guides of the column; the captain of the odd company, if there be one, and the column be by division, will promptly bring the right of his company on the direction, and at company distance from the division next in front; the left guide of the leading subdivision will place himself on the direction of the right guides, and will be assured in his position by the lieutenant colonel; which being executed, the colonel will command:

**3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

409. At this, the right front rank man of each subdivision will face to the right, rest his breast lightly against the left arm of his guide, and the battalion will form itself to the right into line of battle, according to the principles prescribed; which being executed, the colonel will command:

**Guides-POSTS.**

410. If the column be with the left in front, it will form itself, by inversion, to the left into line, according to the same principles.

411. If the colonel should wish the battalion, when formed into line of battle, to be moved forward, the movement will be executed by the commands, and according to the principle's indicated in No. 403; always preceding the command, by companies right (or left) wheel, by the command, by inversion.

**Successive Formations.**

412. Under the denomination of *successive formations* are included all those formations where the several subdivisions of a column arrive one after another on the line of battle; such are formations on the right, or left, forward and faced to the rear into line of battle, as well as deployments of columns in mass.

413. The successive formations which may be ordered when the column is marching, and is to continue marching, will be executed by a combination of the two gaits, quick and double quick time.

**2d. Column at full distance, on the right (or on the left), into line of battle.**

414. A column by company, at full distance and right in front, having to form itself on the right into line of battle, the colonel will indicate to the lieutenant colonel a little in advance, the point of *appui*, or rest, for the right, as well as the point of direction to the left; the lieutenant colonel will hasten with two markers, and establish them in the following manner on the direction indicated.

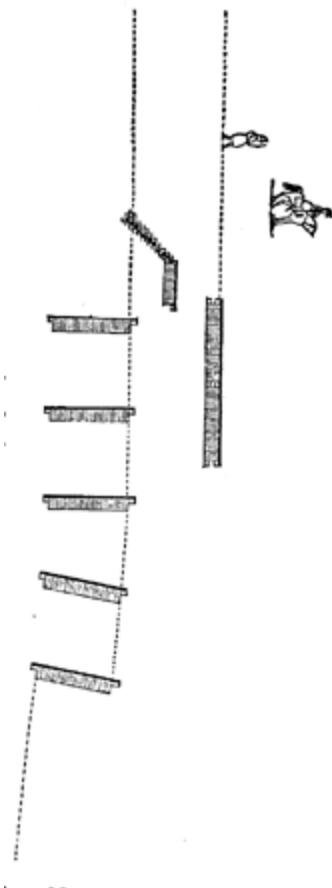
415. The first marker will be placed at the point of *appui* for the right front rank man of the leading company; the second will indicate the point where one of the three left files of the same company will rest when in line; they will be placed so as to present the right shoulder to the battalion when formed.

416. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

**1. On the right, into line. 2. Battalion, guide right.**

417. At the second command, the right will become the directing flank, and the touch of the elbow will be to that side; the right guide of the leading company will march straight forward until up with the turning point, and each following guide will march in the trace of the one immediately preceding.

418. The leading company being nearly up with the first marker, its captain will



On the right, into line



command **1. Right turn**, and when the company is precisely up with this marker, he will add: **2. MARCH**.

419. At the command march, the company will turn to the right; the right guide will so direct himself as to bring the man next to him opposite to the right marker, and when at three paces from him, the captain will command:

**1. First company; 2. HALT.**

420. At the second command, the company will halt; the files, not yet in line, will form promptly; the left guide will retire as a file closer; and the captain will then command:

**3. Right-DRESS.**

421. At this command, the company will align itself; the two men who find themselves opposite to the two markers, will each lightly rest his breast against the right arm of his marker; the captain, passing to the right of the front rank, will direct the alignment on these two men. These rules are general for all successive formations.

422. The second company will continue to march straight forward; when arrived opposite to the left flank of the preceding company, it will turn to the right, and be formed on the line of battle, as has just been prescribed; the right guide will direct himself so as to come upon that line by the side of the man on the left of the first company.

423. At the distance of three paces from the line of battle, the company will be halted by its captain, who will place himself briskly by the side of the man on the left of the preceding company, and align himself correctly on its front rank.

424. The left guide will, at the same time, place himself before one of the three left files of his company, and, facing to the right, he will place himself accurately on the direction of the two markers of the preceding company.

425. The captain will then command:

**Right-DRESS.**

426. At this command, the second company will dress forward on the line; the captain- direct its alignment on the front rank man who has rested his breast against the left guide of the company.

427. The following companies will thus come successively to form themselves on the line of battle, each conforming itself to what has just been prescribed for the one next to the right; and when they shall all be established, the colonel will command:

**Guides-POSTS.**

428. At this command, the guides will take their places in line of battle, and the markers placed before the right company will retire.

429. If the column be marching in quick time, and the colonel should wish to cause the movement to be executed in double quick time, he will add the command: **Double quick-MARCH**. At the command *march*, all the companies will take the double quick step, and the movement will be executed as prescribed, No. 417, and following.

430. The colonel will follow up the formation, passing along the front, and being always opposite to the company about to turn it is thus that he will be the better able to see and to correct the error that would result from a command given too soon or too late to the preceding company.

431. The lieutenant colonel will, with the greatest care, assure the direction of the guides; to this end, the instant that the markers are established for the leading company he will move a little beyond the point at which the left of the next company will rest, establish himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers, and assure the guide of the second company on this direction; this guide being assured the

lieutenant colonel will place himself farther to the rear, in order to assure, in like manner, the guide of the third company, and so on, successively, to the left of the battalion. In assuring the guides in their positions on the line of battle, he will take care to let them first place themselves, and confine himself to rectifying their positions if they do not cover accurately, and at the proper distance, the preceding guides or markers. This rule is general, for all successive formations.

432. A column, left in front, will form itself on the left into line of battle according to the same principles: the captains will go to the left of their respective companies to align them, and shift afterwards to their proper flanks, as prescribed No. 400.

### **Remarks on the formation on the right, or left, into line of battle.**

433. In order that this movement may be executed with regularity, it is necessary to establish the line of battle so that the guide of each company after turning, may have at least ten steps to take in order to come upon that line.

434. In the first exercises, the line of battle will be established on a direction parallel to that of the column: but, when the captains and guides shall comprehend the mechanism of the movement, the colonel will generally choose oblique directions, in order to habituate the battalion to form itself in any direction.

435. When the direction of the line of battle forms a sensible angle with that of the march of the column, the colonel, before beginning the movement, will give the head of the column a new direction parallel to that line: to this end, he will indicate to the guide of the leading company a point in advance, on which this guide will immediately direct himself, and the company will conform itself to the direction of its guide, at the command, or on a mere caution, of the captain, according as the change of direction may require; each following company will make the same movement, on the same ground, as it shall successively arrive. By this means the guides of all the companies in the column will have, after turning, nearly the same number of paces to take in order to come upon the line of battle.

436. Every captain will always observe, in placing himself on that line, not to give the command *dress*, until after the guide of his company shall have been assured on the direction by the lieutenant colonel. This rule is general for all successive formations.

437. Each captain will cause his company to *support arms*, the instant that the captain, who follows him, shall have commanded *front*. This rule is general for all successive formations.

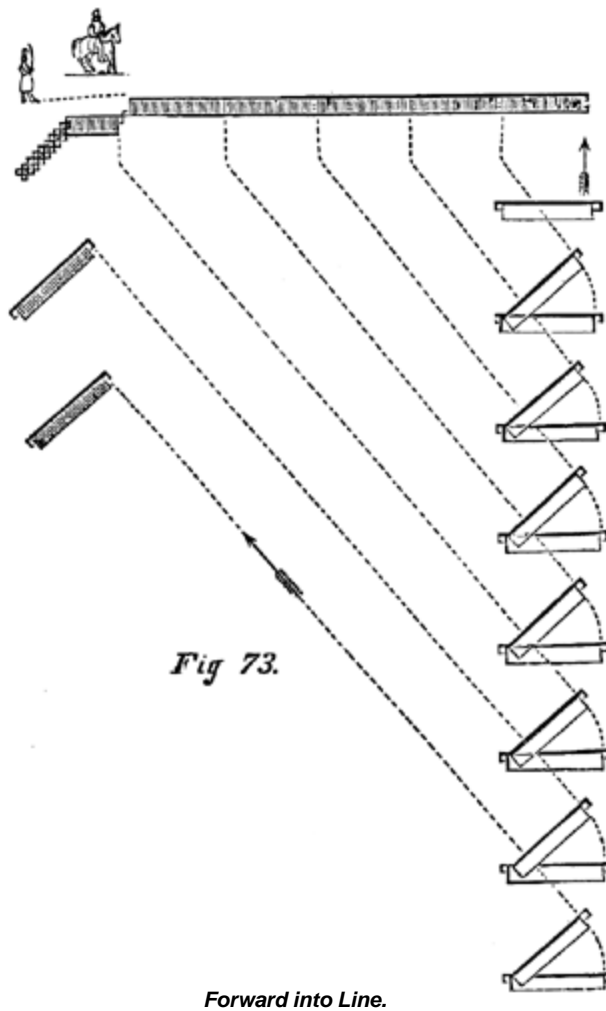
438. When, in the execution of this movement, the colonel shall wish to commence firing, he will give the order to that effect to the captain whose company is the first in line of battle; this captain will immediately place himself behind the centre of his company, and as soon as the next captain shall have commanded *front*, he will commence the fire by file, by the commands prescribed, school of the company.

At the command *fire by file*, the marker at the outer file of this first company will retire, and the other will place himself against the nearest man of the next company. The captain of the latter will commence firing as soon as the captain of the third company, in line, shall have commanded *front*; the marker before the nearest file of the second company, in line, will now retire, and the guide before the opposite flank will place himself before the nearest file of the third company, in line, and so on, in continuation, to the last company on the left or right of the battalion, according as the formation may have commenced with the right or left in front.

439. In all the successive formations, the same principles will be observed for the execution of the fire by file. This fire will always be executed by the command of each captain of company.

### **3d. Column at full distance forward into line of battle.**

440. A column being by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it forward into line, he will conform to what is prescribed Nos. 414 and 415, and then command:



**1. Forward into line. 2. By company, left half wheel. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

441. At the first command, the captain of the leading company will add - *guide right*, put the company in march, halt it three paces from the markers, and align it against the latter by the right.

442. At the command *march*, all the other companies will wheel to the left on fixed pivots; and, at the instant the colonel shall judge, according to the direction of the line of battle, that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command:

**4. Forward. 5. MARCH. 6. Guide right.**

443. At the fifth command, the companies, ceasing to wheel, will march straight forward; and at the sixth, the men will touch elbows towards the right. The right guide of the second company, who is nearest to the line of battle, will march straight forward; each succeeding right guide will follow the file immediately before him at the cessation of the wheel.

444. The second company having arrived opposite to the left file of the first, its captain will cause it to turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle; and when its right guide shall be at three paces from that line, the captain will command:

**1. Second company. 2. HALT.**

445. At the second command, the company, will halt; the files not yet in line with

the guide will come into it promptly, the left guide will place himself on the line of battle, so as to be opposite to one of the three files on the left of the company; and, as soon as he is assured on the direction by the lieutenant colonel, the captain, having placed himself accurately on the line of battle, will command: **3. Right-DRESS.**

446. At the instant that the guide of the second company begins to turn to the right, the guide of the third, ceasing to follow the file immediately before him, will march straight forward; and, when he shall arrive opposite to the left of the second, his captain will cause the company to turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle, halt it at three paces from that line, and align it by the right, as prescribed for the second company.

447. Each following company will execute what has just been prescribed for the third, as the preceding company shall turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle.

448. The formation ended, the colonel will command:

***Guides-POSTS.***

449. The colonel and lieutenant colonel will observe in this formation, what is prescribed for them on the right into line.

450. A column left in front, will form itself forward into line of battle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

451. When a column by company at full distance, right in front, and in march shall arrive behind the right of the line on which it is to form into battle, the colonel and lieutenant colonel will conform themselves to what is prescribed Nos. 414 and 415.

452. The head of the column having arrived at company distance from the two markers established on the line, the colonel will command:

***1. Forward into line. 2. By company, left half wheel. 3. MARCH (Or double quick-MARCH).***

453. At the first command, the captain of the first company will command, ***Guide- right***, and caution it to march directly to the front, the captains of the other companies will caution them to wheel to the left.

454. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the first company will continue to march to the front, taking the touch of elbows to the right. Its chief will halt it at three paces from the markers, and align it by the right. The other companies will wheel to the left on fixed pivots, and at the instant the colonel shall judge that they have wheeled sufficiently, he will command:

***4. Forward. 5. MARCH. 6. Guide right.***

455. At the fifth command, the companies will cease to wheel and move forward. At the sixth, they will take the touch of elbows to the right. The movement will be executed as previously explained.

456. If the colonel should wish to form the column forward into line, and to continue to march in this order, he will not cause markers to be established; the movement will be executed in double quick time, by the same commands and means, but with the following modifications.

457. At the first command, the captain of the first company will add ***quick time*** after the command *guide right*. At the second command, the first company will continue to march in quick time, and will take the touch of elbows to the right; its chief will immediately place himself on its right, and to assure the march, will take points of direction to the front. The captain of the second company will cause his company to take the same gait as on soon as it shall arrive a line with the first, and will also move to the right of his company; the captains of the third and fourth companies will execute successively what has just been prescribed for the second. The companies will preserve the touch of elbows to the right, until the command, *guide centre*.

458. When the color company shall have entered the line, the colonel will command, *guide centre*. At this command, the color-bearer and the right general guide will move rapidly six paces in advance of the line. The colonel will assure the direction of the color-bearer. The lieutenant colonel and the right companies will immediately conform themselves to the principles of the march in line of battle. The left companies and the left general guide, as they arrive on the line, will also conform to the same principles. If the column be marching in double quick time, when the last company shall have arrived on the line, the colonel will cause the double quick to be resumed.

459. It is not necessary that the movement be entirely completed, before halting the battalion. As soon as the part of the battalion already formed shall have arrived on the line of battle, the colonel will halt the battalion; the companies not in line will each complete the movement.

### **Remarks on the formation, forward, into line of battle.**

460. The precision of this movement depends on the direction the companies have at the moment the colonel commands, *Forward-MARCH*. The colonel will judge nicely the point of time for giving this command, observing that, if the direction of the line of battle form with that of the column a right, or nearly a right angle, the companies ought to wheel about the eighth of the circle, and that the more acute the angle formed by the two directions, so much the more the companies ought to wheel before marching straight forward.

461. It is important that each company in marching towards the line of battle should turn exactly opposite the point where its captain ought to place himself on that line; if a company turn too soon, it will find itself masked, in part, by that which preceded it on the line of battle, and be obliged to unmask itself by the oblique step; if it turns too late, it will leave an interval between itself and the preceding company to be regained in like manner. In either case, the next company will be led into error, and the fault propagated to the flank of the battalion.

462. The guide of each company ought so to regulate himself in turning, as to bring his company to the halting point parallelly with the line of battle.

463. If the angle formed by the line of battle and the primitive direction of the column be so acute, that the companies, on arriving opposite to their respective places on the line of battle, find the captains will themselves nearly parallel to it, the captains will not give the command, *right (or left) turn*, but each halt his company, place himself on the line, and command:

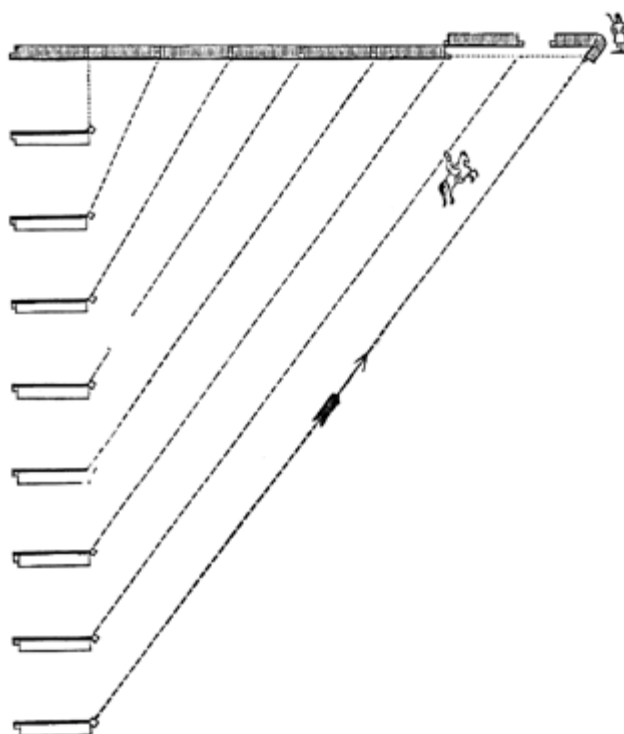
#### ***Right (or left)-DRESS.***

464. If, on the contrary, the angle formed by the line of battle and the primitive direction of the column be much greater than a right angle, the formation should be executed, not by the movement forward into line of battle, but by that of on the right (or left) into line of battle, and according to the principles prescribed for this formation.

465. If a company encounter an obstacle sufficient to prevent it from marching by the front, it will right (or left) face in marching, by the commands and means indicated in the school of the company, Nos. 314 and 315. The guide will continue to follow the same file behind which he was marching, and will maintain exactly the same distance from the company immediately preceding his own. The obstacle being passed, the company will be formed into line by the command of its captain.

### **4th. Column at full distance, faced to the rear, into line of battle.**

466. A column being by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it into line faced to the rear, he and the lieutenant colonel will conform themselves to what is prescribed Nos. 414 and 415, and the colonel will then command:



*Into line, faced to the rear.*

**1. Into line, faced to the rear. 2. Battalion, right -FACE. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

467. At the first command, the captain of the leading company will cause it to face to the right, and put it in march, causing it to wheel by file to the left, and direct its march towards the line of battle which it will pass in rear of the left marker; the first file having passed three paces beyond the line, the company will wheel again by file to the left, in order to place itself in rear of the two markers; being in this position, its captain will halt it, face it to the front, and align it by the right against the markers.

468. At the second command, all the other companies will face to the right, each captain placing himself by the side of his right guide.

469. At the command *march*, the companies will put themselves in movement; the left guide of the second, who is nearest to the line of battle, will hasten in advance to mark that line; he will place himself on it as prescribed above for successive formations, and thus indicate to his captain the point at which he ought to pass the line of battle, by three paces, in order to wheel by file to the left, and then to direct his company parallelly to that line.

470. As soon as the first file of this company shall have arrived near the left file of the preceding one already on the line of battle, its captain will command:

**1. Second company. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. Right-DRESS.**

471. The first command will be given when the company shall yet have four paces to take to reach the halting point.

472. At the second command, the company will halt.

473. At the third, the company will face to the front, and if there be openings between the files, the latter will promptly close to the right; the captain will immediately place himself by the side of the man on the left of the preceding company, and align himself on its front rank.

474. The fourth command will be executed as prescribed, No. 426.

475. The following companies will be conducted and established on the line of battle as just prescribed for the second, each regulating itself by the one that precedes it; the left guides will detach themselves in time to precede their respective companies

on the line by twelve or fifteen paces, and each place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three left files of his company, when in line. If the movement be executed in double quick time, the moment it is commenced, all the left guides will detach themselves at the same time from the column, and will move at a run, to establish themselves on the line of battle.

476. The formation ended, the colonel will command:

***Guides-POSTS.***

477. The colonel and lieutenant colonel, in this formation, will each observe what is prescribed for him in that of on the right, into line of battle.

478. A column, left in front, will form itself faced to the rear into line of battle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

479. If the column be in march, and should arrive in front of the right of the line on which it is to form into battle, the colonel and lieutenant colonel will conform to what is prescribed, Nos. 414 and 415.

480. When the head of the column shall be nearly at company distance from the two markers established on the line, the colonel will command:

***1. Into line, faced to the rear. 2. Battalion, by the right flank. 3. MARCH (or double quick--MARCH).***

481. At the first command, the captains will caution their companies to face by the right flank.

482. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains of companies, all the companies will face to the right; the first company will then wheel by file to the left, and be directed by its captain a little to the rear of the left marker; then pass three paces beyond the line, and wheel again by file to the left; having arrived on the line, the captain will halt the company, and align it by the right. The remaining part of the movement will be executed as heretofore explained.

483. The foregoing principles are applicable to a column, left in front.

484. As the companies approach the line of battle, it is necessary that their captains should so direct the march as to cross that line a little in rear of their respective guides, who are faced to the basis of the formation; hence each guide ought to detach himself in time to find himself correctly established on the direction before his company shall come up with him.

***ARTICLE THIRD.***

***Formation in line of battle by two movements.***

485. If a column by company, right in front, and at a halt, find itself in part on the line of battle, and the colonel should think proper to form line of battle before all the companies enter the new direction, the formation will be executed in the following manner:

486. It will be supposed that the column has arrived behind the line of battle, and that five companies have entered the new direction. The colonel having assured the guides of the first five companies on the direction, will command:

***1. Left into line, wheel. 2. Three rear companies, forward into line.***

487. At the second command, the chief of each of the rear companies will command: ***1. By company, left half wheel;*** and the colonel will add:

***3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

488. At this command, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form themselves to the left, into line of battle, and the three last forward, into line of battle, by the means prescribed for these respective formations; each captain of the three rear companies will, when his company shall have sufficiently wheeled, command:

*1. Forward. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide right.*

489. If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

*1. To the left and forward into line. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

490. At the first command, the captains of those companies which have not entered on the new direction, will command: *By company, left half wheel.* At the command *march*, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form left into line, and the last three forward into line, as prescribed for these respective formations. Those captains who form heir companies forward into line will conform to what is prescribed, No. 488.

491. If the colonel should wish, in forming the battalion into line, to march it immediately forward, he will command:

*1. By company to the left, and forward into line. 2. MARCH.*

492. At the first command, each captain, whose company is not yet in the new direction, will command: *1. By company, left half wheel; 2. Double quick.* At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the companies not in the new direction will execute what is prescribed above for forming forward into line while marching; each of the other companies will wheel to the left on a fixed pivot, and when the right of these companies shall arrive on the line, the colonel will command:

*3. Forward. 4. MARCH. 5. Guide centre.*

493. The fifth command will be given when the color-bearer arrives on the line, if not already there.

494. If the battalion be marching in double quick time, the colonel will cause quick time to be taken before commencing the movement.

495. If, instead of arriving behind, the column should arrive before the line of battle, the colonel will command:

*1. Left into line, wheel. 2. Three rear companies into line, faced to the rear.*

496. At the second command, the captain of each of the three rear companies will command: *1. Such company; 2. Right-FACE.* The colonel will then add:

*3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

497. At this command, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form themselves to the left, into line of battle, and the three last faced to the rear, into line of battle, by the means prescribed for these respective formations.

498. If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

*1. To the left and into line, faced to the rear. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

499. The movement will be executed as prescribed Nos. 391, 480, and following.

500. These several movements in a column, left in front, will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.



**ARTICLE FOURTH.*****Different modes of passing from column at half distance, into line of battle.***

- |   |   |                             |
|---|---|-----------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>To the left (or right)</i></li> <li>2. <i>On the right (or left)</i></li> <li>3. <i>Forward, by deployment,</i></li> <li>4. <i>Faced to the rear,</i></li> </ol> | } | <i>into line of battle.</i> |
|---|---|-----------------------------|

**1st. Column at half distance, to the left (or right) into line of battle.**

501. A column at half distance having to form itself to the left (or right) into line of battle, the colonel will cause it to take distances by one of the means prescribed, Article IX., Part third, of this school; which being executed, he will form the column into line of battle, as has been indicated, No. 390, and following.

502. If a column by company, at half distance, be in march, and it be necessary to form rapidly into line of battle, the colonel will command:

- 1. By the rear of column left (or right) into line, wheel. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

503. At the first command, the right general guide will move rapidly to the front, and place himself a little beyond the point where the head of the column will rest, and on the prolongation of the guides. The captain of the eighth company will command: *Left into line, wheel*; the other captains will caution their companies to continue to march to the front.

504. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captain of the eighth company, the guide of this company will halt short, and the company will wheel to the left, conforming to the principles prescribed for wheeling from a halt; when its right shall arrive near the line, the captain will halt the company, and align it by the left. The other captains will place themselves briskly on the flank of the column; when the captain of the seventh sees there is sufficient distance between his company and the eighth to form the latter into line, he will command: ***Left into line, wheel-MARCH***; the left guide will halt short, and facing to the rear, will place himself on the line; the company will wheel to the left, the man on the left of the front rank will face to the left, and place his breast against the left arm of the guide; the captain will halt the company when its right shall arrive near the line, and will align it by the left. The other companies will conform successively to what has just seen prescribed for the seventh.

505. Each captain will direct the alignment of his company on the left man in the front rank of the company next on his right.

506. The lieutenant colonel will be watchful that the leading guide marches accurately on the prolongation of the line of battle, and directs him-self on the right general guide. The major, placed in rear of the left guide of the eighth company, will, as soon as the guide of the seventh company is established on the direction, hasten in rear of the guides of the other companies, so as to assure each of them in succession on the line.

**2d. Column at half distance, on the right (or left) into line of battle.**

607. A column at half distance will form itself on the right (or left) into line of battle, as prescribed for a column at full distance.

**3d. Column at half distance, forward, into line of battle.**

508. If it be wished to form a column at half distance, forward into line of battle, the colonel will first cause it to close in mass and then deploy it on the leading

company.

**4th. Column at half distance, faced to the rear, into line of battle.**

509. A column at half distance will be formed into line of battle, faced to the rear, as prescribed for a column at full distance.

**ARTICLE FIFTH.**

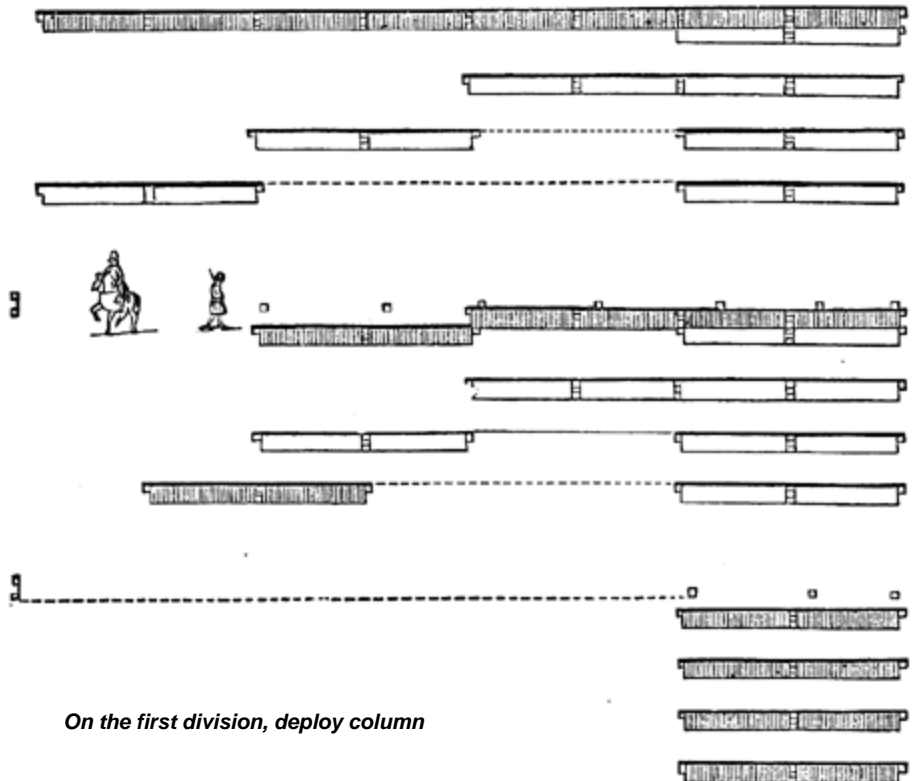
***Deployment of columns closed in mass.***

510. A column in mass will be formed into line of battle:

1. Faced to the front, by the deployment.
2. Faced to the rear, by the countermarch and the deployment.
3. Faced to the right and faced to the left, by a change of direction by the flank, and the deployment.

511. When a column in mass, by division, arrives behind the line on which it is intended to deploy it, the colonel will indicate, in advance, to the lieutenant colonel, the direction of the line of battle, as well as the point on which he may wish to direct the column. The lieutenant colonel will immediately detach himself with two markers, and establish them on that line, the first at the point indicated, the second a little less than the front of a division from the first.

512. Deployments will always be made upon lines parallel, and lines perpendicular to the line of battle; consequently, if the head of the column be near the line of battle, the colonel will commence by establishing the direction of the column perpendicularly to that line, if it be not already so, by one of the means indicated, No. 244 and following, or No. 307 and following. If the column be in march, he will so direct it that it may arrive exactly behind the markers, perpendicularly to the line of battle, and halt it at three paces from that line.



513. The column, right in front, being halted, it is supposed that the colonel wishes to deploy it on the first division; he will order the left general guide to go to a point on the line of battle a little beyond that at which the left of the battalion will rest when deployed, and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the markers established before the first division.

514. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

***1. On the first division, deploy column. 2. Battalion, left-FACE.***

515. At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the three other divisions will remind them that they will have to face to the left.

516. At the second command, the three last divisions will face to the left; the chief of each division will place himself by the side of its left guide, and the junior captain by the side of the covering sergeant of the left company who will have stepped into the front rank.

517. At the same command, the lieutenant colonel will place a third marker on the alignment of the two first, opposite to one of the three left files of the right company, first division, and then place himself on the line of battle a few paces

518. The colonel will then command:

***3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

519. At this command, the chief of the first division will go to its right, and command:

***Right-DRESS.***

520. At this, the division will dress up against the markers; the chief of the division, and its junior captain, will each align the company on his left, and then command:

***FRONT.***

521. The three divisions, faced to the left, will put themselves in march; the left guide of the second will direct himself parallelly to the line of battle; the left guides of the third and fourth divisions will march abreast with the guide of the second; the guides of the third and fourth, each preserving the prescribed distance between himself and the guide of the division which preceded his own in the column.

522. The chief of the second division will not follow its movement; he will see it file by him, and when its right guide shall be abreast with him, he will command:

***1. Second division. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.***

623. The first command will be given when the division shall yet have seven or eight paces to march; the second, when the right guide shall be abreast with the chief of the division, and the third immediately after the second.

524. At the second command, the division will halt; at the third, it will face to the front, and if there be openings between the files, the chief of the division will cause them to be promptly closed to the right; the left guides of both companies will step upon the line of battle, face to the right, and place themselves on the direction of the markers established before the first division, each guide opposite to one of the three left files of his company.

525. The division having faced to the front, its chief will place himself accurately on the line of battle, on the left of the first division; and when he shall see the guides assured on the direction, he will command, ***Right-DRESS.*** At this, the division will be aligned by the right in the manner indicated for the first.

526. The third and fourth divisions will continue to march; at the command *halt*, given to the second, the chief of the third will halt in his own person, place himself exactly opposite to the guide of the second, after this division shall have faced to the front and closed its files; he will see his division file past, and when his right guide shall be abreast with him, he will command:

***1. Third division. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.***

527. As soon as the division faces to the front, its chief will place himself two paces before its centre, and command:

***1. Third division, forward. 2. Guide right. MARCH.***

528. At the third command, the division will march towards the line of battle; the right guide will so direct himself as to arrive by the side of the man on the left of the second division, and when the division is at three paces from the line of battle, its chief will halt it, and align it by the right.

529. The chief of the fourth division will conform himself (and the chief of the fifth, if there be a fifth) to what has just been prescribed for the third.

530. The deployment ended, the colonel will command:

***Guides-POSTS.***

531. At this command, the guides will resume their places in line of battle, and the markers will retire.

532. If the column be in march, and the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the first division without halting the column, he will make the dispositions indicated Nos. 512 and 513, and when the first division shall have arrived at three paces from the line, he will command:

***1. On the first division, deploy column. 2. Battalion by the left flank. 3. MARCH (or double quick- MARCH).***

533. At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to halt, and will command, ***First division***; the other chiefs will caution their divisions to face by the left flank.

534. At the command march, briskly repeated by the chiefs of the rear divisions, the chief of the first division will command, ***HALT***, and will align his division by the right against the markers; the other divisions will face to the left, their chiefs hastening to the left of their divisions. The second division will conform its movements to what is prescribed Nos. 522 and following. The third and fourth divisions will execute what is prescribed Nos. 526 and following; but the chief of each division will halt in his own person at the command march given by the chief of the division which precedes him, and when the right of his division arrives abreast of him, he will command:

***Such division, by the right flank-MARCH.***

535. The lieutenant colonel will assure the position of the guides, conforming to what is prescribed No. 431. The major will follow the movement abreast with the fourth division.

536. If the colonel shall wish to deploy the column without halting it, and to continue the march, the markers will not be posted; the movement will be executed by the same commands and the same means as the foregoing, but with the following modifications:

537. At the first command, the chief of the first division will command, ***1. Guide right. 2. Quick time.*** At the command, ***Double quick-MARCH***, given by the colonel,

the first division will march in quick time and will take the touch of elbows to the right; the captains will place themselves on the right of their respective companies; the captain on the right of the battalion will take points on the ground to assure the direction of the march. The chief of the second division will allow his division to file past him, and when he sees its right abreast of him, he will command, *1. Second division by the right flank. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide right*, and when this division shall arrive on the alignment of the first, he will cause it to march in quick time. The third and fourth divisions will deploy according to the same principles as the second.

538. The colonel, lieutenant colonel, major, and color-bearer will conform themselves to what is prescribed No. 458.

539. The colonel will see, pending the movement, that the principles just prescribed are duly observed, and particularly that the divisions, in deploying, be not halted too soon nor too late. He will correct promptly and quickly the faults that may be committed, and prevent their propagation. This rule is general, for all deployments.

540. The column being at a halt, if, instead of deploying, it on the first, the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the rearmost division, he will cause the dispositions to be made indicated No. 511 and following; but it will be the right general guide whom he will send to place himself beyond the point at which the right of the battalion will rest when deployed.

541. The colonel will then command:

*1. On the fourth (or such) division, deploy column. 2. Battalion, right-FACE.*

542. At the first command, the chief of the fourth division will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the other divisions will caution them that they will have to face to the right.

543. At the second command, the first three divisions will face to the right; and the chief of each will place himself by the side of its right guide.

544. At the same command, the lieutenant colonel will place a third marker between the first two, so that this marker may be opposite to one of the three right files of the left company of the division; the lieutenant colonel will place himself on the line of battle a few paces beyond the point at which the right of the third division will rest when deployed.

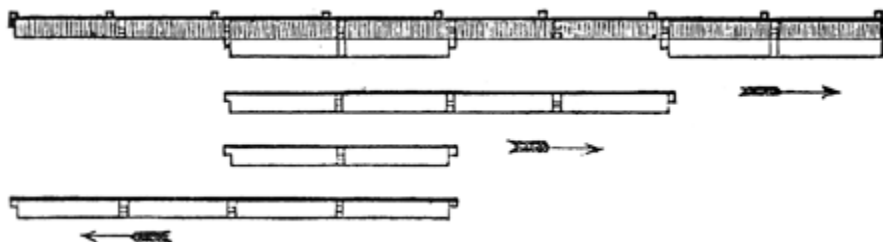
545. The colonel will then command:

*3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

546. At this command, the three right divisions will put themselves in march, the guide of the first so directing himself as to pass three paces within the line marked by the right general guide. The chief of the third division will not follow its movement; he will see it file past, halt it when its left guide shall be abreast with him, and cause it to face to the front; and, if there be openings between the files, he will cause them to be promptly closed to the left.

547. The chief of the fourth division, when he sees it nearly unmasked by the three others, will command:

*1. Fourth division, Forward. 2. Guide left. 3. MARCH.*



*On the fourth (or such) division, deploy column*

548. At the command *march*, which will be given the instant the fourth is unmasked, this division will approach the line of battle, and when at three paces from the markers on that line, its chief will halt it, and command:

***Left-DRESS.***

549. At this command, the division will dress forward against the markers; the chief of the division and the junior captain will each align the company on his right, and then command:

***FRONT.***

550. The instant that the third division is unmasked, its chief will cause it to approach the line of battle, and halt it in the manner just prescribed for the fourth.

551. The moment the division halts, its right guide and the covering sergeant of its left company will step on the line of battle, placing themselves on the prolongation of the markers established in front of the fourth division; as soon as they shall be assured in their positions, the division will be aligned as has just been prescribed for the fourth.

552. The second and first divisions which will have continued to march, will, in succession, be halted and aligned by the left, in the same manner as the third; the chiefs, of these divisions will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 526. The second being near the line of battle, the command will not be given for it to move on this line but it will be dressed up to it.

553. The deployment ended, the colonel will command:

***Guides-POSTS.***

554. At this command, the chiefs of division and the guides will resume their places in line of battle, and the markers will retire.

555. The lieutenant colonel will assure the positions of the guides by the means indicated, No. 431, and the major will follow the movement abreast with the fourth division.

556. If the column be in march, and the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the fourth division, he will make the dispositions indicated, No. 511 and following; and when the head of the column shall arrive within three paces of the line, he will command:

***1. On the fourth division, deploy column. 2. Battalion, by the right flank. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

557. At the first command, the chief of the fourth division will caution it to halt, and will command, *Fourth division*: the chiefs of the other divisions will caution their divisions to face to the right.

558. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of the first three divisions, the chief of the fourth will command: ***HALT.*** The first three divisions will face to the right, and be directed parallelly to the line of battle. The chief of each of these divisions will place himself by the side of its right guide. The chief of the third division will see his division file past him, and when his left guide is abreast of him, he will halt it, and face it to the front. The chief of the fourth division, when he shall see it nearly unmasked, will command: ***1. Fourth division, forward; 2. Guide left; 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*** This division will move towards the line of battle, and when at three paces from this line, it will be halted by its chief, and aligned by the left.

559. The chief of the third division will move his division forward, conforming to what has just been prescribed for the fourth.

560. The chiefs of the second and first divisions, after halting their divisions, will

conform to what is prescribed, No. 552.

561. If the colonel should wish to deploy on the fourth division without halting the column, and to continue to march forward, he will not have markers posted, and the movement will be executed by the same commands and the same means, with the following modifications: the fourth division, when unmasked, will be moved forward in quick time, and will continue to march, instead of being halted, and will take the touch of elbows to the left. The third division, on being unmasked, will be moved to the front in double quick time, but when it arrives on the alignment of the fourth it will take the quick step, and dress to the left until the command *Guide centre*, is given by the colonel. The chiefs of the second and first divisions will conform to what has been prescribed for the third. When the first division shall arrive on the line, the colonel may cause the battalion to take the double quick step.

562. The colonel and lieutenant colonel will conform to what has been prescribed, Nos. 458 and 459.

563. To deploy the column on an interior division, the colonel will cause the line to be traced by the means above indicated, and the general guides will move briskly on the line, as prescribed, Nos. 513 and 540. This being executed, the colonel will command:

***1. On such division, deploy column. 2. Battalion outwards-FACE. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

564. Whether the column be with the right or left in front, the divisions which, in the order in battle, belong to the right of the directing one, will face to the right; the others, except the directing division, will face to the left; the divisions in right of the latter will deploy by the means indicated, No. 542, and following; those in its rear will deploy as is prescribed, No. 513, and following.

565. The directing division, the instant it finds itself unmasked, will approach the line of battle, taking the guide left or right, according as the right or left of the column may be in front. The chief of this division will align it by the directing flank, and then stop back into the rear, in order momentarily to give place to the chief of the next for aligning the next division.

566. The lieutenant colonel will assure the positions of the guides of divisions, which, in the line of battle, take the right of the directing division, and the major will assure the positions of the other guides.

567. If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

***1. On such division, deploy column. 2. Battalion, by the right and left flanks. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

568. The divisions which are in front of the directing one will deploy by the means indicated, Nos. 557, and following; those in rear, as prescribed, No. 533, and following.

569. The directing division, when unmasked, will conform to what is prescribed for the fourth division, No. 558.

570. The colonel, lieutenant colonel and major will conform to what has been prescribed, Nos. 458 and 459.

571. In a column, left in front, deployments will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

### **Remarks on the deployment of columns, closed in mass.**

572. All the divisions ought to deploy rectangularly, to march off abreast, and to preserve their distances towards the line of battle.

573. Each division, the instant that it is unmasked, ought to be marched towards the line of battle, and to be aligned upon it by the flank next to the directing division; the latter, whether the right or left be in front, will always be aligned by the flank next to the point of *appui*, when the deployment is made on the first or last division; but if

the column be deployed on an interior division, this division will be aligned by the flank which was that of direction.

574. The chiefs of division will see that, in deploying, the principles prescribed for marching by the flank are well observed, and if openings between the files occur, which ought not to happen except on broken or difficult grounds, the openings ought to be promptly closed towards the directing flank as soon as the divisions face to the front.

575. If a chief of division give the command *halt*, or the command, by the right or left flank, too soon or too late, his division will be obliged to oblique to the right or left in approaching the line of battle, and his fault may lead the following subdivision into error.

576. In the divisions which deploy by the left flank, it is always the left guide of each company who ought to place himself on the line of battle, to mark the direction; in divisions which deploy by the right flank, it is the right guide.

577. A column by company, closed in mass, may be formed to the left or to the right into line, in the same manner as a column at half distance, and by the means indicated, No. 502, and following.

578. A column by company, closed in mass, may be formed on the right or on the left into line of battle, as a column at half distance; but in order to execute this movement, without arresting the march of the column, it is necessary that the guides avoid, with the greatest care, shortening the step in turning, and that the men near them, respectively, conform themselves rapidly to the movements of their guides.

### **Remarks on inversions.**

579. Inversions giving frequently the means of forming line of battle, in the promptest manner, are of great utility in the movements of an army.

580. The application that may be made of inversions in the formations to the right and to the left in line of battle, has been indicated, No. 407, and following. They may also be advantageously employed in the successive formations, except in that of faced to the rear, into line of battle.

581. Formations, by inversion, will be executed according to the same principles as formations in the direct order; but the colonel's, first command will always begin by inversion.

582. The battalion being in line of battle by inversion, when the colonel shall wish, by forming it into column, to bring it back to the direct order, he will cause it either to break or to ploy by company, or by division, accordingly as the column may have been by company or by division before it had been formed into line of battle by inversion.

583. When a battalion in line of battle, formed by inversion, has to be ployed into column, the movement will be executed according to the same principles as if the line were in the direct order, but observing what follows.

584. If it be intended that the column shall be by division, with the first in front, or by company, with the first company in front, the colonel will announce in the second command - *left in front*, because the battalion being in line of battle by inversion, that subdivision is on the left.

585. Each chief whose subdivision takes position in the column in front of the directing one, will conduct his subdivision till it halts; and each chief whose subdivision takes position in rear of the directing one, will halt in his own person when up with the preceding right guide, and see his subdivision file past; and each chief will align his subdivision by the right. When the column is to be put in march, the second command will be *guide left*, because the proper right is in front.

586. For the same reason, if it be intended that the last subdivision shall be in front, right in front, will be announced in the second command; the subdivisions will be aligned by the left, and to put the column in march, the second command will be, *guide right*, because the proper left is in front.



**PART FIFTH****ARTICLE FIRST.*****To advance in line of battle.***

587. The battalion being correctly aligned, and supposed to be the directing one, when the colonel shall wish to march in line of battle, he will give the lieutenant colonel an intimation of his purpose, place himself about forty paces in rear of the color-file, and face to the front.

588. The lieutenant colonel will place himself a like distance in front of the same file, and face to the colonel, who will establish him as correctly as possible, by signal of the sword, perpendicularly to the line of battle opposite to the color-bearer. The colonel will next, above the heads of the lieutenant and color-bearer, take a point of direction in the field beyond, if a distinct one present itself, exactly in the prolongation of those first two points.

589. The colonel will then move twenty paces farther to the rear, and establish two markers on the prolongation of the straight line passing through the color-bearer and the lieutenant colonel; these markers will face to the rear, the first placed about twenty-five paces behind the rear rank of the battalion, and the second at the same distance from the first.

590. The color-bearer will be instructed to take, the moment the lieutenant colonel shall be established on the perpendicular, two points on the ground in the straight line which, drawn from himself, would pass between the heels of that officer; the first of these points will be taken at fifteen or twenty paces from the color-bearer.

591. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

***1. Battalion, forward.***

592. At this, the front rank of the color-guard will advance six paces to the front; the corporals in the rear rank; will place themselves in the front rank, and these will be replaced by those in the rank of file closers; at the same time the two general guides will move in advance, abreast with the color-bearer, the one on the right, opposite to the captain of the right company, the other opposite to the sergeant who closes the left of the battalion.

593. The captains of the left wing will shift, passing before the front rank, to the left of their respective companies; the sergeant on the left of the battalion will step back into the rear rank. The covering sergeant of the company next on the left of the color-company, will step into the front rank.

594. The lieutenant colonel having assured the color-bearer on the line between himself and the corporal of the color-file, now in the front rank, will go to the position which will be hereinafter indicated, No. 602.

595. The major will place himself six or eight paces on either flank of the color-rank.

596. The colonel will then command:

***2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

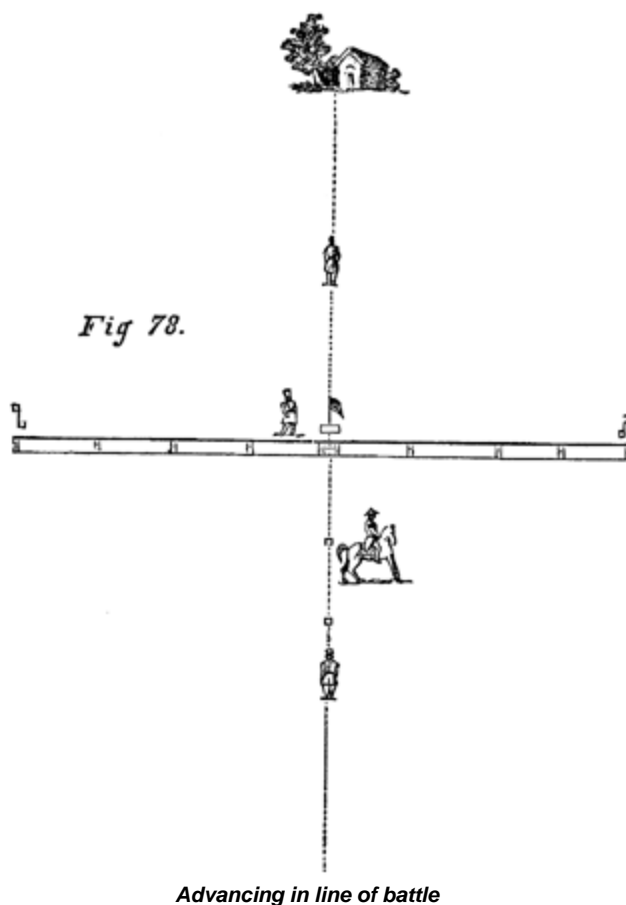
597. At this command, the battalion will step off with life; the color-bearer, charged with the step and direction, will scrupulously observe the length and cadence of the pace, marching on the prolongation of the two points previously taken, and successively taking others in advance by the means indicated in the school of the company; the corporal on his right, and the one on his left, will march in the same step, taking care not to turn the head or shoulders, the color-bearer supporting the color-lance against the hip.

598. The two general guides will march in the same step with the color-rank, each

*In a battalion line of battle, captains move to the outside flank of their companies - right wing captains take their usual post, but the left wing captains move to the left of their companies, in front of the 1st Sergeant of the company to their left (except the leftmost captain who posts in front of his 2nd sergeant at the left end of the battalion).*

*The reason is so that the captains can ensure that their companies are dressing properly... that they are not speeding up or slowing down relative to the color (actually the 3 Color Corporals now in the front rank). The captain looks inward.*

*The BASIS of the battalion - the imaginary line that the battalion is supposed to guide on - is really not the Color Rank (now 6 paces in front). The "BACKBONE," if you will, of the battalion line is the center two companies... and the line of reference is marked by the 3 Color Corporals (now in the front rank of the battalion) and the Captain on either side. Thus, the captain of the company to the left MUST be at the left of his company.*



maintaining himself abreast, or nearly so, with that rank, and neither occupying himself with the movement of the other.

599. The three corporals of the color-guard, now in the front rank of the battalion, will march well aligned, elbow to elbow, heads direct to the front, and without deranging the line of their shoulders; the centre one will follow exactly in the trace of the color-bearer, and maintaining the same step, without lengthening or shortening it, except on an intimation from the colonel or lieutenant colonel, although he should find himself more or less than six paces from the color-rank.

600. The covering sergeant in the front rank between the color-company and the next on the left, will march elbow to elbow, and on the same line, with the three corporals in the centre, his head well to the front.

601. The captains of the color-company, and the company next to the left, will constitute, with the three corporals in the centre of the front rank, the basis of alignment for both wings of the battalion; they will march in the same step with the color-bearer, and exert themselves to maintain their shoulders exactly in the square with the direction. To this end, they will keep their heads direct to the front, only occasionally casting an eye on the three centre corporals, with the slightest possible turn of the neck, and if they perceive themselves in advance, or in rear of these corporals, the captain, or two captains, will almost insensibly shorten or lengthen the step, so as, at the end of several paces, to regain the true alignment, without giving sudden checks or impulsions to the wings beyond them respectively.

602. The lieutenant colonel, placed twelve or fifteen paces on the right of the captain of the color-company, will maintain this captain and the next one beyond, abreast with the three centre corporals; to this end, he will caution either to lengthen or to shorten the step as may be necessary, which the captain, or two captains, will execute as has just been explained.

603. All the other captains will maintain themselves on the prolongation of this basis; and, to this end, they will cast their eyes towards the centre, taking care to turn

the neck but slightly, and not to derange the direction of their shoulders.

604. The captains will observe the march of their companies, and prevent the men from getting in advance of the line of captains; they will not lengthen or shorten step except when evidently necessary; because, to correct, with too scrupulous attention, small faults, is apt to cause the production of greater loss of calmness, silence equality of step, each of which it is so important to maintain.

605. The men will constantly keep their heads well directed to the front, feel lightly the elbow towards the centre, resist pressure coming from the flank, give the greatest attention to the squareness of shoulders, and hold themselves always very slightly behind the line of the captains, in order never to shut out from the view of the latter the basis of alignment; they will, from time to time, cast an eye on the color-rank, or on the general guide of the wing, in order to march constantly in the same step with those advanced persons.

606. Pending the march, the line determined by the two markers (h, and d) will be prolonged by placing, in proportion as the battalion advances, a third marker (i) in the rear of the first (h), then the marker (d) will quit his place and go a like distance in rear of (i); the marker (h) in his turn, do the like in respect to (d), and so on, in succession, as long as the battalion continues to advance; each marker, on shifting position, taking care to face to the rear, and to cover accurately the two markers already established on the direction. A staff officer, or the quartermaster sergeant, designated for the purpose, and who will hold himself constantly fifteen or twenty paces facing the marker farthest from the battalion, will caution each marker when to shift place, and assure him on the direction behind the other two.

607. The colonel will habitually hold himself about thirty paces in rear of the centre of his battalion, taking care not to put himself on the line of markers; if, for example, by the slanting of the battalion, or the indications which will be given, Nos. 617 and following, he find that the march of the color-bearer is not perpendicular, he will promptly command:

*Point of direction to the right (or left).*

608. At this command, the major will hasten thirty or forty paces, in advance of the color-rank, halt, face to the colonel, and place himself on the direction which the latter will indicate by signal of the word; the corporal in the centre of the battalion will then direct himself upon the major, on a caution from the colonel, advancing, to that end, the opposite shoulder; the corporals on his right and left will conform themselves to his direction.

609. The color-bearer will also direct himself upon the major, advancing the opposite shoulder, the major causing him, at the same time, to incline to the right or left, until he shall exactly cover the corporal of his file; the color-bearer will then take points on the ground in this new direction.

610. The two general guides will conform themselves to the new direction of the color-rank.

611. The officer charged with observing the successive replacing of the markers in the rear of the centre, will establish them promptly on the new direction, taking for basis the color-bearer and the corporal of his file in the centre of the battalion; the colonel will verify the new direction of the markers.

612. The lieutenant colonel, from the position given, No. 602, will see that the two centre companies, and successively all the others, conform themselves to the new direction of the centre, but without precipitancy or disorder; he will then endeavor to maintain that basis of alignment for the battalion, perpendicularly to the direction pursued by the color-bearer.

613. He will often observe the march of the two wings; and, if he discover that the captains neglect to conform themselves to the basis of alignment, he will recall their attention by the command captain of (such) company, or captains of (such) companies, on the line - without, however, endeavoring too scrupulously to correct small faults.

614. The major on the flank of the color-rank will, during the march, place himself,

from time to time, twenty paces in front of that rank, face to the rear, and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the markers established behind the centre, in order to verify the exact march of the color-bearer on that line; he will rectify, if necessary, the direction of the color-bearer, who will immediately take two new points on the ground between himself and the major.

615. All the principles applicable to the advance in line, are the same for a subordinate as for the directing battalion; but when the battalion under instruction is supposed to be subordinate, no markers will be placed behind its centre.

### **Remarks on the advance in line of battle.**

616. If, in the exercises of detail, or courses of elementary instruction, the officers, sergeants, corporals, and men, have not been well confirmed in the principles of the position under arms, as well as in the length and cadence of the step, the march of the battalion in line will be floating, unsteady, and disunited.

617. If the color-bearer, instead of marching perpendicularly forward, pursue an oblique direction, the battalion will slant; crowdings in one wing and openings in the other, will follow, and these defects in the march, becoming more and more embarrassing in proportion to the deviation from the perpendicular, will commence near the centre.

618. It is then of the greatest importance that the color-bearer should direct himself perpendicularly forward, and that the basis of alignment should always be perpendicular to the line pursued by him.

619. If openings be formed, if the files crowd each other, if, in short, disorder ensue, the remedy ought to be applied as promptly as possible, but calmly, with few words, and as little noise as practicable.

620. The object of the general guides, in the march in line of battle is, to indicate to the companies near the flanks the step of the centre of the battalion, and to afford more facility in establishing the wings on the direction of the centre if they should be too much in the rear; hence the necessity that these guides should maintain the same step, and march abreast, or very nearly so, with the color-rank, which it will be easy for them to do by casting from time to time an eye on that rank.

621. If the battalion happen to lose the step, the colonel will recall its attention by the command, *to the-STEP*; captains and their companies will immediately cast an eye on the color-rank, or one of the general guides, and promptly conform themselves to the step.

622. Finally, it is of the utmost importance to the attainment of regularity in the march in line of battle, to habituate the battalion to execute with as much order as promptness the movements prescribed No. 607 and following, for rectifying the direction; it is not less essential that commanders of battalions should exercise themselves, with the greatest care, in forming their own *coup d'oeil*, in order to be able to judge with precision the direction to be given to their battalions.

## **ARTICLE SECOND.**

### ***Oblique march in line of battle.***

623. The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to oblique, he will command:

***1. Right (or left) oblique. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

624. At the first command, the major will place himself in front of, and faced to the color-bearer.

625. At the command *march*, the whole battalion will take the oblique step. The

companies and captains will strictly observe the principles established in the school of the company.

626. The major in front of the color-bearer ought to maintain the latter in a line with the centre corporal, so that the color-bearer may oblique neither more nor less than that corporal. He will carefully observe also that they follow parallel directions and preserve the same length of step.

627. The lieutenant colonel will take care that the captains and the three corporals in the centre keep exactly on a line and follow parallel directions.

628. The colonel will see that the battalion preserves its parallelism; he will exert himself to prevent the files from opening or crowding. If he perceive the latter fault, he will cause the files on the flank, to which the battalion obliques, to open out.

629. The colonel, wishing the direct march to be resumed, will command:

***1. Forward. 2. MARCH.***

630. At the command *march*, the battalion will resume the direct march. The major will place himself thirty paces in front of the color-bearer, and face to the colonel, who will establish him, by a signal of the sword, on the direction which the color-bearer ought to pursue. The latter will immediately take two points on the ground between himself and the major.

631. In resuming the direct march, care will be taken that the men do not close the intervals which may exist between the files at once; it should be done almost insensibly.

**Remarks on the oblique march.**

632. The object of the oblique step is to gain ground to the right or left, preserving all the while the primitive direction of the line of battle; as thus, for example: the battalion, departing from the line (sz), arrives on the line (xx) parallel to (sz).

633. It is then essential that the corporals in the centre of the battalion, and the captains of companies, should follow parallel directions, and maintain themselves at the same height; without which they will give a false direction to the battalion.

634. The colonel and lieutenant colonel will exert themselves to prevent the files from crowding; for, without such precaution, the oblique march cannot be executed with facility.

***ARTICLE THIRD.***

***To halt the battalion, marching in line of battle, and to align it.***

635. The battalion, marching in the line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command:

***1. Battalion. 2. HALT.***

636. At the second command, the battalion will halt; the color-rank and the general guides will remain in front; but if the colonel should not wish immediately to resume the advance in line, nor to give a general alignment, he will command:

***Color and general guides-POSTS.***

637. At this command, the color-rank and general guides will retake their places in line of battle, the captains in the left wing will shift to the right of their companies.

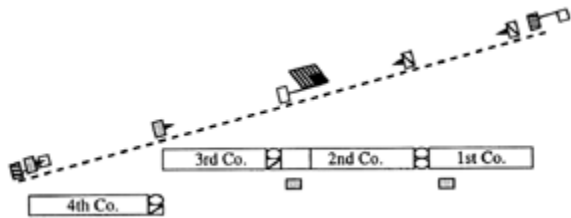
638. If the colonel should then judge it necessary to rectify the alignment, he will command:

*Captains, rectify the alignment.*

639. The captains will immediately cast an eye towards the centre, align themselves accurately on the basis of the alignment, which the lieutenant colonel will see well directed, and then promptly dress their respective companies. The lieutenant colonel will admonish such captains as may not be accurately on the alignment by the command - *Captain of (such) company, or captains of (such) companies, move up or fall back.*

640. But when the colonel shall wish to give the battalion a general alignment, either parallel or oblique, instead of rectifying it as above, he will move some paces outside of one of the general guides (the right will here be supposed) and caution the right general guide and the color-bearer to face him, and then establish them by signal of the sword, on the direction which he may wish to give to the battalion. As soon as they shall be correctly established, the left general guide will place himself on their direction, and be assured in his position by the major. The color-bearer will carry the color-lance perpendicularly between his eyes, and the two corporals of his rank will return to their places in the front rank the moment he shall face to the colonel.

641. This disposition being made, the colonel will command:

*1. Guides-ON THE LINE.*

*“Guides on the Line.” Here, the Battalion is given a general alignment oblique to the current line. The company guides face the Color, and company commanders move to the inner (Color-side) flank of their companies. The 4th Company has moved back a short distance, since part of it would have been in front of the new line. When the Battalion Commander orders, “On the Center, DRESS,” the companies will dress up to the near elbows of the guides, working out from the center to the flanks. (Image from dal Bello, *Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion*, 4th Ed.)*

642. At this command, the right guide of each company in the right wing, and the left guide of each company in the left, will each place himself on the direction of the color-bearer and the two general guides, face to the color-bearer, place himself in rear of the guide who is next before him at a distance equal to the front of his company, and align himself upon the color-bearer and the general guide beyond.

643 The captains in the right wing will shift to the left of their companies, except the captain of the color-company, who will remain on its right, but step into the rear rank; the captains in the left wing will shift to the right of their companies.

644. The lieutenant colonel will promptly rectify, if necessary, the positions of the guides of the right wing, and the major those of the other; which being executed, the colonel will command:

*2. On the centre-DRESS.*

645. At this command, the companies will move up in quick time against the guides, where, having arrived, each captain will align his company according to prescribed principles, the lieutenant colonel aligning the color-company.

646. If the alignment be oblique, the captains will take care to conform their companies to it in conducting them towards the line.

647. The battalion being aligned, the colonel will command:

*3. Color and guides-POSTS.*

648. At this command, the color-bearer, the general and company guides, and the captains in the right wing, will take their places in the line of battle, and the color-bearer will replace the heel of the color-lance against the right hip.

649. If the new direction of the line of battle be such that one or more companies find themselves in advance of that line, the colonel, before establishing the general guides on the line, will cause such companies to be moved to the rear, either by the back step, or by first facing about, according as there may be less or more ground to be re-passed to bring the companies in rear of the new direction.

650. When the colonel shall wish to give a general alignment, and the color and general guides are not on the line, he will cause them to move out by the command:

**1. Color and general guides-ON THE LINE.**

651. At this command, the color-bearer and the general guides will place themselves on the line, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 640.

**ARTICLE FOURTH.**

***Change of direction in marching in line of battle.***

652. The battalion marching in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish it to change direction to the right, he will command:

**1. Change direction to the right. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

653. At the command *march*, the movement will commence; the color-rank will shorten the step to fourteen or seventeen inches, and direct itself circularly to the right, taking care to advance the left shoulder, but only insensibly; the major will place himself before the color-bearer, facing him, and so direct his march that he may describe an arc of a circle neither too large nor too small; he will also see that the color-bearer takes steps of fourteen or seventeen inches, according to the gait.

654. The right general guide will wheel on the right captain of the battalion as his pivot; the left general guide will circularly march in the step of twenty-eight inches or thirty-three inches, according to the gait, and will align himself upon the color-bearer and the right general guide.

655. The corporal placed in the centre of the battalion, will take steps of fourteen or seventeen inches, and will wheel to the right by advancing insensibly the left shoulder; the battalion will conform itself to the movement of the centre; to this end, the captain of the color-company, and the captain of the next to the left, will attentively regulate their march, as well as the direction of their shoulders, on the three centre corporals. All the other captains will regulate the direction their shoulders and the length of their step on this basis.

656. The men will redouble their attention order not to pass the line of captains.

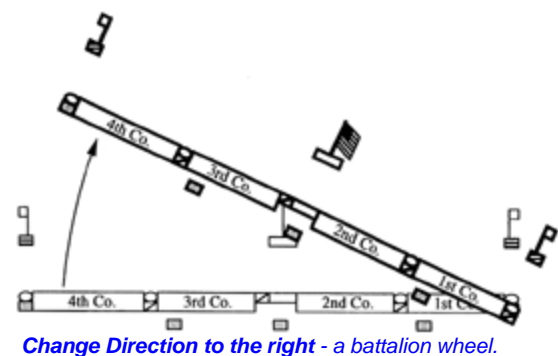
657. In the left wing, the pace will be lengthened in proportion as the file is distant from the centre; the captain of the eighth company who closes the left flank of the battalion will take steps of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches, according to the gait.

658. In the right wing the pace will be shortened in proportion as the file is distant from the centre; the captain who closes the right flank will only slowly turn in his person, observing to yield ground a little if pushed.

659. The colonel will take great care to prevent the centre of the battalion from describing an arc of a circle, either too great or too small, in order that the wings may conform themselves to its movement. He will see also that the captains keep their companies constantly aligned upon the centre, so that there may be no opening and no crowding of files. He will endeavor to prevent faults, and, should they occur, correct them without noise.

660. The lieutenant colonel, placed before the battalion, will give his attention to the same objects.

661. When the colonel shall wish the direct march to be resumed, he will command:



(Image from dal Bello, **Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion**, 4th Ed.)

*1. Forward. 2. MARCH.*

662. At the command *march*, the color-rank, the general guides, and the battalion will resume the direct march; the major will immediately place himself thirty or forty paces in front, face to the colonel, placed in rear of the centre, who will establish him by signal of the sword on the perpendicular direction which the corporal in the centre of the battalion ought to pursue; the major will immediately cause the color-bearer, if necessary, to incline to the right or left, so as to be exactly opposite to his file; the color-bearer will then take two points on the ground between himself and the major.

663. The lieutenant colonel will endeavor to give to the color-company and the next on the left a direction perpendicular to that pursued by the centre corporal; and all the other companies without precipitancy, will conform themselves to that basis.

**ARTICLE FIFTH.***To march in retreat, in line of battle.*

*When retreating, the Line faces by the rear rank and marches away... very unlike the "reenactorism" of "never showing your back to the enemy" and trying to march backwards. If pressed by the enemy, halt, face about, and volley at them, then repeat your retreat. If more than one battalion, they may retreat by alternating bounds, one battalion covering the other, as described in Evolutions of the Line.*

664. The battalion being halted, if it be the wish of the colonel to cause it to march in retreat, he will command:

*1. Face to the rear. 2. Battalion, about-FACE.*

665. At the second command, the battalion will face about: the color-rank, and the general guides, if in advance, will take their places in line; the color-bearer will pass into the rear rank, now leading; the corporal of his file will step behind the corporal next on his own right, to let the color-bearer pass, and then step into the front rank, now rear, to re-form the color-file; the colonel will place himself behind the front rank, become the rear; the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves before the rear rank, now leading.

666. The colonel will take post forty paces behind the color-file, in order to assure the lieu-tenant colonel on the perpendicular, who will place himself at a like distance in front, as prescribed for the advance in line of battle.

667. If the battalion be the one charged with the direction, the colonel will establish markers in the manner indicated, No. 589, except that they face to the battalion, and that the first will be placed twenty-five paces from the lieutenant colonel. If the markers be already established, the officer charged with replacing them in succession will cause them to face about, the moment that the battalion executes this movement, and then the marker nearest to the battalion will hasten to the rear of the two others.

668. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

*3. Battalion, forward.*

669. At this command, the color-bearer will advance six paces beyond the rank of file-closers, accompanied by the two corporals of his guard of that rank, the centre corporal stepping back to let the color-bearer pass; the two file-closers nearest this centre corporal will unite on him behind the color-guard to serve as a basis of alignment for the line of file-closers; the two general guides will place themselves abreast with the color-rank, the covering sergeants will place themselves in the line of file-closers, and the captains in the rear rank, now leading; the captains in the left wing, now right, will, if not already there, shift to the left of their companies, now become the right.

670. The colonel will then command:



**4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

671. The battalion will march in retreat on the same principles which govern the advance in line: the centre corporal behind the color-bearer will march exactly in his trace.

672. If it be the directing battalion, the color-bearer will direct himself on the markers, who will, of their own accord, each place himself in succession behind the marker most distant, on being approached by the battalion: the officer charged with the superintendence of the markers, will carefully assure them on the direction.

673. In the case of a subordinate battalion, the color-bearer will maintain himself on the perpendicular by means of points taken on the ground.

674. The colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major will each discharge the same functions as in the advance in line.

675. The lieutenant colonel, placed on the outside of the file closers of the color-company, will also maintain the three file closers of the basis of alignment in a square with the line of direction: the other file closers will keep themselves aligned on this basis.

**ARTICLE SIXTH.*****To halt the battalion marching in retreat, and to face it to the front.***

676. The colonel having halted the battalion, and wishing to face it to the front, will command:

***1. Face to the front. 2. Battalion, about-FACE.***

677. At the second command, the color-rank, general guides, captains, and covering sergeants, will all retake their habitual places in line of battle, and the color-bearer will re-pass into the front rank.

678. The battalion marching in line of battle by the front rank, when the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

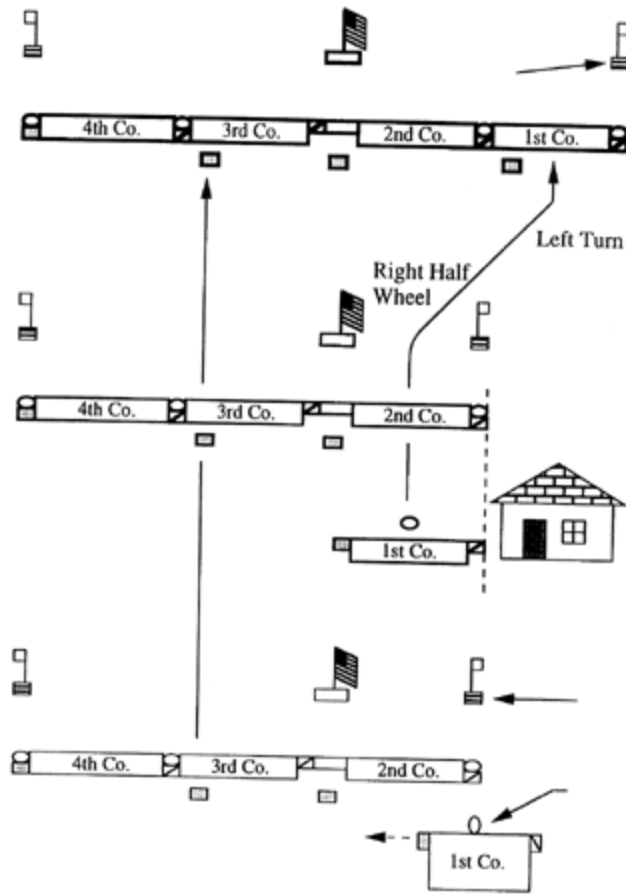
***1. Battalion, right about. 2. MARCH.***

679. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the rear and move off at the same gait by the rear rank. The principles prescribed No. 669 and following will be carefully observed.

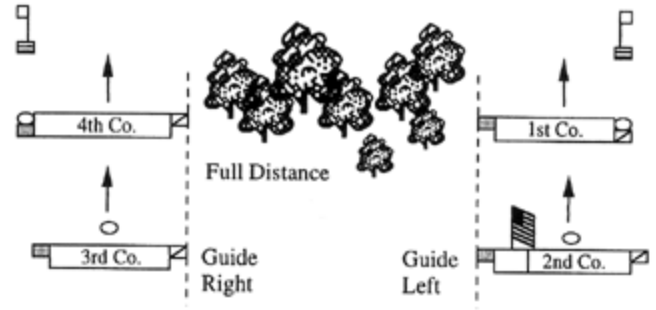
680. If the colonel should wish the battalion to march again by the front, he will give the same commands.

**ARTICLE SEVENTH.*****Change of direction, in marching in retreat.***

681. A battalion retiring in line will change direction by the commands and means indicated No. 652 and following; the three file closers, united behind the color-rank, will conform themselves to the movement of this rank, and wheel like it; the centre file closer of the three will take steps of fourteen or seventeen inches, according to the gait, and keep himself steadily at the same distance from the color-bearer; the line of file closers will conform themselves to the movement of its centre, and the lieutenant colonel will maintain it on that basis.



**"1st Company, Obstacle."** To dodge the house coming up in their front, the 1st Company moves by the left flank and takes position at full distance behind the 2nd Company, then marches 'by the right flank' under the obstacle has been passed. To re-take their position in line, the battalion commander will order, "1st Company, Forward into line." (Image from *dal Bello, Parade, Inspection, and Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion, 4th Ed.*)



**"Two center companies, Obstacle."** Here, the two center companies evade a thicket in the center of the Battalion's front. Companies move, in general, so tha the companies on either side belong to the same wing. Note that the guide of either company is toward the gap that it created.

## ARTICLE EIGHTH.

### *Passage of obstacles, advancing and retreating.*

682. The battalion advancing in line will be supposed to encounter an obstacle which covers one or more companies; the colonel will cause them to play into column at full distance, in rear of the next company towards the color, which will be executed in the following manner. It will be supposed that the obstacle only covers the third company, the colonel will command:

#### *Third company, obstacle.*

683. At this command, the captain of the third company will place himself in its front, turn to it, and command, **1. Third company, by the left flank, to the rear into column. 2. Double quick. 3. MARCH.** He will then hasten to the left of his company.

684. At the command *march*, the company will face to the left in marching; the two left file's will promptly disengage to the rear in double quick time; the left guide, placing himself at the head of the front rank, will conduct it behind the fourth company, directing himself parallelly with this company; the captain of the third will himself halt opposite to the captain of the fourth, and see his company file past; when its right file shall be nearly up with him, he will command, **1. Third company. 2. By the right flank. 3. MARCH. 4. Guide right,** and place himself before the centre of his company.

685. At the command *march*, the company will face to the right, preserving the same gait, but the moment it shall be at the prescribed distance, its captain will command:

#### **1. Quick time. 2. MARCH.**

686. This company will thus follow in column that behind which it finds itself, and at wheeling distance, its right guide marching exactly in the trace of the captain of that company.

687. As soon as the third company shall have faced to the left, the left guide of the

second will place himself on the left of the front rank of his company, and maintain between himself and the right of the fourth the space necessary for the return into line of the third.

688. The obstacle being passed, the colonel will command:

*Third company, forward, into line.*

689. At this command, the captain turning to his company, will add:

*1. By company, right half wheel. 2. Double quick. 3. MARCH.*

690. At the command march, the company will take the double quick step, and execute a half wheel; its captain will then command, *1. Forward. 2. MARCH. 3. Guide left.* The second command will be given when the company shall have sufficiently wheeled.

691. At the command *march*, the company will direct itself straight forward towards the line of battle, and retake its position in it according to the principles prescribed for the formation forward into line of battle.

692. It will be supposed that the obstacle covers several contiguous companies (the three companies on the right for example), the colonel will command:

*1. Three right companies, obstacle. 2. By the left flank, to the rear, into column. 3. Double quick--MARCH.*

693. At the first command, the captains of the designated companies will each place himself before the centre of his company, and caution it as to the movement about to be executed.

694. At the command *march*, the designated companies will face to the left in marching, and immediately take the double quick step; each captain will cause the head of his company to disengage itself to the rear, and the left guide will place himself at the head of the front rank; the captain of the third company will conform himself to what is prescribed, No. 684 and following; the captains of the other companies will conduct them by the flank in rear of the third, inclining towards the head of the column; and, as the head of each company arrives opposite to the right of the one next before it in column, its captain will himself halt, see his company file past, and conform himself for facing it to the front, in marching, to what is prescribed No. 684 and following.

695. When the last company in column shall have passed the obstacle, the colonel will command:

*1. Three right companies, forward, into line.*

696. At this command, the captain of each of these three companies will command, *By company, right half wheel.* The colonel will then add:

*1. Double quick. 2. MARCH.*

697. At this, briskly repeated by the captains of the three companies, each company will conform itself to what is prescribed No. 690 and following.

698. It is supposed, in the foregoing examples, that the companies belonged to the right wing; if they make part of the other, they will execute the passage of an obstacle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

699. When flank companies are broken off to pass an obstacle, the general guide on that flank will place himself six paces in front of the outer file of the nearest company to him remaining in line.

700. In the preceding movements, it has been supposed that the battalion was marching in quick time, but if it be marching in double quick time, and the colonel

shall wish to cause several contiguous companies to break to the rear, he will first order the battalion to march in quick time; the companies will break as indicated No. 692.

701. When the movement is completed, the colonel will order the double quick step to be resumed. He will also cause the battalion to march in quick time when he shall wish to bring into line the several companies which are to the rear in column; the movement will be executed as previously indicated; and when the last company shall have nearly completed its movement, the colonel will cause the double quick step to be resumed.

702. In the movement of a single company, or of several companies not contiguous to each other, the battalion will continue to march in double quick time, but in these cases the companies which are to ploy into column, or re-enter the line, will increase the gait.

703. In the march in retreat, these several movements will be executed on the same principles as if the battalion marched by the front rank.

704. When a battalion, advancing in line of battle, shall be obliged to execute the right about in order to retreat, if there be companies in column, behind the rear rank, these companies will also execute the right about, put themselves in march, at the same time with the battalion, and will thus precede it in the retreat; they will afterwards successively put themselves into line by the oblique step, as the ground may permit.

705. If the battalion be marching in retreat in double quick time, and many contiguous companies be marching before the rear rank of the battalion, the colonel will not change the gait of the battalion in causing them to re-enter into line.

706. When the color-company shall be obliged to execute the movement of passing an obstacle, the color-rank will return into line at the moment the company shall face to the left or right; the major will place himself six paces before the extremity of the company behind which the color-company marches in column, in order to give the step and the direction; he, himself, first taking the step from the battalion.

707. As soon as the color-company shall have returned into line, the front rank of the color guard will again move out six paces in front of the battalion, and take the step from the major; the latter will immediately place himself twenty or thirty in front of the color-bearer, and face to the colonel placed behind the centre of the battalion, who will establish him on the perpendicular; and, as soon as he shall be assured on it, the color-bearer will instantly take two points on the ground between himself and the major.

708. It is prescribed, as a general rule, that the companies of the right wing ought to execute the movement of passing obstacles by the left flank, and the reverse for the companies of the other wing; but if the obstacle cover at once several companies of the centre, each will file into column behind that, still in line, and of the same wing, which may be the nearest to it.

## *ARTICLE NINTH.*

### *To pass a defile, in retreat, by the right or left flank.*

*“Passing a defile” is to move the battalion, in line of battle, through a narrow gap or other tight place.*

709. When a battalion, retiring in line, shall encounter a defile which it must pass, the colonel will halt the battalion, and face it to the front.

710. It will be supposed that the defile is in rear of the left flank, and that its width is sufficient to give passage to a column by platoon; the colonel will place a marker fifteen or twenty paces in rear of the file closers at the point around which the subdivisions will have to change direction in order to enter the defile; he will then command:

*To the rear, by the right flank, pass the defile.*

711. The captain of the first company will immediately command:

*1. First company, right-FACE. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

712. At the command *march*, the first company will commence the movement; the first file will wheel to the right, march to the rear till it shall have passed four paces beyond the file closers, when it will wheel again to the right, and then direct itself straight forward towards the left flank. All the other files of this company will come to wheel in succession at the same place where the first had wheeled.

713. The second company will execute, in its turn, the same movement, by the commands of its captain, who will give the command **MARCH**, so that the first file of his company may immediately follow the last of the first, without constraint, however, as to taking the step of the first; the first file of the second company will wheel to the right, on its ground; all the other files of this company will come in succession to wheel at the same place. The following companies will execute, each in its turn, what has just been prescribed for the second.

714. When the whole of the second company shall be on the same direction with the first, the captain of the first will cause it to form, by platoon, into line, and the moment that it is in column, the guide of the first platoon will direct himself on the marker around whom he has to change direction in order to enter the defile.

715. The second company will continue to march by the flank, directing itself parallelly with the line of battle; and it, in its turn, will form by platoon into line, when the third company shall be wholly on the same direction with itself.

716. The following companies will successively execute what has just been prescribed for the second, and each will form by platoon into line, when the next company shall be on the same direction with itself.

717. The first platoon of the leading company having arrived opposite to the marker placed at the entrance of the defile, will turn to the left, and the following platoons will all execute this movement at the same point. As the last companies will not be able to form platoons before reaching the defile, they will so direct themselves, in entering it, as to leave room to the left for this movement.

718. The battalion will thus pass the defile by platoon; and, as the two platoons of each company shall clear it, companies will be successively formed by the means indicated, school of the company, No. 273, and following.

719. The head of the column having cleared the defile, and having reached the distance at which the colonel wishes to re-form line faced to the defile, he may cause the leading company to turn to the left, to prolong the column in that direction, and then form it to the left into line of battle; or he may halt the column, and form it into line of battle faced to the rear.

720. If the defile be in the rear of the right flank, it will be passed by the left; the movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

721. If the defile be too narrow to receive the front of a platoon, it will be passed by the flank. Captains and file closers will be watchful that the files do not lose their distances in marching. Companies or platoons will be formed into line as the width of the defile may permit, or as the companies shall successively clear it.

**Marching by the flank.** This is the fastest and least fatiguing manner of approach, and the least secure. The principal advantages are simplicity, speed of movement, and compactness of front (which makes passage down roads and across obstacles easier). The disadvantage is in the time needed to deploy on contact with the enemy, which for a brigade might require 30 minutes to an hour depending on terrain and other factors. Use this technique when you need to make haste to your attack position and can risk the vulnerability.

## **ARTICLE TENTH.**

### **To march by the flank.**

722. The colonel, wishing the battalion to march by the flank, will command:

**1. Battalion. 2. Right (or left)-FACE. 3. Forward. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

723. At the second command, the captains and covering sergeants will place themselves as prescribed Nos. 136 and 141, school of the company.

724. The sergeant on the left of the battalion will place himself to the left and by the side of the last file of his company, covering the captains in file.

725. The battalion having to face by the left flank, the captains, at the second command, will shift rapidly to the left of their companies, and each place himself by the side of the covering sergeant of the company preceding his own, except the captain of the left company, who will place himself by the side of the sergeant on the left of the battalion. The covering sergeant of the right company will place himself by the right side of the front rank man of the rearmost file of his company, covering the captains in file.

726. At the command *march*, the battalion will step off with life; the sergeant, placed before the leading file (right or left in front), will be careful to preserve exactly the length and cadence of the step, and to direct himself straight forward; to this end, he will take points on the ground.

727. Whether the battalion march by the right or left flank, the lieutenant colonel will place himself abreast with the leading file, and the major abreast with the color-file, both on the one side of the front rank, and about six paces from it.

728. The adjutant, placed between the lieutenant colonel and the front rank, will march in the same step with the head of the battalion, and the sergeant major, placed between the major and the color-bearer, will march in the same step with the adjutant.

729. The captains and file closers will carefully see that the files neither open out, nor close too much, and that they regain insensibly their distances, if lost.

730. The colonel wishing the battalion to wheel by file, will command:

**1. By file right (or left). 2. MARCH.**

731. The files will wheel in succession, and all at the place where the first had wheeled, in conforming to the principles prescribed in the school of the company.

732. The battalion marching by the flank, when the colonel shall wish it to halt, he will command:

**1. Battalion. 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.**

733. These commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the company, No. 146.

734. If the battalion be marching by the flank and the colonel should wish to cause it to march in line, either to the front or to the rear, the movements will be executed by the commands and means prescribed in the school of the company.

**ARTICLE ELEVENTH.*****To form the battalion on the right or left, by file, into line of battle.***

735. The battalion marching by the right flank when the colonel shall wish to form it on the right by file, he will determine the line of battle, and the lieutenant colonel will place two markers on that line, in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 415.

736. The head of the battalion being nearly up with the first marker, the colonel will command:

***1. On the right, by file, into line. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

737. At the command march, the leading company will form itself on the right, by file, into line of battle, as indicated in the school of the company, No. 149; the front rank man of the first file will rest his breast lightly against the right arm of the first marker; the other companies will follow the movement of the leading company; each captain will place himself on the line at the same time with the front rank man of his first file, and on the right of this man.

738. The left guide of each company, except the leading one, will place himself on the direction of the markers, and opposite to the left file of his company, at the instant that the front rank man of this file arrives on the line.

739. The formation being ended, the colonel will command:

**GUIDES-POSTS.**

740. The colonel will superintend the successive formation of the battalion, moving along the front of the line of battle.

741. The lieutenant colonel will, in succession, assure the direction of the guides, and see that the men of the front rank, in placing themselves on the line, do not pass it.

742. If the battalion march by the left flank, the movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

**ARTICLE TWELFTH.*****Changes of front.******Change of front perpendicularly forward.***

743. The battalion being in line of battle, it is supposed to be the wish of the colonel to cause a change of front forward on the right company, and that the angle formed by the old and new positions be a right angle, or a few degrees more or less than one; he will cause two markers to be placed on the new direction, before the position to be occupied by that company, and order its captain to establish it against the markers.

744. The captain of the right company will immediately direct it upon the markers by a wheel to the right on the fixed pivot; and after having halted it, he will align it by the right.

745. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

***1. Change front forward on first company. 2. By company right half wheel. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH.)***

746. At the second command, each captain will place himself before the centre of

his company.

747. At the third, each company will wheel to the right on the fixed pivot; the left guide of each will place himself on its left as soon as he shall be able to pass; and when the colonel shall judge that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command:

*4. Forward. 5. MARCH. 6. Guide right.*

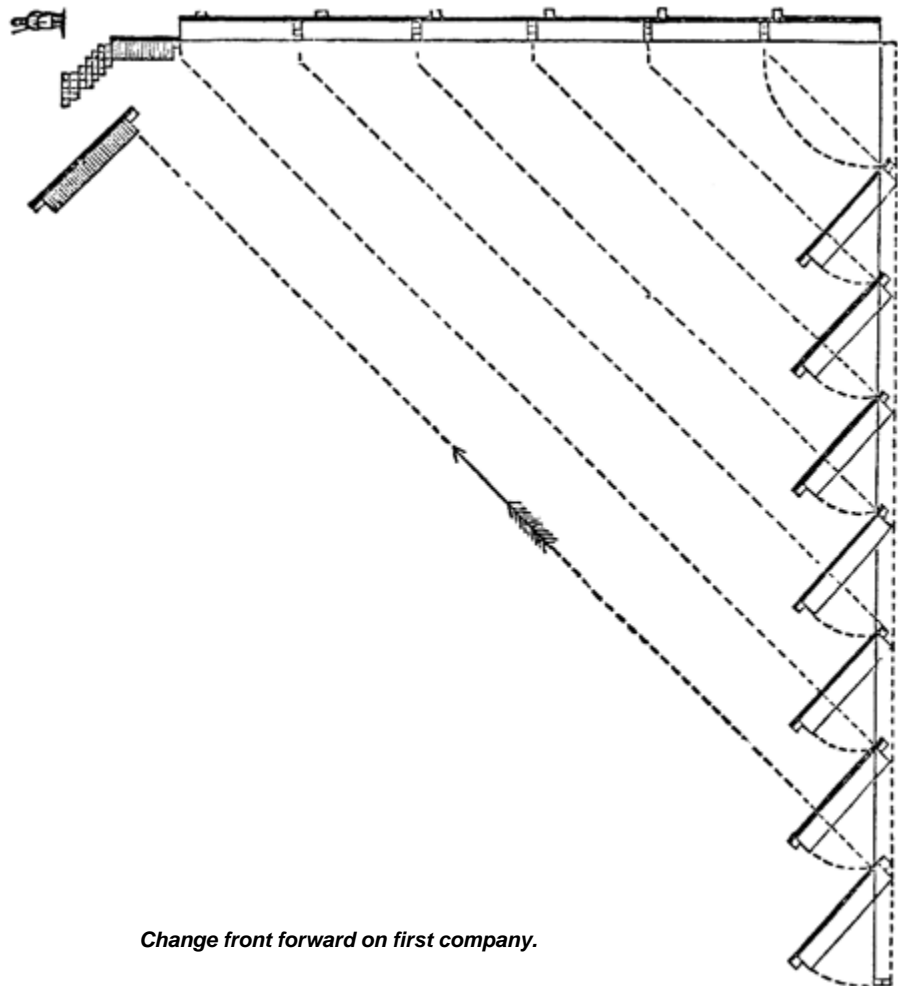
748. At the fifth command, the companies ceasing to wheel will march straight forward; at the sixth, the men will touch elbows towards the right.

749. The right guide of the second company will march straight forward until this company shall arrive at the point where it should turn to the right; each succeeding right guide will follow the file immediately before him at the cessation of the wheel, and will march in the trace of this file until this company shall turn to the right to move the line; this guide will then march straight forward.

750. The second company having arrived opposite to the left file of the first, its captain will cause it to turn to the right; the right guide will direct himself so as to arrive squarely upon the line of battle, and when he shall be at three paces from that line, the captain will command:

*1. Second company. 2. HALT.*

751. At the second command, the company will halt; the files not yet in line with the guide will come into it promptly, the left guide will place himself on the line of battle, and as soon as he is assured in the direction by the lieutenant colonel, the



*Change front forward on first company.*



captain will align the company by the right.

752. Each following company will conform to what has just been prescribed for the second.

753. The formation ended, the colonel will command:

***Guides-POSTS.***

754. If the battalion be in march, and the colonel shall wish to change front forward on the first company, and that the angle formed by the old and new positions be a right angle, he will cause two markers to be placed on the new direction, before the position to be occupied by that company, and will command:

***1. Change front forward on first company. 2. By company, right half wheel. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

755. At the first command, the captains will move rapidly before the centre of their respective companies; the captain of the first company will command: ***1. Right turn; 2. Quick time;*** the captains of the other companies will caution them to wheel to the right.

756. At the command *march*, the first company will turn to the right according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 402; its captain will halt it at three paces from the markers, and the files in rear will promptly come into line. The captain will align the company by the right.

757. Each of the other companies will wheel to the right on a fixed pivot; the left guides will place themselves on the left of their respective companies, and when the colonel shall judge they have wheeled sufficiently, he will command:

***4. Forward. 5. MARCH. 6. Guide right.***

758. These commands will be executed as indicated, No. 746 and following.

759. The colonel will cause the battalion to change front forward on the eighth company according to the same principles and by inverse means.

***Change of front perpendicularly to the rear.***

760. The colonel, wishing to change front to the rear on the right company, will impart his purpose to the captain of this company. The latter will immediately face his company about, wheel it to the left on the fixed pivot, and halt it when it shall be in the direction indicated to him by the colonel; the captain will then face his company to the front, and align it by the right against the two markers, whom the colonel will cause to be established before the right and left files.

761. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

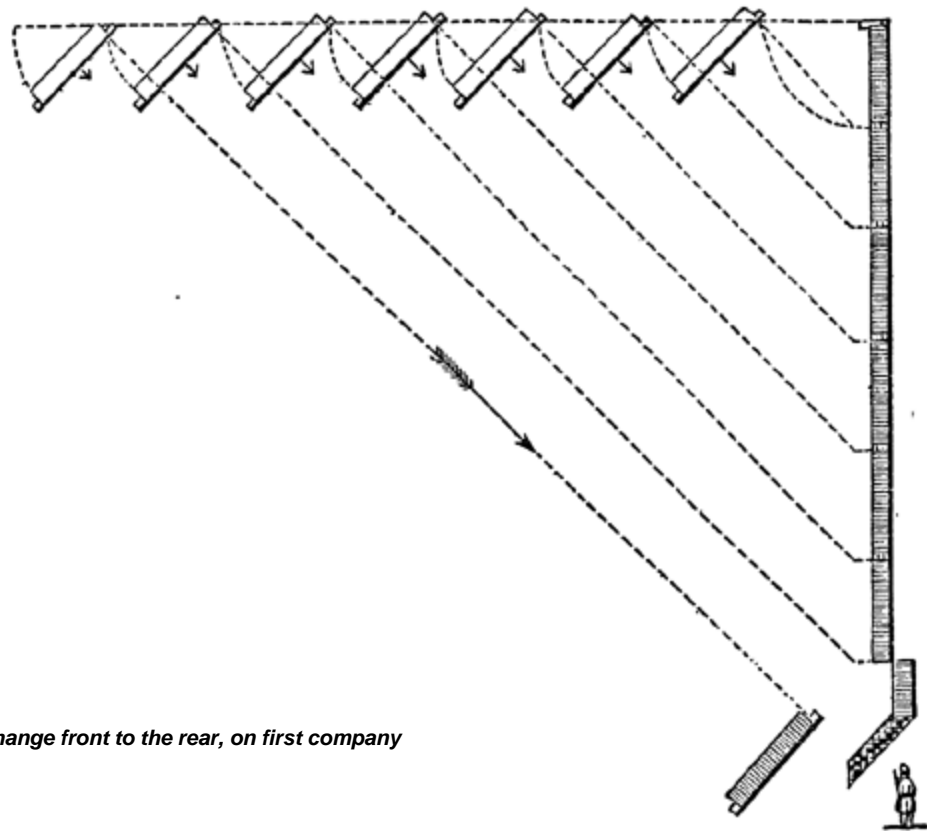
***1. Change front to the rear, on first company. 2. Battalion, about-FACE. 3. By company, left half wheel. 4. MARCH (or double quick--MARCH).***

762. At the second command, all the companies, except the right, will face about.

763. At the third, the captains, whose companies have faced about, will each place himself behind the centre of his company, two paces from the front rank, now the rear.

764. At the fourth, these companies will wheel to the left on the fixed pivot by the rear rank; the left guide of each will, as soon as he is able to pass, place himself on the left of the rear rank of his company, now become the right; and when the colonel shall judge that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command:

***5. Forward. 6. MARCH. 7. Guide left.***



*Change front to the rear, on first company*

765. At the sixth command, the companies will cease to wheel, march straight forward towards the new line of battle, and, at the seventh, take the touch of the elbow towards the left.

766. The guide of each company on its right flank, become left, will conform himself to the principles prescribed, No. 748.

767. The second company, from the right, having arrived opposite to the left of the first, will turn to the left; the guide will so direct himself as to arrive parallelly with the line of battle, cross that line, and when the front rank, now in the rear, shall be three paces beyond it, the captain will command: *1. Second company; 2. HALT.*

768. At the second command, the company will halt; the files which may not yet be in line with the guide, will promptly come into it; the captain will cause the company to face about, and then align it by the right.

769. All the other companies will execute what has just been prescribed for the second, each as it successively arrives opposite to the left of the company that precedes it on the new line of battle.

770. The formation being ended, the colonel will command:

#### *Guides-POSTS.*

771. The colonel will cause a change of front on the left company of the battalion to the rear, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

772. In changes of front, the colonel will give a general superintendence to the movement.

773. The lieutenant colonel will assure the direction of the guides as they successively move out on the line of battle, conforming himself to what has been prescribed in the successive formations.

**Remarks on changes of front.**

774. When the new direction is perpendicular, or nearly so, to that of the battalion, the companies ought to make about a half wheel (the eighth of a circle) before marching straight forward; but when those two lines are oblique to each other, the smaller the angle which they form, the less ought the companies to wheel. It is for the colonel to judge, according to the angle, the precise time when he ought to give the command *march* after the caution *forward*, and if he cannot catch the exact moment, the word of execution should rather be given a little too soon, than an instant too late.

775. When the old and the new lines form an angle of forty-five or fewer degrees, the colonel will find it necessary to arrest the wheel of the companies when the marching flanks shall have taken but a few paces, or, it may be, have but disengaged, respectively, from the fixed pivots of the next companies; and in all such cases, the companies will arrive so nearly parallel to the new line, as to be able to align themselves upon it without the intermediate turn to the right or left: to execute the movement under either circumstance supposed, the colonel will command:

*Oblique change of front, forward (or to the rear) on (such company.)*

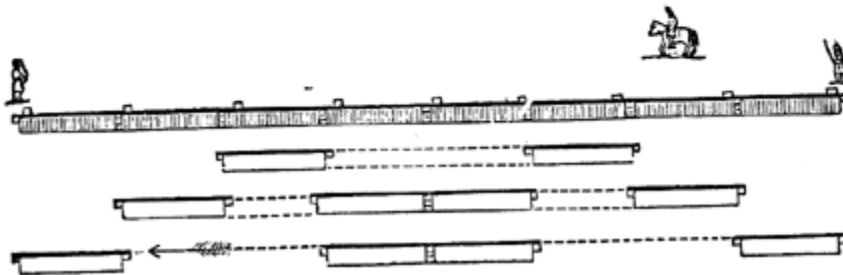
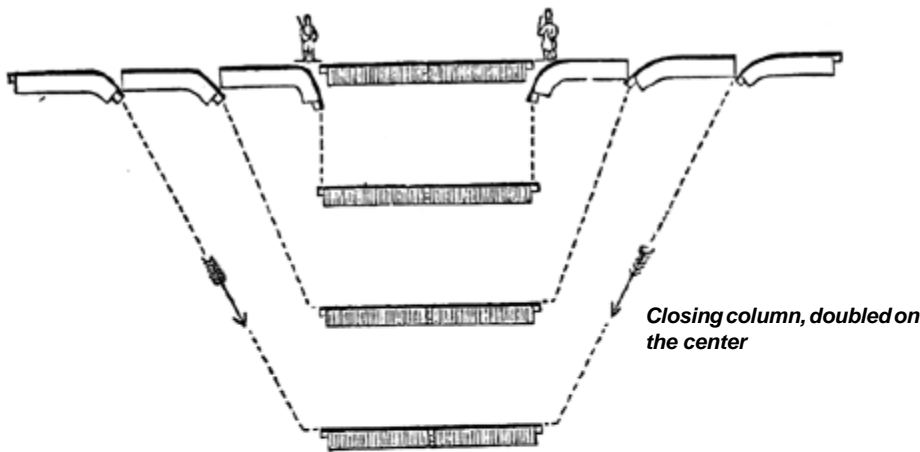
**ARTICLE THIRTEENTH.**

***To play the battalion into column doubled on the centre.***

776. This movement consists in plying the corresponding companies of the right and left wings into column at company distance, or closed in mass, in rear of the two centre companies, according to the principles prescribed, Article Third, Part Second, of this School.

*“Column doubled on the center”:* Other, older drill manuals call this formation a “column of attack.” This is the classic, Napoleonic “column” - it’s short frontage reduces the target presented to the enemy’s muskets during the approach, allows for easy and rapid movement over long distances, and its depth makes it very powerful, allowing quick deployment to line of battle, or punching through the enemy’s line and deploying out into line to rampage in his rear. This is a very powerful tool in the battalion’s bag of tricks.

*This is also the preliminary maneuver to prepare the battalion to form square against cavalry.*



*Deploying from Closed column, doubled on the center, back into line of battle*

777. The colonel, wishing to form the double column at company distance, (the battalion being in line of battle,) will command:

**1. Double column, at half distance. 2. Battalion, inwards-FACE. 3. MARCH (or double quick--MARCH.)**

778. At the first command, the captains will place themselves two paces in front their respective companies; the captains of the two centre companies will caution them to *stand fast*, and the other captains will caution their companies to face to the left and right, respectively. The covering sergeants will step into the front rank.

779. At the second command, the fourth and fifth companies will stand fast; the others of the right wing will face to the left, and the others of the left wing will face to the right; each captain whose company has faced, will hasten to break to the rear the two files at the head of his company; the left guide of each right company, and the right guide of each left company, will each place himself at the head of its front rank, and the captain by the side of his guide.

780. At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies, which are to form the first division, will stand fast; the senior captain of the two will place himself before the centre of the division, and command: *Guide right*; the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies, and the left guide of the left company will place himself in the front rank on the left of the division, as soon as he shall be able to pass.

781. All the other companies, conducted by their captains, will step off with life to arrange themselves in column at company distance, each company behind the preceding one in the column of the same wing, so that, in the right wing, the third may be next behind the fourth, the second next to the third, and so on to the right company and, in the left wing, the sixth may be next behind the fifth, the seventh next to the sixth, and so on to the left company of the battalion.

782. The corresponding companies of the two wings will unite into divisions in arranging themselves in column; an instant before the union, at the centre of the column, the left guides of right companies will pass into the line of file closers, and each captain will command: **1. Such company; 2. Halt; 3. FRONT.**

783. At the second command, which will be given at the instant of union, each company will halt; at the third, it will face to the front. The senior captain in each division will place himself on its right, and command, *Right-DRESS*, and the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The division being aligned, its chief will command *FRONT*, and take his position two paces before its centre.

784. The column being thus formed, the divisions will take the respective denominations of first, second, third, &c., according to position in the column, beginning at the front.

785. The lieutenant colonel, who, at the second command given by the colonel, will have placed himself at a little more than company distance in rear of the right guide of the first division, will assure the right guides on the direction as they successively arrive, by placing himself in their rear.

786. The music will pass to the rear of the column.

787. The battalion being in march, to form the double column at company distance without halting the battalion, the colonel will command:

**1. Double column at half distance. 2. Battalion by the right and left flanks. 3. MARCH (or double quick -MARCH).**

788. At the first command, each captain will move briskly in front of the centre of his company; the captains of the fourth and fifth will caution their companies to march straight forward; the other captains will caution their companies to face to the right and left.

789. At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies will continue to

march straight forward; the senior captain will place himself before the centre of his division and command, *Guide right*; the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The left guide of the fifth company will place himself on the left of the front rank of the division. The men will take the touch of elbows to the right. The color and general guides will retake their places. The three right companies will face to the left, and the three left companies will face to the right. Each captain will break to the rear two files at the head of his company; the left guides of the right companies, and the right guides of the left companies, will each place himself at the head of the front rank of his company, and the captain by the side of his guide.

790. The third and sixth companies will enter the column and direct themselves parallelly to the first division. Each of the other companies will, in like manner, place itself behind the company of the wing to which it belongs, and will be careful to gain as much ground as possible towards the head of the column.

791. The corresponding companies of each wing will unite into divisions on taking their positions in column, and each captain, the instant the head of his company arrives at the centre of the column, will command, *1. Such company by the right (or left) flank. 2. MARCH*. The senior captain of the two companies will place himself in front of the centre of his division, and command, *Guide right*; the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The two companies thus formed into a division will take the touch of elbows to the right, and when each division has gained its proper distance, its chief will cause it to march in quick time.

792. When the battalion presents an odd number of companies, the formation will be made in like manner, and the company on either flank which shall find itself without a corresponding one, will place itself at company distance behind the wing to which it belongs.

793. The double column, closed in mass, will be formed according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting the indication, closed in mass, for that of at half distance.

794. The double column never being formed when two or more battalions are to be in one general column, it will habitually take the guide to the right, sometimes to the left, or in the centre of the column; in the last case, the command will be, *guide centre*. The column will march and change direction according to the principles prescribed for a simple column by division.

795. The double column at company distance will be closed in mass, or, if in mass, will take half distance, by the commands and means indicated for a simple column by division.

### ***Deployment of the double column, faced to the front.***

796. The colonel, wishing to deploy the double column, will place a marker respectively before the right and left files of the first division, and a third before the left file of the right company, same division; which being done, he will cause the two general guides to spring out on the alignment of the markers a little beyond the points at which the respective flanks of the battalion ought to rest; he will then command:

***1. Deploy column. 2. Battalion outwards-FACE 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

797. The column will deploy itself on the two companies at its head, according to the principles prescribed for the deployment of columns in mass. The captains of these companies will each, at the command *march*, place himself on the right of his own company, and align it by the right; the captain of the fourth will then place himself in the rear rank, and the covering sergeant in the rank of file closers, at the moment the captain of the third shall come to its left to align it.

798. The deployment being ended, the colonel will command.

***Guides-POSTS.***

799. If it be the wish of the colonel to cause the fire to commence pending the deployment, he will give an order to that effect to the captains of the fourth and fifth companies, and the fire will be executed according to the principles prescribed No. 438.

800. The battalion being in double column and in march, if the colonel shall wish to deploy it without halting the column, he will cause three markers to be posted on the line of battle, and when the head of the column shall arrive near the markers, he will command:

***1. Deploy column. 2. Battalion, by the right and left flanks. 3. MARCH. (or double quick-MARCH.)***

801. The column will deploy on the two leading companies, according to the principles prescribed for the deployment of a close column No. 533 and following; at the command march, the chief of the first division will halt it, and the captains of the fourth and fifth companies will align their companies by the right.

802. If the column be in march, and it be the wish of the colonel to deploy the column and to continue to march in the order of battle, he will not cause markers to be established at the head of the column. The movement will be executed by the commands and means indicated No. 800, observing what follows. At the first command the chief of the first division will command, ***Quick time***. At the command march, the first division will continue to march in quick time; the colonel will command, ***Guide centre***. The captains of the fourth and fifth companies, the color, and the men will immediately conform to the principles of the march in line of battle. The companies will take the quick step by the command of their captains, The movement completed, the colonel may cause the battalion to march in double quick time.

***To form the double column into line of battle, faced to the right or left.***

803. The double column, being at company distance and at a halt, may be formed into line of battle faced to the right or left; when the colonel shall wish to form it faced to the right, he will command:

***1. Right into line wheel, left companies on the right into line. 2. Battalion, guide right. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).***

804. At the first command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company; the right companies will be cautioned that they will have to wheel to the right into line, the left companies that they will have to march straight forward.

805. At the second command, the left guide of the fourth company will place himself briskly on the direction of the right guides of the column, face to them, and opposite to one of the three last files of his company when in line of battle; the lieutenant colonel will assure him in that position.

806. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by all the captains, the right companies will form to the right into line of battle, the left companies will put themselves in march in order to form on the right into line of battle; these formations will be executed by the means indicated No. 391 and following, No. 416 and following; the lieutenant colonel will assure the guides of the left wing on the line of battle as they successively come upon it.

807. If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

*1. Right into line wheel. 2. Left companies, on the right into line. 3. Battalion, guide right. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

808. At the first command, each captain will place himself promptly before the centre of his company; the right companies will be cautioned that they will have to wheel to the right, and the left companies that they will have to form on the right into line.

809. At the command march, briskly repeated, the right companies will form to the right into line, and the left companies on the right into line. These formations will be executed as prescribed Nos. 402, 417, and following.

810. If the colonel should wish to move the battalion forward, at the moment the right companies will have completed the wheel, he will command:

*5. Forward. 6. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

811. At the command forward, the captains of the right companies will command, *Quick time.* At the command *march*, the right companies will cease to wheel and march straight forward. The colonel will then add:

*7. Guide centre.*

812. The movement of the left companies will be executed in double quick time as prescribed above, and as they arrive on the line each captain will cause his company to march in quick time.

813. The column may be formed faced to the left into line of battle according to the same principles.

814. If the column be closed in mass instead of at company distance, these movements will be executed according to the principles prescribed Nos. 417, 502, and 510.

### **Remarks on the deployment of the double column.**

815. The depth of the double column, at company distance, being inconsiderable, closing it in mass, if at a halt, in order to deploy it, may be dispensed with; but if it be in march, it will be preferable to cause it so to close, in halting, before deploying.

816. The double column will be deployed habitually on the centre companies, but the colonel may sometimes deploy it on any interior company, or on the first or eighth company.

**ARTICLE FOURTEENTH.**

***Dispositions against Cavalry.***

817. A battalion being in column by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it into square, he will first cause divisions to be formed; which being done, he will command:

- 1. To form square. 2. To half distance, close column. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

818. At the command *march*, the column will close to company distance, the second division taking its distance from the rear rank of the first division.

819. At the moment of halting the fourth division, the file closers of each company of which it is composed, passing by the outer flank of their companies will place themselves two paces before the front rank opposite to their respective places in line of battle, and face towards the head of the column.

820. At the commencement of the movement, the major will place himself on the right of the column abreast with the first division; the buglers formed in two ranks will place themselves at platoon distance, behind the inner platoons of the second division.

821. These dispositions being made, the colonel may, according to circumstances, put the column in march or cause it to form square; if he wish to do the latter, he will command:

- 1. Form square. 2. Right and left into line,**

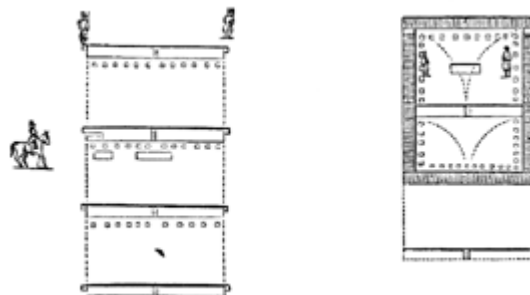
822. At the first command, the lieutenant colonel, facing to the left guides, and the major, facing to those of the right, will align them from the front, on the respective guides of the fourth division, who will stand fast, holding up their pieces, inverted, perpendicularly; the right guides, in placing themselves on the direction, will take their exact distances.

823. At the second command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast; all the captains of the second and third divisions will place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution them that they will have to wheel, the right companies to the right, and the left companies to the left into line of battle.

824. The color-bearer will step back into the line of file closers, opposite to his place in line of battle, and will be replaced by the corporal of his file, who is in the rear rank; the corporal of the same file who is in the rank of file closers will step into the rear rank.

825. The chief of the fourth division will command: **1. Fourth division, forward; 2. Guide left**, and place himself at the same time two paces outside of its left flank.

826. These dispositions ended, the colonel will command:



*Forming Square, from the column doubled on the center.*



*MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

827. At this command, briskly repeated, the first division will stand fast; but its right file will face to the right, and its left file to the left.

828. The companies of the second and third divisions will wheel to the right and left into line, and the buglers will advance a space equal to the front of a company.

829. The fourth division will close up to form the square, and when it shall have closed, its chief will halt it, face it about, and align it by the rear rank upon the guides of the division, who will, for this purpose, remain faced to the front. The junior captain will pass into the rear rank, now become the front, and the covering sergeant of the left company will place himself behind him in the front rank, become rear. The file closers will, at the same time, close up a pace on the front rank, and the outer file on each flank of the division will face outwards.

830. The square being formed, the colonel will command:

*Guides-POSTS*

831. At this command, the chiefs of the first and fourth divisions, as well as the guides, will enter the square.

832. The captains whose companies have formed to the right into line, will remain on the left of their companies; the left guide of each of those companies will, in the rear rank, cover his captain, and the covering sergeant of each will place, himself as a file closer behind the right file of his company.

833. The field and staff will enter the square, the lieutenant colonel placing himself behind the left, and the major behind the right of the first division.

834. If the battalion present ten, instead of eight companies, the fourth division will make the same movements prescribed above for the second and third divisions, and the fifth, the movements prescribed for the fourth division.

835. A battalion ought never to present, near the enemy's cavalry, an odd company. The odd company, under that circumstance, ought, when the battalion is under arms, to be consolidated, for the time, with the other companies.

836. The fronts of the square will be designated as follows: the first division will always be the first front; the last division, the fourth front; the right companies of the other divisions will form the second front; and the left companies of the same divisions the third front.

837. A battalion being in column by company, at full distance, right in front, and in march, when the colonel shall wish to form square, he will cause this movement to be executed by the commands and means indicated, No. 817.

838. At the command march, the column will close to company distance, as is prescribed, No. 278. When the chief of the fourth division shall command *Quick, march*, the file closers of this division will place themselves before the front rank.

839. The major and the buglers will conform to what is prescribed, No. 820.

840. If the colonel shall wish to form square, he will command:

*1. Form square. 2. Right and left into line, wheel. 3. MARCH.*

841. At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to halt; all the captains of the second and third divisions will rapidly place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution them that they will have to wheel, the right companies to the right, and the left companies to the left into line. The chief of the fourth division will caution it to continue its march, and will hasten to its left flank. At the third command, briskly repeated, the chief of the first division will halt his division and align it to the left, the outer files will face to the right and left, the rest of the movement will be executed as prescribed No. 828 and following.

842. The lieutenant colonel and the major, at the command *march*, will conform to what is prescribed, No. 822.

843. If the battalion, before the square is formed, be in double column, the two

leading companies will form the first front, the two rear companies the fourth; the other companies of the right half battalion will form the second, and those of the left half battalion the third front.

844. The first and fourth fronts will be commanded by the chiefs of the first and fourth divisions; each of the other two by its senior captain.

845. The commander of each front will place himself four paces behind its present rear rank, and will be replaced momentarily in the command of his company by the next in rank therein.

846. If the column be at full distance, instead of at company distance, as has been supposed, the square will be formed in the manner prescribed, No. 817 or 838, and following; and the dispositions indicated, Nos. 819 and 820, will be executed at the command form square.

847. If the column by division, whether double or simple, be in mass, and the colonel shall wish to form it into square, he will first cause it to take company distance; to this effect, he will command:

*1. To form square. 2. By the head of column, take half distance.*

848. The divisions will take half distance by the means indicated, No. 324, and following. What is prescribed, No. 820, will be executed as the first and second divisions are put in motion.

849. The colonel will halt the column the moment the third division shall have its distance. As soon as the column is halted, the dispositions indicated, No. 819, will be executed, and when these are completed, the colonel may proceed to form square.

849. If the column be in march, he will also, in the first place, cause company distance to be taken, and, for this purpose, will command:

*1. To form square. 2. By the head of column, take half distance. 3. MARCH (or double quick MARCH).*

851. This movement will be executed as prescribed, No. 330, and following. What is prescribed, No. 820, will be executed as the first and second divisions are put in motion.

852. The colonel will proceed to form square the moment the third division shall have its distance; at the command *form square*, the dispositions indicated, No. 819, will be executed. If it be intended merely to dispose the column for square, the colonel will not halt the column until the last division has its distance.

853. In a simple column, left in front, these several movements will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means; but the fronts of the square will have the same designations as if the right of the column were in front, that is, the first division will constitute the first front, and thus of the other subdivisions.

854. The battalion being formed into square, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to advance a distance less than thirty paces, he will command:

*1. By (such) front, forward. 2. MARCH.*

855. If it be supposed that the advance be made by the first front, the chief of this front will command:

*1. First division, forward. 2. Guide centre.*

856. The chief of the second front will face his front to the left. The captains of the companies composing this front will place themselves outside, and on the right of their left guides, who will replace them in the front rank; the chief of the third front will face his front to the right, and the captains in this front will place themselves outside, and on the left of their covering sergeants; the chief of the fourth front will face his front about, and command: *1. Fourth division, forward; 2. Guide centre.* The

captain who is in the centre of the first front, will be charged with the direction of the march, and will regulate himself by the means indicated in the school of the company, No. 89.

857. At the command *march*, the square will put itself in motion; the companies marching by the flank will be careful not to lose their distances. The chief of the fourth division will cause his division to keep constantly closed on the flanks of the second and third fronts.

858. This movement will only be executed in quick time.

859. The lieutenant colonel will place himself in rear of the file of direction in order to regulate his march.

860. If the colonel should wish to halt the square, he will command:

**1. Battalion. 2. HALT.**

861. At the second command, the square will halt; the fourth front will face about immediately, and without further command; the second and third fronts will face outwards; the captains of companies will resume their places as in square.

862. In moving the square forward by the second, third, or fourth fronts, the same rules will be observed.

863. The battalion being formed into square, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to advance a greater distance than thirty paces, he will command:

**1. Form column.**

864. The chief of the first front will command:

**1. First division forward. 2. Guide left.**

865. The commander of the fourth front will caution it to stand fast; the commander of the second front will cause it to face to the left, and then command, *By company, by file left*. The commander of the third front will cause it to face to the right, and then command, *By company, by file right*. At the moment the second and third fronts face to the left and right, each captain will cause to break to the rear the two leading files of his company.

866. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

**3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

867. At this command, the first front will march forward; its chief will halt it when it shall have advanced a pace equal to half its front, and align it by the left.

868. The corresponding companies of the second and third front's will wheel by file to the left and right, and march to meet each other behind the centre of the first division, and the moment they unite, the captain of each company will halt his company and face it to the front. The division being re-formed, its chief will align it by the left.

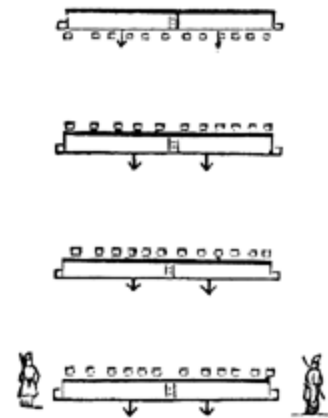
869. The commander of the fourth front will cause it to face about: its file closers will remain before the front rank.

870. The column being thus re-formed, the colonel may put it in march by the commands and means prescribed, No. 164, and following; the right guides will preserve company distance exactly as the directing guides.

871. When the colonel shall wish to re-form square, he will give the commands indicated, No. 840.

872. To cause the square to march in retreat a distance greater than thirty paces, the colonel will first cause column to be formed as indicated No. 863; and when formed, he will cause it to face by the rear rank; to this end, he will command:

**1. To march in retreat. 2. Face by the rear rank. 3. Battalion about-FACE.**



*Square, marching in retreat (actually the battalion in back in close column, doubled on the center, and can easily re-form square or deploy the column back into line of battle if needed.)*

873. At the second command, the file closers of the interior divisions will place themselves, passing by the outer flanks of their respective companies, behind the front rank opposite to their places in line of battle; the file closers of the other divisions will stand fast.

874. At the third command, the battalion will face about; each chief of division will place himself before its rear rank, become front, passing through the interval between its two companies the guides will step into the rear rank, now front.

875. The column being thus disposed, the colonel may put it in march, or cause it to form square as if it were faced by the front rank. The square being formed, its fronts will preserve the same designations they had when faced by the front rank.

876. The battalion being in square by the rear rank, when the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat or in advance, a distance less than thirty paces, he will conform to what is prescribed No. 854 and following; otherwise, he will re-form the column according to the principles prescribed No. 863 by marching forward the fourth front.

877. If the square is to be marched to the front a distance greater than thirty paces, the colonel will face the column by the front rank; to this end, he will command:

*1. To march in advance. 2. Face by the front rank. 3. Battalion about-FACE.*

878. Which will be executed as prescribed No. 873 and following.

879. If the column be marching in advance, and the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

*1. To march in retreat. 2. Battalion right about. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

880. At the second command, the file closers of the second and third divisions - will place themselves rapidly before the front rank of their respective division. At the command march, the column will face about and move off to the rear; the chiefs of divisions and the guides will conform to what is prescribed No. 874.

881. If the column be marching in retreat, and the colonel shall wish to march it in advance, he will command:

*1. To march in advance. 2. Battalion right about. 3. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

882. At the second command, the file closers of the second and third divisions will place themselves before the rear rank of their respective divisions; at the third, the column will face by the front rank.

### *To reduce the square.*

883. The colonel, wishing to break the square, will command:

*1. Reduce square. 2. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

884. This movement will be executed in the manner indicated, No. 863 and following; but the file closers of the fourth front will place themselves behind the rear rank the moment it faces about; the field and staff, the color-bearer and buglers, will, at the same time, return to their places in column.

### *To form square from line of battle.*

885. A battalion deployed, may be formed into square in a direction either parallel or perpendicular to the line of battle.

886. In the first case, the colonel will cause the battalion to break by division to the rear, by the right or left, and then close the column to half distance, as indicated, No. 817, and following.

887. In the second case, he will ploy the battalion into simple column by division at half distance in rear of the right or left division, or into column doubled on the centre.

888. To ploy the battalion into column upon one of the flank divisions, the colonel will command:

*1. To form square. 2. Column at half distance by division. 3. On the first (or fourth) division. 4. Battalion right (or left)-FACE. 5. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

889. This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed No. 119 and following.

890. If the battalion be marching in line of battle and the colonel shall wish to form square in a direction perpendicular to the line of battle, he will command:

*1. To form square. 2. On the first (or fourth) division, form column. 3. Battalion, by the right (or left) flank. 4. MARCH. (or double quick-MARCH.)*

891. This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed for ploying a column by division at half distance, No. 150, The chief of the first division will halt his division at the command *march*.

892. To ploy the battalion into double column, the colonel will command:

*1. To form square. 2. Double column at half distance 3. Battalion inwards-FACE. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

893. This movement will be executed as prescribed No. 778 and following.

894. The battalion being in march, to ploy it into double column to form square, the colonel will command:

*1. To form square. 2. Form double column. 3. Battalion by the right and left flanks. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH)*

895. This movement will be executed as prescribed No. 788. The chief of the leading division will halt his division at the command *march*.

### **Observations relative to the formation of squares in two ranks.**

896. When the colonel shall judge it proper to have a reserve, this reserve, in a column of three divisions, will be formed of the inner platoons of the second division. The second division will, in this case, close to platoon distance on the first division. When the square is formed, the reserve platoons will move forward a distance nearly equal to a platoon front.

897. In re-forming column, the first division will move forward platoon, instead of company distance.

898. If the column be formed of four divisions, the inner platoons of the third division will compose the reserve; then, in re-forming column, the first division will conform to the general rule, and the chief of the third, as soon as his division is formed, will close it to platoon distance on the second division. The colonel may, if necessary, form the reserve of the entire third division. In this case, the movement will be executed in the following manner.

899. If the column be at full distance, when it shall close, at the command to form square, to half distance, the chief of the third division will cause four files to break to the rear from the right and left of his division; the guides will close upon the outer files

remaining in line, and the left guide will march exactly in the trace of the file immediately in front of him. This division will then close in mass on the second division; and the chief of the fourth division will close to half distance on the same division.

900. At the command form square, the chief of the reserve division will command, **1. Third division forward. 2. Guide centre**; at this command, the guides on the flanks will fall into the line of file closers. At the command *march*, the reserve will move forward the distance of a company front. When halted, its chief will cause the platoons to be doubled, and for this purpose will command:

*1. On the centre double platoons. 2. MARCH.*

901. At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will place themselves in front of the centre of their respective platoons; the chief of each outer platoon will face his platoon towards the centre, and cause to break to the rear two files from the left or right. At the command *march*, the outer platoons will direct their march so as to double on the centre platoon at the distance of four paces; their chiefs will align these outer platoons on the centre, and the files previously broken to the rear will come into line.

902. If the column be at half, instead of full distance, the colonel before forming square will order the chiefs of the third and fourth divisions to move forward their divisions as prescribed No. 899.

903. If the column be closed in mass, at the command to form square, the chief of the third division will break four files to the rear from each of the flanks as prescribed No. 899.

904. The colonel will halt the column as soon as the second division shall have gained its distance.

905. If the colonel shall wish the column to continue marching, at the command, by the head of column take half distance, the chief of the reserve division will give his cautionary commands in sufficient time to place his division in motion simultaneously with the one which precedes it. The chief of the fourth division will give the command march at the instant there is company distance between his division and the second.

906. When the colonel shall wish to re-form the column, at the command form column, the chief of the third division will command, Form divisions; at this command, the chiefs of the outer platoons which have doubled in rear of the centre platoons, will give the commands and make the preparatory movements for deploying on the centre platoons which will be executed at the command march given by the colonel and briskly repeated by the chief of this division. The division being re-formed, the chiefs of the outer platoons will retake their places in column, and the chief of this division will again cause four files from each of its flanks to break to the rear.

907. If before the formation of the square, the column had been left in front, it would be formed by the same commands and according to the same principles. The second division, in this case, would form the reserve.

908. The column being formed, if the colonel should wish to march it in retreat he will face it by the rear rank. The files of the third division broken off to the rear, will face about with the battalion, and when the column is put in motion will march in front of the rear rank. But should the colonel wish to re-form the square, he will cause the battalion to face by the front rank.

909. If the battalion be in line, instead of in column, the chief of the reserve division will bring it into column in such manner that there may be a distance of only four paces between this division and the one which is to be immediately in front of it; and when this division is halted and aligned, its chief will cause the usual number of files to be broken to the rear. The chief of the division which should occupy in column a position immediately in rear of the reserve division will, on entering the column, take a distance of twelve between it and the division established immediately

in front of the reserve division.

### ***Squares in four ranks.***

910. If the square formed in two ranks, according to the preceding rules, should not be deemed sufficiently strong, the colonel may cause the square to be formed in four ranks.

911. The battalion being in column by company at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form square in four ranks, he will first cause divisions to be formed, which being executed, he will command:

***1. To form square in four ranks. 2. To half distance, close column. 3. MARCH (or double quick- MARCH).***

912. At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution the right company to face to the left, and the left company to face to the right. The chiefs of the other divisions will caution their divisions to move forward.

913. At the command march, the right company of the first division will form into four ranks on its left file, and the left company into four ranks on its right file. The formation ended, the chief of this division will align it by the left.

914. The other divisions will move forward and double their files, marching: the right company of each division will double on its left file, and the left company on its right file. The formation completed, each chief of division will command, ***Guide left***. Each chief will halt his division when it shall have the distance of a company front in four ranks from the preceding one, counting from its rear rank, and will align his division by the left. At the instant the fourth division is halted, the file closers will move rapidly before its front rank.

915. The colonel will form square, re-form column, and reduce square in four ranks, by the same commands and means as prescribed for a battalion in two ranks.

916. If the square formed in four ranks be reduced and at a halt, and the colonel shall wish to form the battalion into two ranks, he will command:

***1. In two ranks undouble files. 2. Battalion outwards-FACE. 3. MARCH.***

917. At the first command, the captains will step before the centres of their respective companies, and those on the right will caution them to face to the right, and those on the left to face to the left.

918. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right and left.

919. At the command *march*, each company will undouble its files and re-form into two ranks as indicated in the school of the company No. 376 and following. Each captain will halt his company and face it to the front. The formation completed, each chief of division will align his division by the left.

920. If the column be in march, with divisions formed in four ranks, and the colonel shall wish to re-form them into two ranks, he will command:

***1. Guide centre. 2. In two ranks, undouble files. 3. MARCH.***

921. The captain, placed in the centre of each division, will continue to march straight to the front, as will also the left file of the right company, and the right file of the left company. Each company will then be re-formed into two ranks, as prescribed in the school of the company.

922. The battalion being formed into two ranks, the colonel will command, ***Guide left*** (or right).

923. To form square in four ranks on one of the flank divisions, the colonel will command:

**1. To form square, in four ranks. 2. Column at half distance, by division. 3. On the first (or fourth) division. 4. Battalion, right (or left)-FACE. 5. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

924. At the second command, each chief of division will place himself before the centre of his division, and caution it to face to the right.

925. At the fourth command, the right guide of the first division will remain faced to the front, the battalion will face to the right.

926. At the command *march*, the first file of four men of the first division will face to the front remaining doubled. All the other files of four men will step off together, and each in succession will close up to its proper distance on the file preceding it, and face to the front, remaining doubled. When the last file shall have closed, the chief of division will command, **Left-DRESS**.

927. The other divisions will ploy into column in the same manner as with a battalion in two ranks, observing what follows: the chiefs of division, instead of allowing their divisions to file past them on entering the column, will continue to lead them, and as each division shall arrive on a line with the right guide of the first division, its chief will halt the right guide, who will immediately face to the front; the first file of four men will also halt at the same time and face to the front, remaining doubled. The second file will close on the first, and when closed, halt, and face to the front, remaining doubled. All the other files will execute successively what has just been prescribed for the second. When the last file shall have closed, the chief of division will command, **Left-DRESS**.

928. If the battalion be in march, the colonel will command:

**1. To form square, in four ranks. 2. On the first division, form column. 3. Battalion, by the right flank. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

929. At the second command, each chief of division will step in front of the centre of his division and caution it to face by the right flank. The chief of the first division will caution his covering sergeant to halt, and remain faced to the front.

930. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the right; the covering sergeant of the first division will halt and remain faced to the front, the first division will then form into four ranks as heretofore prescribed. The other divisions will ploy into column in the same manner as if the movement had taken place from a halt.

931. If the colonel should wish to form a perpendicular square in four ranks, by double column, he will command:

**1. To form square, in four ranks. 2. Double column, at half distance. 3. Battalion, inwards-FACE. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

932. At the second command, the captains of companies will place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution those on the right to face to the left, and those on the left to face to the right. The captain of the fifth company will caution his covering sergeant to stand fast.

933. At the third command, the battalion will face to the left and right; at the command *march*, the left file of the fourth, and the right file of the fifth company, will face to the front, remaining doubled. The fourth company will close successively by file of fours on the left file, and the fifth company, in like manner, on the right file; the files will face to the front, remaining doubled. The formation completed, the chief of division will command, **Right dress**. The junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies.

934. The other companies will close as prescribed for the double column in two ranks, observing what follows: each captain will halt the leading guide of his company the moment the head of his company arrives on a line with the centre of the column. In the right companies, the left guides will step into the line of file closers,



and the left file of four men will face immediately to the front, remaining doubled, and by the side of the right guide of the left company. The companies will each form into four ranks, as prescribed No. 926, the right companies on the left file, and the left companies on the right file. The formation completed, the junior captain will place him-self between the two companies, and the senior will command, *Right dress*.

935. If the battalion be in march, the colonel will command:

**1. To form square, in four ranks. 2. Form double column. 2. Battalion by the right and left flanks. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

936. At the second command, the captains will place themselves, before the centres of their respective companies, and those on the right will caution them to face by the left flank, and those on the left to face by the right flank; the captain of the fifth company will caution his covering sergeant to halt, and remain faced to the front.

937. At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies will halt. The battalion will face to the left and right; the covering sergeant of the fifth company will halt and remain faced to the front, the movement will then be executed as if the battalion was at a halt.

### ***Oblique squares.***

938. The battalion being in line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to form the oblique square, he will command:

**1. To form oblique square. 2. On the first division form column.**

939. At the second command, the lieutenant colonel will trace the alignment of the first division a the following manner: he will place himself before and near the right file of this division, face to the left, march twelve paces along the front rank, halt, face to the right, march twelve paces perpendicularly to the front, halt again, face to the right, and immediately place a marker at this point. The covering sergeant of the right company will step, at the same time, before its right file, face to the left, and conform the line of his shoulders to that of the shoulders of the marker established by the lieutenant colonel. These two markers being established, the lieutenant colonel will place a third marker on the same alignments at the point where the left of the division will halt.

940. The chiefs of division will place themselves in front of the centres of their divisions; the chief of the first division will immediately establish it by a wheel to the right on a fixed pivot, against the markers, and aligns it by the left. The chiefs of the other divisions will caution them to face to the right. The colonel will then command:

**3. Battalion right-FACE. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).**

941. The three rear divisions will direct their march so as to place themselves at half distance from each other, and in the rear of the first division, as previously indicated, observing what follows:

942. The chief of the second division, instead of breaking the headmost files to the rear, will break them to the front, and at the command march, will conduct his division towards the point of entrance into the column. Arrived at this point, he will halt in his own person, cause his division to wheel by file to the right, instructing the right guide to direct himself parallelly to the first division; and as soon as the left file has passed, its chief will halt the division, and align it by the left. The other divisions will break to the rear, but slightly; each will enter the column as prescribed for the second, and the moment the battalion isployed into column, the colonel will cause it to form square.

943. The formation of a battalion into oblique square on the left division, will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

944. Should the battalion be in march, the colonel will first cause it to halt.

945. In the preceding example, the battalion was supposed to be deployed; but if it be already formed in column, the desired obliquity will be established by causing it to change direction by the flank; to this end, the colonel will command:

*1. To form oblique square. 2. Change direction by the right (or left) flank.*

946. At the second command, the lieutenant colonel will trace the new direction in the following manner; he will place before the right and left files of the headmost division, two markers, and a third on the prolongation of the first two, on the side of the change of direction, and at twelve paces from the flank of the column. He will then place himself before the third marker, march twelve paces perpendicularly to the front, halt, and finish tracing the new direction in the manner indicated, No. 939.

947. The colonel will then command:

*3. Battalion right (or left)-FACE. 4. MARCH (or double quick-MARCH).*

948. The change of direction having been executed, the colonel will cause the square to be formed.

949. Should the column be in march, the colonel will first cause it to halt.

950. Oblique squares in four ranks, will be executed by the same means, and according to the principles prescribed for the formation of squares in four ranks.

951. Whether the battalion be ployed into simple or double column, the particular dispositions for the formation of the square will be executed as prescribed No. 819 and following. The division which is to form the rear of the column, will be closed in mass, and as soon as it is aligned, the major will rectify the position of the guides on the side of the column opposite to the directions

952. If it be the wish of the colonel merely to prepare for square, he will in all formations with that view substitute the command prepare for square in place of to form square, and in that case, the last division will enter the column at company distance.

### **Remarks on the formation of squares.**

953. It is a general principle that a column by company, which is to be formed into square, will first form divisions, and close to half distance. Nevertheless, if it find itself suddenly threatened by cavalry without sufficient time to form divisions, the colonel will cause the column to close to platoon distance and then form square by the commands and means which have been indicated; the leading and rearmost companies will conform themselves to what has been prescribed for divisions in those positions. The other companies will form by platoon to the right and left into line of battle, and each chief of platoon, after having halted it, will place himself on the line, as if the platoon were a company and he will be covered by the guide in the rear rank.

954. A battalion in column at full distance, having to form square, will always close on the leading subdivision; and a column closed in mass, will always, for the same purpose, take distances by the head. In either case, the second subdivision should be careful, in taking its distance, to reckon from the rear rank of the subdivision in front of it.

955. If a column by company should be required to form square in four ranks, the doubling of files will always take place on the file next the guide.

956. When a column, disposed to form square, shall be in march, it will change direction as a column at half distance; thus, having to execute this movement, the column will take the guide on the side opposite to that to which the change of direction is to be made, if that be not already the side of the guide.

957. A column doubled on the centre at company distance or closed in mass, may be formed into square according to the same principles as a simple column.

958. When a battalion is ployed, with a view to the square, it will always be in rear of the right or left division, in order that it may be able to commence firing, pending the execution of the movement. The double column, also, affords this advantage, and being more promptly formed than any other, it will habitually be employed, unless particular circumstances cause a different formation to be preferred.

959. A battalion, in square, will never use any other than the fire by file and by rank; the color being in the line of file closers, its guard will not fall back as prescribed No. 41; it will fire like the men of the company of which it forms a part.

960. If the square be formed in four ranks, the first two ranks will alone execute the firings prescribed above; the other two ranks will remain either at shoulder or support arms.

961. The formation of the square being often necessary in war, and being the most complicated of the manoeuvres, it will be as frequently repeated as the supposed necessity may require, in order to render its mechanism familiar to both officers and men.

962. In the execution of this manoeuvre, the colonel will carefully observe that the divers movements which it involves succeed each other without loss of time, but also without confusion; for, if the rapidity of cavalry movements requires the greatest promptitude in the formation of squares, so, on the other hand, precipitancy always results in disorder, and in no circumstance is disorder more to be avoided.

963. When the colonel shall wish to cover by skirmishers the movements of a column preparing to form square, he will detach for this purpose one or two inner platoons of one of the interior divisions of the column. In this case, the exterior platoons of this division and the following subdivisions, will, according to circumstances, close on the preceding subdivision, in such manner, that there may be between them only the distance necessary for forming into line.

964. When the colonel shall be ready to form square, he will, in order to recall the skirmishers, cause the color to be sounded. If on the return of the skirmishers, there be not room for them to form into line of battle, they will double on the outer platoons of their respective companies.

### *Column against cavalry.*

965. When a column closed in mass has to form square, it will begin by taking company distance; but if so suddenly threatened by cavalry as not to allow time for this disposition, it will be formed in the following manner:

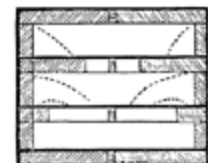
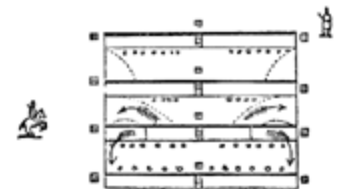
966. The colonel will command:

#### *1. Column against cavalry. 2. MARCH.*

967. At the first command, the chief of the leading division will caution it to stand fast and pass behind the rear rank; in the interior divisions each captain will promptly designate the number of files necessary to close the interval between his company and the one in front of it. The captains of the divisions next to the one in rear, in addition to closing the interval in front, will also close up the interval which separates this division from the last; the chief of the fourth division will caution it to face about, and its file closers will pass briskly before the front rank.

968. At the command march, the guides of each division will place themselves rapidly in the line of file closers. The first division will stand fast, the fourth will face about, the outer file of each of these divisions will then face outwards; in the other divisions the files designated for closing the intervals will form to the right and left into line, but in the division next to the rearmost one, the first files that come into line will close to the right or left until they join the rear division. The files of each company which remain in column will close on their outer files, formed into line, in order to create a vacant space in the middle of the column.

969. If the column be in march, the column against cavalry will be formed by the



*Column against Cavalry*

same commands and means. At the command *march*, the first and fourth divisions will halt and the latter division will face about; the interior divisions will conform to what has been prescribed above.

970. The battalion being no longer threatened by cavalry, the colonel will command:

***1. Form column. 2. MARCH.***

971. At the command *march*, the files in column will close to the left and right to make room for those in line who will retake their places in column by stepping backwards, except those closing the interval between the two rear divisions, who will take their places in column by a flank movement. The fourth division will face about, the guides will resume their places.

972. If the colonel should be so pressed as not to have time to order bayonets to be fixed, the men will fix them, without command or signal, at the cautionary command, *column against cavalry*.

973. As this manoeuvre is often used in war, and with decided advantage, the colonel will frequently cause it to be executed in order to render it familiar.

***ARTICLE FIFTEENTH.***

***To rally.***

974. The battalion being in line of battle, the colonel will sometimes cause the disperse to be sounded, at which signal, the battalion will break and disperse.

975. When the colonel shall wish to rally the battalion, he will cause *To the Color* to be sounded, and at the same time place two markers and the color-bearer in the direction he may wish to give the battalion.

976. Each captain will rally his company about six paces in rear of the place it is to occupy in line of battle.

977. The colonel will cause the color-company to be promptly established against the markers, and each company by the command of its captain will be aligned on the color-company according to the principles heretofore prescribed.

978. When the colonel shall wish to rally the battalion in column, he will cause the assembly to be sounded, and place two markers before the position to be occupied by the first company; the captain of this company will rally his company in rear of the two markers, and each of the other captains will rally his company at platoon distance, behind the one which should precede it in the order in column.

***ARTICLE SIXTEENTH.***

***Rules for manoeuvring by the rear rank.***

979. It may often be necessary to cause a battalion to manoeuvre by the rear rank; when the case presents itself, the following rules will be observed.

980. The battalion being by the front rank, when the colonel shall wish to manoeuvre by the rear rank, he will command:

***1. Face by the rear rank. 2. Battalion. 3. About-FACE.***

981. If the battalion be deployed, this movement will be executed as has been indicated for the fire by the rear rank.

982. If the battalion be in column by company, or by platoon, right or left in front, the chiefs of subdivision, to take their new places in column, will each pass by the left flank of his subdivision, and the file closers by the right flank; the guides will place themselves in the rear rank.

983. If the column be formed by division, the chiefs of division will each pass by the interval in the centre of his division, and the file closers by the outer flanks of their respective companies; the junior captain in each division will step into the rear rank, and be covered in the front rank by the covering sergeant of the left company.

984. The lieutenant colonel will place himself abreast with the leading subdivision, and the major abreast with the rear most one.

985. The battalion being faced by the rear rank, companies, divisions, and wings, will preserve their prior denominations respectively.

986. The manoeuvres by the rear rank will be executed by the same commands and on the same principles as if the battalion faced by the front rank; but in such manner that when the battalion shall be brought to its proper front, all the subdivisions may find themselves in their regular order from right to left.

987. According to this principle, when a column faced by the rear rank is deployed, the subdivisions which, in line of battle by the front rank, ought to find themselves on the right of the subdivision on which the deployment is made, will face to the left; and those which ought to be placed on its left, will face to the right.

988. When a battalion in line of battle, faced by the rear rank, is to be ployed into column, the colonel will announce, in the commands, left or right in front, according as it may be intended that the first or last subdivision shall be at the head of the column, because the first subdivision is on the left, and the last on the right of the battalion faced by the rear rank. The column by the rear rank will take the guide to the right, if the first subdivision be in front, and to the left in the reverse case.

989. A column, faced by the rear rank, will be brought to its proper front by the means heretofore prescribed. If the column be formed by company, or by platoon, the chiefs of subdivision, in order to take their new places in column, will pass by the left of subdivisions, now right, and the file closers by the right, now left.

---

*SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION: ARRANGED INTO LESSONS*

---

LESSON FIRST.

ARTICLE I.-Open ranks, No. 23.

ARTICLE II.-Close ranks, No. 29.

ARTICLE III.-Manual of arms, No. 30. Loading at will, No. 31.

ARTICLE IV.-Different fires by the front rank, No. 39, and by the rear rank, No. 54.

LESSON SECOND.

ARTICLE I.-Break by company to the right, No. 69, or to the left, No. 74.

ARTICLE II.-March in column, at the cadenced step, a considerable distance, No. 164. Change of direction, No. 231. Diminish and increase front in marching, No. 196. March in retreat, No. 170.

ARTICLE III.-Halt the column, No. 239. Form it to the left or right into line of battle, No. 390. Execute this formation, the column marching, No. 402.

ARTICLE IV.-Execute the countermarch, and repeat the same movements, No. 351..

ARTICLE V.-Form column into line of battle, to the right or left, by inversion, No. 407..

LESSON THIRD.

ARTICLE I.-Break by company to the rear by the right or left, the battalion being at a halt, No. 87, or marching, No. 94.

ARTICLE II.-March in the route step, No. 198. Cause to be executed, at this gait and in double quick

time, the divers movements incident to the column in route, and cause the cadenced step to be resumed.

ARTICLE III.-Form the column forward into line of battle, Nos. 440, 452, faced to the rear into line of battle, Nos. 466, 480, the battalion being at a halt or marching. Form the column forward into line, and continue the march in this order, No. 456.

ARTICLE IV.-Form the column on the right, No. 416, or the left, No. 432, into line of battle.

ARTICLE V.-March by the flank, No. 722, and form companies into line, marching.

ARTICLE VI.-The column supposed to arrive before, No. 175, or behind the line of battle, No. 184, to prolong it on that line.

ARTICLE VII.-Change front forward, No. 743, or in rear, No. 760, on the right or left of companies, in directions perpendicular or oblique.

ARTICLE VIII.-March by the right flank, No. 722, or by the left flank, No. 725. Change direction by file, No. 730. Form the battalion into line of battle, on the right or left by file, No. 735.

ARTICLE IX.-Pass the defile in retreat by the right, No. 709, or by the left flank, No. 720.

#### LESSON FOURTH.

ARTICLE I.-Break by division to the rear, by the right or left, the battalion being at a halt or marching, No. 102.

ARTICLE II.-March in column by division, No. 161. Diminish and increase front by company, No. 196. ARTICLE III.-Close the column to half distance on the headmost or the rearmost division, No. 278.

ARTICLE IV.-March in column at half distance No. 281, and change direction, No. 287.

ARTICLE V.-The column being at half distance, to form square at a halt, No. 817, or marching, No. 837.

ARTICLE VI.-The battalion being in square, to march to the front, No. 854. Halt the square, No. 860. Form column to march to the front, No. 863, or in retreat, No. 872. Re-form the square, No. 875.

ARTICLE VII.-Reduce the square, No. 883.

ARTICLE VIII.-Close the column in mass on the headmost or rearmost division, No. 279.

ARTICLE IX.-March in column closed in mass, and change direction by the front of subdivisions, No. 288.

ARTICLE X.-Form the column against cavalry, No. 966.

ARTICLE XI.-Take distances by the head, Nos. 323 and 830, or on rear of the column, No. 333, the column being at a halt or marching.

ARTICLE XII.-The column being by company, cause to be executed the movements indicated in Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11 of this lesson. The column being at half distance, or closed in mass, to form to the left or right, into line, wheel, on the rear of the column No. 602..

ARTICLE XIII.-The column being by company, form divisions from a halt, No. 364, or in march, No. 376.

ARTICLE XIV.-The column being by division, to form it to the left or right into line of battle at a halt, No. 401, or in march, No. 402.

#### LESSON FIFTH.

ARTICLE I.-The battalion being in line of battle, and at a halt to ploy it by division into column closed in mass on the right division, No. 119, or on the left division, No. 141, or on an interior division, No. 143, the right or left in front. Ploy the battalion marching in line of battle on the right or left division, No. 149.

ARTICLE II.-Execute the countermarch, No. 352.

ARTICLE III.-Change direction to the right, No. 307, to the left, No. 313, by the flank of the column.

ARTICLE IV.-Deploy the column on the right division, No. 514, on the left division, No. 541, or on any interior division, the column being at a halt, or marching, No. 563.

ARTICLE V.-Ploy the battalion into column by division at half distance, marching, No. 556.

ARTICLE VI.-Ploy the battalion by company, closed in mass, and form it on the right or left into line of battle, No. 577.

ARTICLE VII.-Ploy the battalion into double column, at half distance, No. 777, or closed in mass, No. 793, the battalion being at a halt, or marching.

ARTICLE VIII.-March in this order, and change direction, No. 794.

ARTICLE IX.-Deploy the column at a halt, No. 796, or marching, No. 800, and without suspending the march, No. 802.

ARTICLE X.-The double column being at half distance, form it into line of battle faced to the right or left, No. 803, the column being in march, No. 807. Execute the same movement without suspending the march, No. 81.

ARTICLE XI.-Perpendicular or parallel squares, the battalion being deployed, Nos. 889, 895. Oblique squares, the battalion being in line of battle, No. 938, or in column, No. 945. Squares in four ranks, No. 911.

#### LESSON SIXTH.

ARTICLE I.-March in line of battle, No. 587. Halt the battalion, No. 635, and align it, No. 640.

ARTICLE II.-Change direction in line of battle, advancing, No. 652, or in retreat, No. 681. Execute passage of obstacles, No. 682.

ARTICLE III.-Oblique march in line of battle, No. 623.

ARTICLE IV.-Disperse and rally the battalion in line of battle, No. 974, and rally the battalion in column by company, No. 978.

***REMARKS ON THE SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.***

- In every course of instruction, the first lesson will be executed several times in the order in which it is arranged; but as soon as the battalion shall be confirmed in the principles of the lesson, the fires will be executed after the advance in line, and after the various formations into line of battle, and into square. Particular attention will be given to the fire by file, which is that principally used in war.

- Every lesson of this school will be executed with the utmost precision; but the second, which comprehends the march in column, and the march in line of battle, being of the most importance, will be the oftenest repeated, especially in the beginning.

- Great attention ought, also, to be given to the fourth lesson, which comprehends the march in column by division, and the dispositions against cavalry.

- The successive formations will sometimes be executed by inversion.

- In the beginning, the march in column, the march in line of battle, and the march by the flank, will be executed only in quick time, and will be continued until the battalion shall have become well established in the cadence of this step.

- The non-cadenced step will be employed in this school only in the repetition of the movements incident to a column in route, or when great celerity may be required. When it may be desired to give the men relief, arms may be supported, if at a halt, or marching by the flank.

- In marching by the front, arms may be shifted to the right shoulder; but not in the march in line of battle until the battalions shall be well instructed.

- After arms have been carried for some time on the right shoulder, they may be shifted, in like manner, to the left shoulder.

- When a battalion is manoeuvring, its movements will be covered by skirmishers.

- All the companies will be exercised, successively, in this service.

- When a battalion, instructed in this drill, shall be required to manoeuvre in the evolutions of the line, its movements will be regulated by the instructions contained in the third volume of the Tactics for Heavy Infantry, approved by the War Department, April 10th 1835.

(BY AUTHORITY.)





**INFANTRY TACTICS;**  
**OR,**  
**RULES FOR THE EXERCISE AND**  
**MANEUVRE**  
**OF THE**  
**UNITED STATES INFANTRY.**

*NEW EDITION.*

*BY MAJOR-GENERAL SCOTT,*  
*U.S. ARMY.*

**VOL. III.**

**EVOLUTIONS OF THE LINE.**

NEW YORK:

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,~  
329 & 331 PEARL STREET,

FRANKLIN SQUARE

1861.

# The Capitol Guards Drill Manual

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1840, by  
WINFIELD SCOTT,  
In the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New York.

# INFANTRY TACTICS

---

## TITLE V.

# Evolutions of the Line.

### *General principles, and divisions of the Evolutions of the Line.*

1715.\* The School of the Battalion apprehending the principles and details of all the movements that ought, in any case, to be made by a single battalion, it remains to apply those principles to a line of many battalions.

1716. In this instruction, a line of eight battalions, making a *corps d'armee* of two divisions or four brigades, will be supposed but the rules herein prescribed are equally applicable to a brigade, a division, or any number of battalions.

1717. The School of the Battalion has been divided into five parts: the same division will herein be observed.

1718. As often as one or more brigades or divisions, united in the same line, manoeuvre together, each battalion will be designated by its number, according to its position in the line. The battalion on the right of the whole will be denominated first, that next on its left second, the following one third, and so regularly on to the battalion that closes the left of the line.

**Paragraph Numbers: Evolutions of the Line** is the third volume of General Scott's 1835 infantry tactics - so all references to paragraphs numbered lower than 1715 refer to **Scott's School of the Battalion**, etc. .. not to Hardee's. This problem was noted at the time by both the officers of the antebellum U.S. and the Confederate armies; The U.S. Army solved this in 1862 with the publication of Silas Casey's tactics manual in three consistent volumes, the third addressing formations at brigade and higher level. The Confederates continued to refer to **Evolutions of the Line** throughout the War.

### *Posts of the General-in-chief, of the Major Generals and Brigadier Generals, in Line and in Column.*

1719. In line of battle, the general (that is, the particular general-in-chief) will have no fixed position; he will go whithersoever he may judge his presence necessary.

1720. In column, he will hold himself habitually at its head, in order to direct it according to his view.

1721. In the evolutions, he will place himself at the point whence he can best direct the general execution of the movement.

1722. In all cases the general may throw himself wheresoever he may judge his presence necessary, taking care to leave in his habitual position the next in command, or the chief of his staff charged with the execution of his orders.

1723. In line of battle, major generals (generals of division) will place themselves at about seventy paces in rear of the centres of their divisions.

1724. In column, they will hold themselves or the directing flank, abreast with the centres of their divisions, and at thirty or forty paces from the guides.

1725. In line of battle, brigadier generals (generals of brigade) will place themselves at about forty paces in rear of the centres of their brigades.

1726. In column, they will hold themselves at fifteen or twenty paces outside of the guides, abreast with the centres of their brigades.

1727. Major generals and brigadier generals will look to the exact and regular execution of all commands coming from the general, or given by themselves; accordingly, they may throw themselves wheresoever they may judge their presence necessary within the extent of their divisions or brigades.

1728. The posts of the field and staff of battalions have been given in Titles I and

\*The paragraphs of this volume are numbered in the same series with the first and second volumes.

## IV.

***General rules for commands.***

1729. When the general shall wish to cause a movement to be executed, he will give the general commands relative thereto. Each colonel will always successively repeat, with the greatest rapidity, on their reaching him, those general commands, unless the general has given, or sent to him, an order to the contrary.

1730. The colonels having repeated the general commands, as just prescribed, will immediately command, and cause to be executed, without waiting for each other, the preparatory movements which, in their battalions, ought to precede the execution of the general movement.

1731. The brigadier and major generals will look to the prompt execution of these preparatory movements in their brigades and divisions, and rectify any error that may be committed by the colonels.

1732. The final command, or that which determines the execution of the general movement, will always be given by the general.

1733. The lieutenant colonels and majors will repeat the general commands, whether of caution or of execution, as often as the wind or the noise of arms may prevent those commands from being easily heard from one battalion to another.

1734. When, from any cause, a colonel shall not have heard the general command, he will, on seeing the battalion next to his own executing a movement, immediately cause his battalion to execute the same movement.

1735. When a line has to execute a central movement, the general will throw himself to the point which he may select for it, and give or send to each of the neighbouring battalions the order relative to the movement which each portion of the line has to execute, as hereinafter explained.

1736. In column, commands will be extended, by repetition, according to the same principles.

1737. As often as a line breaks into several columns, the senior general officer or colonel, in each, will discharge the duties attributed above to the general or general-in-chief

**PART FIRST.****ARTICLE I.****To open and to close ranks.**

1738. The general, wishing to cause ranks to be opened, will command:

***1. Prepare to open ranks.***

1739. This having been repeated, the lieutenant colonels and majors will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 791; the colonels will immediately command: ***To the rear, open order.*** The general will then add:

***2. March.***

1740. At this, briskly repeated, ranks will be opened in conformity to what is prescribed, School of the Battalion. Each battalion will execute the movement as if it were isolated; accordingly it need not be attempted to align the centre or rear rank of one battalion on that of other battalions.

1741. The general will cause ranks to be closed by the commands prescribed, School of the Battalion.

**ARTICLE II.****Manual of Arms.**

1742. The manual of arms will never be executed in line.

**ARTICLE III.****Loading at will, and the Firings.**

1743. In line, only loading at will will be executed.

1744. The general, wishing to cause arms to be loaded, will command:

*1. Prepare to load.*

1745. This having been repeated, the general will add:

*2. Load.*

1746. This, immediately repeated, will be executed as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1747. The general wishing to cause the fires to be executed, will command:

*1. Fire by battalion (or wing, or company.)*

1748. This having been repeated, the general will add:

*2. Commence firing.*

1749. The fire by battalion will commence in the odd numbered battalions. The command commence firing, having been repeated by all the colonels, those of the odd battalions will immediately give the commands prescribed, School of the Battalion, for the execution of this particular fire.

1750. The colonels of even numbered battalions will not give their first command until they see some pieces brought back to the shoulder in the odd battalion to their right; the colonels of the odd battalions, in their turn, will observe the same rule in respect to the even battalion next to the left of each, and the fire will thus be continued by alternate battalions.

1751. The fire by wing will be executed in each battalion, as prescribed, School of the Battalion; each colonel having repeated the command *commence firing*, will immediately give the commands indicated for the execution of this fire, without regulating himself by the next battalion.

1752. The fire by company will be executed as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1753. The fire of two ranks (or by file) will be executed in the following manner; the general will command:

*1. Fire by two ranks (or by file.)*

1754. This having been repeated, each colonel will add: *1. Battalion; 2. READY.* The general will then command:

*2. Commence firing.*

1755. At this, repeated by the colonels, the fire of the two ranks (or by file) will commence, and be executed as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1756. The general will cause each of the foregoing fires to cease by a very short roll, which will be repeated by the drums of each battalion the moment it is heard. As soon as each battalion reloads, its colonel will give the signal for the tap on the drum for the return of captains and covering sergeants to their places in line of battle.

1757. The general, wishing to cause the fires to be executed by the rear rank, will command:

*1. Face by the rear rank.*

1758. This having been repeated, the colonels will immediately add: **1. Battalion; 2. About—FACE.**

1759. The general will then cause the several fires to be executed by the commands and means prescribed above.

1760. The general having caused the firing by the rear rank to cease, and wishing to bring the line back to its proper front, will command:

*1. Face by the front rank.*

1761. The colonels, having repeated this command, will each immediately add: **1. Battalion, About—FACE.**

### **To Rest**

1762. The general, wishing to give relaxation to the line, will command:

*1. Prepare to rest.*

1763. This having been repeated, the general will continue:

*2. Order—ARMS.*

1764. This having been repeated and executed, at will add:

*3. In place, rest (or, simply, rest.)*

1765. This will be executed as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1766. If, after arms are ordered, the general wishes to cause arms to be stacked, he will command:

*Stack arms.*

1767. This having been repeated, the colonels will cause the stacks to be formed; which being executed, each will immediately cause ranks to be broken, without regulating himself by any other colonel, in the manner prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1768. The general, wishing to terminate the relaxation, will cause a short roll to be given which will be repeated by all the drums of the line, at the instant it is heard.

1769. The roll having ceased, the colonels will each command: **BATTALION**, at which the men will resume the fixed position of ordered arms; if arms be stacked, the colonels will cause the men to take arms before giving the command **BATTALION**.

1770. The general will then command

*Shoulder—Arms.*

1771. This having been repeated, the line will shoulder arms.

**PART SECOND.****Different modes of passing from the order in battle to the order in column.****ARTICLE I.****To break to the front, to the right or left, into column.**

1772. The general wishing to cause the line to break by company or by division, will command:

*1. By company (or by division) right (or left) wheel.*

1773. This having been repeated, the general will add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1774. At this, briskly repeated, the line will break according to the principles given, School of the Battalion.

1775. In that School it has been prescribed that, the companies having broken, the guides shall stand fast at the command front, given by their captains, although one or more may not be in the direction of the preceding guides; this rule will be observed from one battalion to another, in columns composed of many battalions: thus, the leading guide of one battalion will not stir after the command front given by his captain, although he may not be in the direction of the guides of the preceding battalion; it is when the column shall be put in march, that the guides, who do not cover in file, will insensibly bring themselves on the direction so that each may march in the trace of the one next preceding him.

1776. The general, wishing to cause the line to break to the front, to the right, to march towards the left, will command:

*1. Break to the right to march to the left.*

1777. This having been repeated, the colonel on the right will cause his battalion to commence the movement, which will be executed as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1778. The following battalions will successively make the same movement, the colonels will seize the moment for causing their battalions to break, and each will be put in march, so that there may be, between its leading subdivision and the rearmost one of the preceding battalion, the distance of a subdivision and twenty-two paces. The right subdivision of each battalion will march forward twice the extent of its front, whilst the others are wheeling to the right.

1779. The general will cause the line to break to the left, to march to the right, according to the same principles.

***To break to the rear, by the right or left, into column.***

1780. The general, wishing to cause the line to break to the rear into column by company, or by division, will command:

*1. By the right (or left) of companies (or divisions) to the rear, into column.*

1781. The colonels, having repeated this command, will immediately add:

Battalion, right (or left)—FACE.

1782. The general will then command:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1783. At this, briskly repeated, each battalion will break as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

**ARTICLE III.**

**To ploy the line into close column or in mass.**

1784. The general, wishing to ploy the line into column by division closed in mass, in rear of the first division of the first battalion, will command:

*1. Close column by division. 2. On the first division, first battalion, right in front, into column.*

1785. (Pl. XXXIX, figs. 1, 2.) These commands having been repeated, each colonel will add: *battalion, right—FACE*, which will be executed by the designated or directing battalion, as prescribed, No. 871, and following; but in the others, all the divisions will face to the right, and the chief of the first division, in each of these battalions, will place himself by the side of his right guide.

1786. These dispositions being made, the general will add:

*5. Quick—MARCH.*

1787. At this, briskly repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will ploy it in rear of its first division, as indicated, No. 873, and following.

1788. Each of the other colonels will, in like manner, ploy his battalion from a halt, in rear of its right division; but, pending the execution of the movement, this division will stand faced to the flank: the second and third divisions, each conducted by its chief, will be halted as it successively takes its place in the battalion column, the chief remaining by the side of his right guide; the fourth will enter in like manner, and when its head shall be at eight or ten paces from the right flank of the column, the colonel will command: *1. Battalion, forward; 2. Guide left*, and *3. March*, at the moment the right guide of this division is abreast with the others.

1789. At the command march, each battalion thus formed in mass will put itself in march, directing itself to the rear towards its point of entrance into the general column; its first division, conducted by the lieutenant colonel, will take the shortest line towards that point; the other divisions will each conform its movement to that of the first, marching abreast with it, and preserving exactly the distance of six (or five) paces from one guide to the next; arrived at twelve or fourteen paces from the general column, the first division will incline a little to the left, so as to enter the column perpendicularly, and leave a distance of nine paces between its guide and the guide of the last division of the preceding battalion; the other divisions will direct themselves parallelly to the first, and enter successively into the general column. The chiefs of division being up with the left guides of the column, will each halt in his own person, see his division file past, and conform himself, in halting and aligning it, to what is prescribed Nos. 875-7.

1790. The lieutenant colonel of each battalion will detach himself thirty or forty paces in advance, to indicate the point of entrance into the column for his first division, and as each of his guides successively arrives, he will assure him on the direction.

1791. The general, or officer charged with the execution of his orders, will place



himself in front of the left guide of the directing division, to superintend the formation of the general column, and to see that the left guides accurately cover each other in file. This rule is general for all ployments, whatever the division on which they may be executed.

1792. The line will be played in front by the same commands, substituting the indication left for right in front.

1793. In this case, the first battalion will execute the movement in the manner indicated, No. 883, and following.

1794. The other battalions will each execute the movement in like manner, conforming itself to what follows: the first division, which will have faced to the right with the others, will re-main by the flank whilst the battalion is plying in front of it; the second and third, after having taken position in the battalion column, will be halted by their chiefs, who will remain by the sides of their right guides, and when the head of the fourth shall be at eight or ten paces from the right flank of the column, the colonel, observing the order of time indicated, No. 1788, will command: **1. Battalion, forward; 2. Guide right; 8. MARCH.**

1795. At the command *march*, each battalion, directing itself diagonally to the front, instead of to the rear, will be conducted and established in the general column, with slight variations, as prescribed, No. 1789; arrived at twelve or fourteen paces from the flank of that column, the head of the first division will incline to the right, instead of the left, in order to enter perpendicularly, and to sake its distance of nine paces; the other divisions will conform themselves to the movement of the first, and the chiefs of the whole will each conduct his division till its head is nearly up with the right guides of the general column; he will then halt his division, face it to the front, and align it by the right, its right guide having faced to the rear in placing himself on the direction.

1796. The lieutenant colonels will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 1790.

1797. As each battalion takes its position in the column in front of the directing division, its colonel will command: **guides, about—FACE.**

1798. To ploy the line in rear, or in front of the fourth (or last) division of the eighth battalion, the general will command:

**1. Close column by division. 2. On the fourth division, eighth battalion, left (or right) in front, into column. 3. Quick—MARCH.**

1799. These movements will be executed according to the principles given in the two preceding cases but by inverse means: the fourth (or last) division of each subordinate battalion, being the first to take its position in the general column, it will be conducted by the lieutenant colonel, and the other divisions will regulate themselves by it.

1800. If, instead of plying the line on the first division, right battalion, or the last division of the left, as in all the preceding cases, the general wishes to execute the movement on the first or last division of any other battalion, he will command:

**1. Close column by division. 2. On the first (or fourth) division (such) battalion, right (or left) in front into column. 3. Quick—MARCH.**

1801. (P1 XXXIX, figs. 1, 2.) Whether the right or left is to be in front, the designated or directing battalion will execute its movement as if it were alone.

1802. If the right is to be in front, all the battalions in line to the right of the directing one will execute the movement as is indicated for plying the line to the front on the left division, and the left battalions will execute the movement as is indicated for plying to the rear, on the right division. If the left of the line is to be at the head of the column, the right battalions will conform themselves to what is prescribed for plying the line to the rear, on the left division, and the other battalions to what is prescribed for plying to the front on the right division.

1803. If the directing battalion ploys on the first, or last division, the battalion contiguous to the directing division will execute its movement on this division: accordingly, the last or first division of the contiguous battalion, instead of remaining at a halt, will, at the commencement of the movement, file into the general column, at nine paces in front or rear of the directing division.

***Remarks on plying a line into column closed in mass.***

1804. In the several ployments, the general will take, in preference, as the directing division, that of the right or left of the battalion, on which the movement is to be executed.

1805. This method of plying a line into column unites several advantages: first, it maintains, pending the execution of the movement, the battalions in all their strength, as each forms a separate mass; second, it occupies the least possible time, as each battalion moves over the shortest line to its place in the general column

**PART THIRD.**

**ARTICLE I.**

**To march in column at full distance.**

1806. The general, wishing to put the column in march, will indicate to the colonel of the leading battalion the direction to be taken by the headmost guide and the colonel will immediately prescribe to this guide the means to be employed to ensure the direction of the march, according to the principles established, Nos. 902-4.

1807. These dispositions being made, the general will command:

***1. Column, forward.***

1808. The colonels having repeated this command, will immediately add: ***guide left***, if the right be in front, or ***guide right***, if the left be in front.

1809. The general will then add:

***2. Quick—MARCH.***

1810. At this, repeated with the greatest rapidity, the column will put itself in march.

1811. The guide of the leading subdivision will maintain himself on the direction which has been indicated to him, by the means prescribed, School of the Battalion, and the following guides each march in the trace of the one who immediately precedes him, without regard to the general direction.

1812. The lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion will see that the headmost guide does not deviate from the direction he ought to pursue, and the same officer of each following battalion will also see that his leading guide preserves a distance equal to the front of his subdivision and twenty-two paces, which ought to separate the battalions.

1813. When a column has to prolong its march on a given line in order to form upon it to the left (or right) into line of battle, the general will always cause that line to be marked by one of the means prescribed, Nos. 929—80. The colours and general guides will throw themselves out on that line.

1814. If, in this case, the column arrive in front or in rear of the line of battle, the general will detach, in advance, two aides-de-camp, or other mounted officers, to ascertain the intermediate points between the points of direction to the right and left;

the intermediate being found, one of those officers will place himself on the line at the point at which the head of the column will arrive, and the column will conform itself to what is prescribed, No. 914, and following, or No. 928, and following.

1815. The means of finding the intermediate between two given points of direction, have been indicated, No. 1119, and following.

## ARTICLE II.

### Column in route.

1816. The column being at a halt, if the general wish to put in march in the route step, he will give the commands prescribed for the march in the cadenced step, with this difference—the command *march* will be preceded by that of *route step*, which will be repeated by the colonels.

1817. The column being in march, the general, in order to cause it to pass from the cadenced to the route step, and the reverse, will give the commands prescribed, Nos. 725, 728.

1818. All the principles relative to columns in route having been developed in the Schools of the Company and Battalion, it only remains to add here that, when a column of many battalions encounters a defile, which obliges it to diminish the front of subdivisions, this movement will only be made as each battalion successively arrives on the ground at which the preceding battalion had executed it.

1819. Thus, for example, a column formed by company, encountering a defile which will only receive the front of a platoon, the colonel of the leading battalion will at once, or successively, according to the order of the general, diminish front by platoon: but the colonel of the, next battalion will not repeat the commands of the preceding colonel until his battalion arrives at the same point, and so on of the others.

1820. The chief of the column will take care to regulate the rate of the march according to the ground and other circumstances; he will always leave with the rear of the column an aide-de-camp, to bring him prompt intelligence in it find a difficulty in following.

## ARTICLE III.

### To change direction in column at full distance.

1821. The general, wishing to cause the column to change direction, will despatch an aide-de-camp to the point of change, and give notice of his purpose to the leading colonel a little before arriving at that point.

1822. The change of direction will be executed according to the principles prescribed, No. 978, and following.

1823. Those rules will be observed in columns in manoeuvre, although marching, at the moment, in the route step.

## ARTICLE IV.

### To halt the column.

1824. The general, wishing to halt the column, will command:

*1. Column.*

1825. This having been repeated, he will add:

*2. Halt.*

1826. This will be repeated with the greatest rapidity.

1827. The column being halted, if the general wish to form it to the left (or right) into line of battle he will assure the direction of the guides in the following manner.

1828. If the general direction of the column is nearly in conformity with his wishes, he will confine himself to rectifying the positions of such guides as may be without, or within, the direction; to this end he will command:

*Guides, cover in file.*

1829. At this, repeated by the colonels, the lieutenant colonels and majors will promptly cause the guides who may not be on the direction to cover each other accurately in file.

1830. If, on the contrary, the general should think it necessary to give a new direction, and the general guides be not on the flank of the column, he (or a substitute) will throw himself fifteen or twenty paces in front of the head, place himself, facing to the rear, on the direction which he may wish to give to the guides, select in rear of the column the second point which determines that direction, and promptly establish on it the leading general guide, and the colour-bearer of the same battalion; this being executed, the general will command:

*1. Colours and general guides on the line.*

1831. At this, the colour-bearers and general guides will throw themselves on the flank of the column, and cover accurately the headmost two who have just been established by the general; the lieutenant colonels and majors will promptly assure (See No. 880) on the direction the general guides of their respective battalions.

1832. The general, seeing all the colours and general guides of the column correctly established on the direction, will immediately add:

*2. Guides, on the line.*

1833. At this, briskly repeated, the left guides, if the right of the column be in front, or the right guides, in the reverse case, will throw themselves on the direction of the colours, facing to the head of the column; the lieutenant colonel of each battalion, placed some paces in front, and facing to the headmost guide, will assure the direction of the guides of its leading wing, and the major, from a point in the rear of his battalion, will assure, in like manner, the remaining guides of the same battalion.

1834. The guides of subdivision, in throwing themselves on the direction of the colours, will each align himself correctly on the colour-lances which precede him, and not on the subdivision guides in his front; he will, moreover, take care to place himself exactly at subdivision distance from the guide next in front. Each colour-bearer will told up his lance perpendicularly between his eyes.

1835. The subdivision guides being established on the direction, the colonels, without waiting for each other, will immediately command: left (or right)—DRESS.

1836. At this, briskly repeated by the chiefs of subdivision, each subdivision will incline to its guide and be promptly aligned. If the new direction be such that a subdivision find itself many paces from it, the chief of the subdivision will cause it to march by the flank.

1837. If the general guides be on the flank of the column, the general will first place himself behind the colour-bearer of the leading battalion, to see whether this

colour-bearer and the preceding general guide are accurately on the prolongation of the two points in front upon which they had marched, and, if necessary, to rectify their positions: the general will then throw himself in front, and face to the leading general guide; if the colours and general guides are not exactly on the direction, he will command:

*1. Colours and general guides, cover in file.*

1838. At this, the lieutenant colonels will promptly cause the colour and general guides of their respective battalions to cover those of the preceding battalions; after which, the general will add:

*2. Guides, on the line.*

1839. This will be executed and followed up in the manner indicated Nos. 1833—36.

## ARTICLE V.

### **To close the column to half distance, or in mass.**

1840. Whether the column of many battalions be formed by company or by division, the distance between battalions, when the subdivisions are at half wheeling distance from each other, will be equal to the front of a subdivision; the distance between battalions will be reduced to nine paces, measured from the first guide of following battalion to the last guide of the battalion immediately preceding, when the battalions are closed in mass.

*1st To close the column on the leading company.*

1841. A column by company, at full distance and right in front, being in march, when the general shall wish to close it to platoon distance, he will command:

*1. To half distance, close column.*

1842. This having been repeated, the general will add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1843. At the command march, the headmost battalion will close up to platoon distance on its leading company, as prescribed, No. 993, and following.

1844. The other battalions will continue to march; when the leading company of the second battalion is at company distance from the rearmost company of the first battalion, its captain will halt it and align it by the left: the other companies of this battalion will close up on the leading one, and the following battalions will conform themselves to what is just prescribed for the second.

1845. The lieutenant colonel of the first battalion will assure the positions of the guides as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1846. The lieutenant colonel of each following battalion will throw himself in advance to the point at which his leading company ought to be halted, and he will assure the positions of the guides by placing himself in rear of each as the companies are successively closed.

1847. If the column, instead of being in march, be at a halt, the general will cause it to close by the same commands. At the word *march*, the leading subdivision will stand fast; all the others will put themselves in movement, and the battalions will close up as just prescribed for a column in march.

**3d. To close the column on the rearmost company.**

1848. The column being at a halt, the general, if he wish to close it to half distance on the rearmost company, will command:

*On (such company,) eighth battalion, to half distance, close column.*

1849. This having been repeated, each colonel will command: **1. Battalion, about—FACE; 2. Column, forward; 3. Guide right.**

1850. At the first command of its colonel, the battalion will face about; each guide will remain abreast with the front rank, become the rear; the rearmost company of the eighth battalion will remain faced to the front.

1851. At the third command, the captains of the eighth battalion will throw themselves two paces outside of their guides; those of the other battalions will remain behind the centres of their companies.

1852. The general will then add:

**2. Quick—MARCH.**

1853. At the command march, the eighth battalion will close on its rearmost company as prescribed, No. 1004.

1854. The other battalions will close on the eighth, and when the colonel of the seventh sees that the grenadiers (or it may be, the first company) of the eighth battalion has only a few paces left to take, he will command: captains, on the flank of the column. At this, the captains of the seventh battalion will throw themselves outside of their guides; when the light infantry (or, it may be, the eighth company) of this battalion is at the prescribed distance, its captain will halt it, face it to the front, and align it by the left, its guide remaining faced to the rear; the other companies will close upon this company, and all the remaining battalions will each execute what was just prescribed for the seventh.

1855. Each colonel will face his guides to the front as soon as all the companies of his battalion are aligned.

1856. The lieutenant colonel of the eighth battalion will assure the positions of his guides as indicated No. 1006; the lieutenant colonels of the other battalions will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 1846.

**3d. To close the column on an interior battalion.**

1857. The general wishing to close the column on the headmost company of an interior battalion, say the fifth, will command:

*1. On the grenadiers (or —) fifth battalion, to half distance, close column.*

1858. This having been repeated, the colonel of each battalion in front of the fifth, will command: **1. Battalion, about—FACE; 2. Column, forward; 3. Guide right.** The general will then add:

**2. Quick—MARCH.**

1859. At the command march, briskly repeated by all the colonels, the fifth battalion, and those in its rear, will close up as prescribed, No. 1843, and following, for the execution of the movement on the head of the column; the battalions in front of the fifth will close as indicated, No. 1853, and following, for the execution of the movement on the rear of the column; the light infantry (or, it may be, the rifle, or eighth company) of the fourth battalion, will close on the directing company, leaving the interval prescribed, No. 1840.

**Remarks.**

1860. A column by division will close to company distance by the same commands and means.

1861. The column being at full or half distance, the general will cause it to close in mass by the same commands, substituting the indication column, close in mass, for that of to half distance, close column.

1862. A column, left in front, will execute those several movements according to the same principles.

**ARTICLE VI.****To march in column at half distance or closed in mass.**

1863. A column at half distance or in mass being at a halt, when the general shall wish to cause it to march, he will give the command prescribed above for putting in march a column at full distance.

1864. The means of direction indicated for column at full distance will be the same for column at half distance or in mass; but the colour and general guides will not be thrown out on the flank of the column.

1865. A column at half distance or in mass, being in march, the general will halt it by the commands as if it were a column at full distance.

1866. The column at half distance or in mass, being halted, if the general shall wish to give a general direction to the guides, he will simply establish the two leading guides on the direction he may choose, and then command:

***Guides, cover in file.***

1867. At this, repeated by the colonels, the guides of the column will accurately cover each other, in file, and be assured on the new direction by the lieutenant colonels and majors; which being executed, the colonels will cause their battalions to be aligned as prescribed, Nos. 1835

**ARTICLE VII.****To change direction in column at half distance.**

1868. A column at half distance, being in march, and having to change direction, will execute the movement as prescribed for a column at full distance, with the difference indicated, No. 1014.

**ARTICLE VIII.****To change direction in column closed in mass.*****1st. In marching.***

1869. A column closed in mass, being in march, and having to change direction, the general will halt it some paces from the point at which the change has to commence, and command:

1. *To change direction to the right (or left.)*
2. *By battalion in mass, by the head of column, take distance.*

1870. (Pl. XL, fig. 3.) These commands having been repeated, the first battalion will be put in march by its colonel, with the guide on the flank opposite to the change of direction, if not before there; and when the battalion arrives at the point indicated, he will cause it to change direction by the means prescribed, No. 1015, and following.

1871. The colonel of the second battalion will put it in march as soon as his leading division is at the distance of forty paces from the last of the preceding battalion; he will next commence the change of direction at the point where the first had commenced, and in the same manner.

1872. The colonels of the other battalions, as they successively have the distance of forty paces, will each conform himself to what is just prescribed for the colonel of the second.

1873. As soon as the first battalion shall marched in the new direction a distance equal to the depth of the column in mass, the general will command:

*Column, close in mass. 2. Quick—MARCH.*

1874. At the command march, the colonel of the first battalion will halt it, the other battalions will continue to march, and as each arrives at the distance of nine paces from that which precedes, it will be halted by its colonel

1875. At the instant of halting the first battalion, its lieutenant colonel will throw himself some paces in front of its leading guide, and, facing him, will assure the guides of his battalion on the direction of the column: the colonel will then command: *left (or right)—DRESS.* At this command each division will be aligned by its chief.

1876. As the other battalions successively halt, the guides of each will promptly place them-selves on the direction; the lieutenant colonel, placing himself in rear of the guide of his last division, will rectify, if necessary, their positions, the battalion will be aligned as just prescribed for the first.

1877. The last battalion having closed to the habitual distance of nine paces, the general will again put the column in march.

1878. A column closed in mass will change direction as prescribed, No. 1869, and following, as often as it shall have arrived at the point of change; but when it finds itself at sufficient distance from, and the point be not in the direction the column is pursuing, the general may employ he following means.

1879. (FL XL, figs. 1, 2.) It will be supposed that the column has arrived at the point A, and has to change direction to the right in order to march to the point B, and to prolong itself on the line B C; the general will command *guide right*, (the right being in front,) and, instead of directing the column on the point B, he will successively direct it on the points D, F, G, M; in this manner the guide of the leading division will continually approach the point B, and when there, the front of this division will be perpendicular, or nearly so, to the direction B C, which the column has to pursue, and the change will thus be effected without causing the flank opposite to the direction to lengthen the step much in order to conform itself to the movement of the guide.

1880. This movement will be executed according to the rules prescribed, No. 954. The leading guide will, successively, as a new point is given, face to, and march steadily upon it. Each of the other guides will follow exactly in the trace of the preceding one, taking care not to change the direction of his shoulders till arrived at the spot where the leading guide had changed direction, conformably to the principle prescribed in the number just referred to.

1881. The divisions will conform themselves to the movements of their guides very gradually, in order not to break the continuity of the front; chiefs os division will look to this with nice attention to prevent the men from advancing, except very -slightly, the shoulder opposite to the direction. The step will be but insensibly lengthened, and the light touch towards the guide preserved.



**Remarks.**

1882. The harmony and regularity of this movement depend mainly on the choice of the points of direction. The general, or the officer placed by him at the head of the column to direct it, will choose the intermediate points with greatest care. He will select them according to the distance of the column from the point entrance (B) on the new direction.

1883. If the chosen points be too near to each other, more time than necessary will be employed in effecting the change of direction.

1884. If, on the contrary, in order to march more directly towards the point of entrance on the new direction, the intermediate points be too distant from each other, the men, to conform themselves to the movements of their guides especially if the front of the column be considerable, would be obliged greatly to lengthen the step, and thus render it impossible to preserve the necessary connexion and order in the movement.

1885. The same inconveniencies would happen if the conductor of the column gave to the leading guide a new point of direction before the first two divisions entire had entered on the same direction with their guides.

**2d. To change direction from a halt.**

1886. The column being halted, when the general shall wish to place it in a new direction, without any immediate intention of advancing after such change, he will cause this movement to be executed by the flanks of subdivisions according to the principles prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1887. It will be supposed that the column has the right in front, and that it has to change direction to the left: the general, after having caused two markers to be established on the new direction for the leading subdivision, will command:

**1. Change direction by the right flank.**

1888. This having been repeated, each colonel will command: battalion, right—FACE. The general will then add:

**2. Quick—MARCH.**

1889. At this, the column will march by the right flank in the new direction in conformity with the principles prescribed, No. 1037, and following.

1890. The colonels will see, pending the execution of the movement, that the files do not open out, that the subdivisions enter in a square with the new direction, and that the prescribed distance between their battalions be exactly observed.

1891. The lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion will throw himself some paces in front, and face to the guide of the first subdivision of the column, in order to assure the direction of the guides of his battalion; the lieutenant colonel of each of the following battalions will place himself successively behind its left guides as they arrive on the new direction, to assure them in their positions.

1892. A column in mass will change direction by inverse means, and be conducted by the left flank into the new direction.

**ARTICLE IX.****Being in column at half distance, or closed in mass, to take distances.****1st. To take distances by the head of the column.**

1893. A column by company being at half distance and at a halt, when the general shall to cause it to take distances, he will indicate to the lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion the point of direction in front, and then command:

*By the head of column, take wheeling distance.*

1894. This having been repeated, the first battalion will take its distances by the means indicated, No. 1054, and following.

1895. Each of the other battalions will take its distances in like manner; but it will not commence its movement till the last subdivision of the battalion immediately preceding has left, besides the space equal to the front of a company, the distance of twenty-two paces, which ought to separate battalions in line of battle.

*2d. To take distances on the rear of the column.*

1896. The column being at half distance, and at a halt, when the general shall wish to cause it to take distances on the rearmost company, say the light infantry, eighth battalion, he will first determine the direction of the line of battle, and direct two markers to be placed on this line as prescribed, No. 1060. The markers being established, he will cause this line to be prolonged by one of the means indicated, No. 929, and following; and as soon as these dispositions are made, he will command:

*1. On the light infantry, eighth battalion, take wheeling distance.*

1897. This having been repeated, the colonel will each command: *1. Column, forward; Guide left.*

1898. At this, the captains of the eighth battalion will throw themselves out on the left flank of the column; those of the other battalions will throw themselves before the centres of their companies.

1899. The lieutenant colonel and the major of the first battalion will remain in their places in line; in the other battalions each lieutenant colonel will throw himself abreast with his rear-most company, and the majors each abreast with the first.

1900. The general will then add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1901. At this, the whole column, except the directing company, will step off: the lieutenant colonel of the first battalion will take care to direct the leading guide a little within the line of battle.

1902. The eighth battalion will take its distances as prescribed, No. 1061; and following.

1903. When the colonel of the seventh sees that only company of the eighth remains to take its distance, he will command: captains, on the flank of the column.

1904. At this, the captains will throw themselves outside of their guides; the lieutenant colonel will hasten to the point where his rearmost company ought to be halted, observing to take between it and the first company of the eighth battalion, a distance equal to the front of a company and twenty-two paces.

1905. When his rearmost company shall arrive abreast with the lieutenant colonel, its captain will halt and align it by the left. The other companies of the seventh will take their distances as prescribed for those of the eighth battalion.

1906. The remaining battalions will successively execute what has just been prescribed for the seventh. The lieutenant colonel of the first will direct the march of its leading guide to the point where the rearmost company of this battalion ought to be halted, and then the major will replace him momentarily at the head of the column.

1907. The colonels, lieutenant colonels, and majors, will conform themselves to what is prescribed for each, Nos. 1065—7.

*3d. To take distances on the head of the column.*

1908. When the general shall wish to cause distances to be taken on the head of the column, say the grenadiers of the first battalion, he will direct two markers to be placed on the line of direction as prescribed, No. 1068, and cause this line to be prolonged to the rear by the means indicated No. 1896; these dispositions being made, he will command:

*1. On the grenadiers, first battalion, take wheeling distance.*

1909. This having been repeated, each colonel will command: ***Battalion, about—FACE. 2. Column, forward; 3. Guide right.***

1910. At the third command, the captains of the first battalion will throw themselves out on the directing flank of the column; those of the following battalions will remain behind the centres of their companies.

1911. The lieutenant colonel of the eighth will throw himself abreast with his now leading company, and the major abreast with his rearmost one: in the other battalions, the positions of the lieutenant colonels and majors will be the reverse.

1912. The general will then add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1913. At this, the whole column, except the directing company, which has not faced about, will step off; the lieutenant colonel of the eighth battalion, placed by the side of the guide of its now leading company, will take care to direct this guide a little within the line of battle.

1914. The first battalion will take its distance—in the manner indicated No. 1069, and following.

1915. When the last company but one of the first battalion shall have taken its distance, the colonel of the second will command: captains, to the flank of the column; at the same time the lieutenant colonel of this battalion will throw himself to the point at which the grenadiers (or first company) ought to be halted.

1916. This company having arrived abreast with the lieutenant colonel, its captain will halt it, face it about, and align it by the left; the other companies of this battalion will take their distances as prescribed for those of the first battalion.

1917. Each remaining battalion will conform itself to what has just been prescribed for the second. The lieutenant colonel of the eighth will direct the march of its leading guide to the point at which its now rearmost company ought to be halted, when he will change place with the major.

1918. The field officers will conform themselves to what is prescribed for each, Nos. 1061-7

*4th. To take distances on an Interior battalion.*

1919. When the general shall wish to cause distances to be taken on an interior company of the column, say the grenadiers of the fifth battalion, he will establish the direction in the manner indicated, No. 1908, and cause it to be prolonged to the front and rear; which being executed, he will command:

*1. On the grenadiers, fifth battalion, take wheeling distance.*

1920. This having been repeated, the colonel of the fifth and the colonels of the following battalions will each command: ***1. Battalion, about—FACE; 2. Column, forward; 3. Guide right;*** the colonels of the battalions in front of the fifth will each command: ***1. Column, forward; 2. Guide left.***

1921. The general will then add:

*3. Quick—MARCH.*

1922. The fifth battalion, and those placed in its rear, will execute their movement

in the manner indicated No. 1910, and following, for taking distances on the head of the column; the fifth will conform itself to what is prescribed, in that (same?), for the first battalion.

1923. The first four battalions will execute the movement as prescribed No. 1898, and following, for taking distances on the rear of the column. At the commencement of the movement, the fourth battalion will put itself in march with the others, and its rearmost company will be halted the moment there is, between it and the grenadiers of the fifth battalion, a distance equal to the front of a company, and twenty-two paces.

1924. When distances are taken on an interior battalion or the column, the headmost or rearmost company or this battalion will be designated as the directing company.

1925. A column in mass will take full distance by the commands and means just indicated. When it has to take half distances, the general will substitute, in the first command, the indication half for that or wheeling distance.

1926. All those movements will be executed to the same principles in a column left in front.

1927. In a column by division, distances will be taken according to the same principles as in a column by company.

## ARTICLE X.

### Countermarch.

1928. A column, right in front, being at full or half distance, when the general shall wish to cause it to execute the countermarch, he will command:

#### *1. Countermarch.*

*1929. This being repeated by all the colonels, each will immediately command: 1. Battalion right—FACE; 2. By file left.*

1930. The general will then add:

#### *2. Quick—MARCH.*

1931. At this, briskly repeated, all the subdivisions of the column will execute the countermarch, as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1932. With the left in front, the countermarch will be executed according to the same principles.

### Countermarch of a column closed in mass.

1933. When a column in mass has to execute the countermarch, the general will command:

#### *1. Countermarch.*

1934. This being briskly repeated by all the colonels, each will immediately command *1. right and left—FACE; 2. By file left and right.*

1935. The general will then add:

#### *3. Quick—MARCH.*

1936. At this, briskly repeated, the subdivision will put themselves in movement, and the countermarch will be executed as prescribed, No. 1081, and following.

**ARTICLE XI.**

**Being in column by company and at a halt, to form divisions.**

1937. The column being by company, right in and at a halt, when the general shall wish divisions to be formed, he will command:

*1. Form divisions.*

1938. This being repeated by the colonels, each will immediately command: *left companies, left—FACE.*

1939. The general will then add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1940. At this, briskly repeated, the movement will be executed as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

1941. Each colonel will command: *guides—POSTS*, as soon as the divisions or his battalion are formed.

1942. If the left be in front, the general will give the same commands, and the colonels will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 1105.

**PART FOURTH.**

**Different modes of passing from the order in column to the order in battle.**

**ARTICLE I.**

**Manner of determining the line of battle.**

1943. The different manners of determining the line of battle have been explained, School the Battalion.

**ARTICLE II.**

**Different modes of passing from column at full distance into line of battle.**

- |   |   |                      |
|---|---|----------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the left (or right)</li> <li>2. On the right (or left)</li> <li>3. Forward,</li> <li>4. Faced to the rear</li> </ol> | } | into line of battle. |
|---|---|----------------------|

**Column at full distance, to the left (or right) into line of battle.**

1944. The column being supposed to have the right in front, when the general-in-chief shall wish to form it to the left into line, he will first insure the direction of the guides by one of the means prescribed, No. 1828, and following, and No. 1837, and following; which being executed, he will command:

*1. Left into line, wheel.*

1945. This having been repeated by the colonels, the right guide of the company at the head of each battalion will throw himself on the direction of the left guides, in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 1128; the general will add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1946. At this, briskly repeated, the column will form to the left into line of battle, and the moment it is formed, the general will command:

*5. Guides (or colours and guides)—POSTS.*

1947. At this, the guides will take their places line of battle, as also the colour-bearers, if in front.

1948. A column, left in front, will form to the right into line of battle according to the same principles.

**By inversion, to the right (or left) into line of battle.**

1949. If circumstances require that a column, right in front, should form to the right into line of battle, the general, without occupying himself with rectifying the right guides of the column, will command:

*1. By inversion, right into line, wheel.*

1950. At this, the lieutenant colonel and the left guide of every company at the head of a battalion, will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 1141.

1951. The colonels having repeated the above command, will each immediately give this: battalion, guide right; the lieutenant colonels and majors will rectify, with the utmost promptitude, the direction of the right guides of their respective battalions, without occupying themselves with the general direction of the column: and as soon as these dispositions are made, the general will add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

1952. At this, briskly repeated, each battalion will wheel up into line in conformity to what is prescribed. No. 1142.

1953. The line being formed, the general will command:

*3. Guides—POSTS.*

1954. If, with the left in front, it be necessary to form column to the left into line of battle, the movement will be executed according to the same principles.

**Successive Formations.**

In the successive formations, the lieutenant colonel of each subordinate battalion will always precede it on the line of battle, and establish a marker at the point where the right or left of his leading subdivision is to rest. He will take care to leave between this marker and the next battalion already established on the line, the interval of

twenty-two paces, and then place a second marker on the line at a little less subdivision distance from the first. The moment the lieutenant colonel detaches himself, he will be replaced at the head of his column by the major.

1956. As soon as the colour-subdivision of the battalion arrives on the me of battle, the colour-bearer will step out and place himself opposite to his file on the alignment of the guides already established on that line, taking care to hold up his lance perpendicularly between his eyes.

1957. As soon as there shall be two colours on the line of battle, the colonels will command: *guides—POSTS*, after the last subdivision of their battalions is established on that line; but the colour-bearers will remain in front until the entire line is formed. The general will then command: *colours—POSTS*.

1958. The lieutenant colonels will assure with the utmost care the markers of their respective battalions on the line of battle, taking the colours as the basis of alignment as soon as there are two established on that line, and then assure with equal precision the direction of the following guides and colour-bearer as they successively' come on the line of battle.

1959. Each colonel, after ordering in his guides, will cause his battalion to order arms.

*2d. Column at full distance, on the right, (or left) into line of battle.*

1960. A column by company, right in front, being in march, when the general shall wish to form it on the right into line of battle, he will first determine the direction of that line, and then indicate to the lieutenant colonel of the first battalion the point where the right is to rest; this officer will immediately detach himself with two markers, and establish them as indicated, No. 1146.

1961. If the direction of the line of battle be not parallel, or nearly so, to that of the column, the general, a little in advance, will take care to direct the march of the leading subdivision parallelly to that line, by the means indicated, No. 1165, so that its guide, after turning to the right, may have at least ten (or nine) paces to take in order to upon it.

1962. These dispositions being made, when the general shall wish the movement to commence, he will command:

*On the right, into line.*

1963. This having been repeated by the colonels, each will add: *battalion, guide right.*

1964. The leading subdivision having arrived opposite to the marker placed at the point of appui (rest,) will turn to the right, and the formation -into line of battle will be executed as prescribed, No. 1149, and following.

1965; When the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion sees the last subdivision of the first turn to the right, in order to move upon the line, he will detach himself with two markers, whom he will establish on the direction of the guides of the first battalion.

1966. The leading subdivision of the second battalion having arrived opposite to the first marker, will turn to the right at the command of its captain, who will halt it three paces from the line of battle and align it by the right against the two markers, placed in advance by the lieutenant colonel.

1967. The following battalions will execute their movement as just prescribed for the second.

1968. The line being formed, the general will command:

*Colours—POSTS.*

1969. At this, the colour-bearers will return to their places in line of battle. See No. 1957.

1970. The general, placed at the point of appui, will see that the colours of the two

right battalions place themselves correctly on the direction which he may have determined for the line of battle.

1971. The field officers will conform themselves, pending the formation into line of battle of their respective battalions, to what has been prescribed, Nos. 1160—1.

1972. A column, left in front, will be formed on the left, into line of battle, according to the same principles.

1973. If the general should wish to commence firing pending the execution of the movement, he will give an order to that effect, and the several battalions will successively conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 1168. This rule is general for all successive formations.

### ***3d. Column at full distance, forward into line of battle.***

1974. (P1. XLI, fig. 1.) When a column all full distance, right in front, shall arrive behind the right of the line on which it has to form line of battle, the general will first determine the direction of that line, and then indicate to the lieutenant colonel of the leading battalion the point at which the right ought to rest; this officer will immediately detach himself with two markers and establish them on the direction indicated, as explained, No. 1146.

1975. The head of the column having arrived at company distance from the line of battle, the general will halt the column, and command:

#### ***1. Forward, into line.***

1976. This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: ***by company, left half wheel;*** the other colonels will each command: ***1. Battalion, guide right; 2. Head of column to the left.***

1977. The general will then add:

#### ***2. Quick—MARCH.***

1978. At this, briskly repeated, the first battalion will form itself forward, into line of battle by the means prescribed, No. 1172, and following.

1979. The remaining battalions will march in column by battalion, towards the line of battle; to this end, the leading company of each will break from the general column by a wheel to the left, and then direct itself, that of the second battalion almost parallelly to the line of battle, and that of each of the following battalions diagonally forward, so as to arrive at (g) opposite to the point of appui (rest) of its battalion, but distant from this point at least the depth of the battalion in column.

1980. The head of each of these battalions having arrived at the point (g,) will turn to the right, in order to advance in a square with the line of battle, and when it shall be at about company distance from that line, on which the lieutenant colonel will have established two markers, as explained, No. 1146, the colonel will halt his battalion, and cause it to form forward, into line of battle by the means and the commands prescribed, No. 1171, and following.

1981. The line being formed, the general will command:

#### ***Colours—POSTS.***

### ***Remarks on forming forward, into line of battle.***

1982. The precision of this movement depends on the diagonal direction taken by the battalions in passing from the general column towards the line of battle; the better to assure this direction the general, colonels, and lieutenant colonels will observe the following rules.

1983. (P1. XLI, fig. 1.) Before beginning the movement, the general (k) will charge two aides-de-camp (m and n) to determine the points of appui on the line of battle for the right flanks the different battalions, which will be executed as follows.

1984. The aide (m) will gallop to battalion distance and twenty-two paces from



the general placed at the point of appui, and face to him; the general will, by signal of the sword, align him on the point of direction to the left, and (a) will gallop at the same time to a like distance behind (m) face to the right, and align himself on (m) and the general.

1985. The two aides (m and n) being thus established on the line of battle, the general will cause the movement to commence; the second battalion will direct itself on the aide (m) and the third on (n:) when the lieutenant colonel of the second arrives on the line, (m) will gallop to battalion distance and twenty-two paces behind (n,) and align himself on the latter and the colour to the right; the colonel of the fourth will immediately direct his battalion on the aide (m;) the aide (n) will set off in his turn, the moment the lieutenant colonel of the third arrives on the line of battle, place himself again at battalion distance and twenty-two paces behind (m,) and align himself on the latter and the colours to the right; the colonel of the fifth will immediately direct his battalion on the aide (n,) the two aides will thus in turn place themselves one behind the other at battalion distance and an interval of twenty-two paces as soon as the lieutenant colonel of the battalion which directs either, comes to replace him. The aides-de-camp will be careful to place themselves accurately on the line of battle, and at the true from each other.

1986. From the commencement of the movement, the general, or the officer he may substitute, will place himself at the point of appui as in the formation on the right, into line of battle, and for the like purpose. See .No. 1970.

1987. Every colonel will hold himself abreast with his leading company on the directing flank. pending the march of his battalion towards the line of battle; and, when the battalion begins to form, he will conform himself to what is prescribed, No. 1160.

1988. Each lieutenant colonel will detach himself, in order to take the place of the aide-de-camp on the line of battle, when the head of his battalion is at about one hundred and forty paces from that line, and he will then discharge the functions, pending the formation of his battalion, which have been prescribed, No. 1161.

1989. A column, left in front, arriving behind the left of the line of battle, will form forward on that line, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

#### **4th. Column at full distance faced to the rear, into line of battle.**

1990. (P1. XLI, fig. 2.) When a column at full distance, right in front, arrives in front of the right of the line on which it has to form in order in battle, the general will first determine the direction of that line, and indicate to the lieutenant colonel of the headmost battalion the point of appui for its right; this officer will immediately detach himself with two markers, and establish them on the direction indicated, as explained, No. 1146.

1991. The head of the column having arrived at about company distance from the markers the general will halt the column, and cause the leading company to be marched and dressed against the markers in the manner indicated, No. 1190. He will then command:

##### *1. Into line, faced to the rear.*

1992. This having been repeated, the colonel will immediately command: *battalion, About—FACE*; the colonels of the following battalions each command: *1. Battalion; guide left; 2. Head of column to the right.*

1993. The general will then add:

##### *2. Quick—MARCH.*

1994. This being briskly repeated, the first battalion will form into line of battle, faced to the rear, as prescribed No. 1191, and following.

1995. The remaining battalions will march in column, by battalion, towards the line of battle; to this end, the leading company of each will break from the general

column by a wheel to the right, and the battalion will then direct itself towards the line of battle as in the formation forward into line.

1996. The head of each of these battalions having arrived at the point (g.) will turn to the left in order to advance in a square with the line of battle; and when at about company distance from that line, on which the lieutenant colonel have established two markers as indicated, No. 1955, the colonel will halt his battalion, and cause it to form faced to the rear, into line of battle, by the means and commands prescribed, No. 1189 and following. See No. 1957.

1997. The line being formed, the general will command:

#### *8. Colours—POSTS.*

1998. The general, colonels, and lieutenant colonels, will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 1986, and following.

1999. A column, left in front, arriving before the left of the line of battle, will be formed faced to the rear, into line of battle, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

### ARTICLE III.

#### **Formations into line of battle, composed of two movements.**

2000. When a column, right in front, arriving behind the line of battle, and prolonging: itself on that line, has to form upon it before the whole of the column has entered into the new direction, the formation will be executed as follows

2001. (P1. XLII, fig. 1.) It will be supposed that the general has halted the column at instant that the fourth company of the fourth battalion entered the new direction; he will rectify the positions of the general guides, who according to the principles established, ought be on the flank of the part of the column which has entered the new direction, and he will establish this portion of the column on that direction, by the means prescribed, No. 1857, and following; which being executed, he will command:

#### *1. To the left, and forward, into line.*

2002. This having been repeated, the colonels of the first four battalions will each command: left into line wheel, and the colonel of the fourth, a part of whose battalion only has entered the new direction, will then add: four (or six) last companies, forward, into line.

2003. The colonel of the fifth will command: *1. Forward into line; 2. By company, left half wheel;* and the colonels of the last three battalions will each command: *1. Forward, into line, 2. Battalion, guide right; 3. Head of column to the left.*

2004. The general will then add:

#### *2. Quick—MARCH.*

2005. At this, briskly repeated, the battalions form to the left and forward, into line of battle, according to the principles prescribed for the two formations.

2006. If the column, instead of arriving behind, arrive before the line of battle, the formation will be executed as follows.

2007. (P1. XLII, fig. 2.) The general having halted the column, and assured the positions of the guides who have entered into the new direction, will command:

#### *1. To the left, and faced to the rear, into line.*

2008. This having been repeated the colonels of the first four battalions will each command: left into the line, wheel, and the colonel of the fourth will then add: four (or six) last companies, into line, faced to the rear.

2009. The colonel of the fifth will command *1. Into line faced to rear; 2. Battalion, right—FACE*; the colonels of the last three battalions will each command: *1. Into line, faced to the rear. 2. Battalion, guide left; 3. Head of column to the right.*

2010. The general will then add:

### *2. Quick—MARCH.*

2011. At this, briskly repeated, the battalion will form to the left and faced to the rear, into line of battle, according to the principles prescribed for the two formations.

2012. When a column at full distance has to be formed faced to the front, or faced to the rear, into line, on any company other than that at the head of the column, the formation will be executed by the union of two movements, as will be explained.

2013. In the first case, or faced to the front the battalion on which the movement is made and those in its rear, will form forward, into line of battle; the other battalions will countermarch, and form faced to the rear, into line battle.

2014. In the second case: the column having to form faced to the rear of the column, the battalion on which the movement is made, and those which follow, will form faced to the rear into line of battle, the other battalions will countermarch, and form forward, into line of battle.

2015. In both cases the company at the head of the battalion on which the movement is made, will be taken as the basis of the formation

2016. (Pl. XLIII, fig. 1.) A column by company right in front, will be supposed: the general, wishing to form it into line of battle, faced to the front, on the fifth battalion, will send an order to the colonels of the first four battalions, to cause them to countermarch, and himself cause to be established two markers before the head of the fifth battalion, as indicated, No. 1146; as soon as these markers are established, the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion will place two others on the same alignment, leaving between the, two battalions the interval of twenty-two paces.

2017. The first four battalions having executed the countermarch, the general will command:

#### *1. On the (headmost company,) fifth battalion, forward, into line.*

2018. This having been repeated, the colonel of the fifth will command: *by company, left half wheel*; the colonels of the last three battalions will each command: *1. Battalion, guide right 2. Head of column to the left.*

2019. The colonel of the fourth will command *1. Into line, faced to the rear; 2. Battalion, left—FACE*; the colonels of the first three battalions will each command: *1. Into line, faced to the rear; 2. Battalion, guide right; 3. Head of column to the left.*

2020. The general will then add:

### *2. Quick—MARCH.*

2021. At this, briskly repeated, the last four battalions will form forward, and the first four faced to the rear, into line of battle, according to the principles prescribed for the two formations.

2022. (Pl. XLIII, fig. 2.) If instead of facing to the front, the line has to be formed faced to the rear of the column, the general, after sending an order to the colonels of the first four battalions to cause them to countermarch, will place two markers before the head of the fifth battalion; the lieutenant colonel of the fourth will place two other markers on the same alignment, leaving between the two battalions an interval of twenty-two paces.

2023. The first four battalions having executed the countermarch, the general will command:

*On the (headmost company,) fifth battalion, into line, faced to the rear.*

2024. This having been repeated, the colonel of the fifth will command: *battalion, right—FACE*; the colonels of the last three battalions will command: *1. Into line, faced to the rear; Battalion, guide left; 2. Head of column to the right.*

2025. The colonel of the fourth will command: *1. Forward, into line; 2. By company right half wheel*; the colonels of the first three battalions will each command:

*1. Forward, into line. 2. Battalion, guide left; 3. Head of column to the right.*

2026. The general will then add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

2027. At this, briskly repeated, the last four battalions will form faced to the rear, and the first four, forward, into line of battle, according the principles prescribed for the two formations.

2028. Those divers movements will be executed in a column, left in front, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

#### ARTICLE IV.

#### Different modes of passing from column at half distance into line of battle.

2029. Columns at half distance may be formed into line of battle in either of the modes prescribed for columns at full distance. See commencement of the preceding Article II.

##### *1st. Column at half distance, to the left (or right) into line of battle.*

2030. A column at half distance having to form to the left (or right) into line of battle, the general will first cause it to take distances on subdivision he may choose to designate, by the means prescribed, No. 1896, and following; which being executed, he will form the column into line of battle as indicated, No. 1944, and following.

2031. The general, when he judges it necessary, may order each battalion to form itself into line of battle as it shall successively have its distances, without waiting for the battalions engaged in the execution of this preliminary movement.

##### *2d. Column at half distance, on the right (or on the left) into line of battle.*

2032. A column at half distance will be formed on the right (or on the left) into line of battle, by the same commands and means as a column at full distance.

##### *3d. Column at half distance, forward into line of battle.*

2033. A column being at half distance, when the general shall wish to form it forward into line of battle, he will make the same dispositions and give the same commands as if the column were at full distance.

2034. The leading battalion will close in mass and deploy on the headmost company; the following battalions will break by battalion from the general column, and each direct itself towards the line of battle, as if it were at full distance. When the headmost company shall have arrived at three paces from that line, the colonel will cause the column to close in mass, and then deploy it, as prescribed for the leading battalion.

**4th. Column at half distance, faced to the rear, Into line of battle.**

2035. A column at half distance will be formed to the rear into line of battle, by the means and commands and means prescribed for a column at full distance.

**ARTICLE V.****Columns closed in mass.****Deployment by battalion in mass.**

2036. A column in mass, whatever the numbers of battalions, may be formed into line of battle by deployment: 1st. Faced to the front; 2d. Faced to the rear; 3d. Faced to the left; 4th Faced to the right.

**1st. Faced to the front.**

2037. (Pl. XLIV, figs. 1,2.) & column of eight battalions, formed by division, and right in front, will be supposed; the general, wishing to deploy it, faced to the front, will first determine direction of the line of battle, and cause it to be marked by one of the means already indicated, taking care, if the column be in march, to cause a mounted officer to be placed on that line, at the point where the head of the column ought to arrive.

2038. Deployments will always be made upon lines parallel and lines perpendicular to the line of battle, according to the principle established, School of the Battalion. If the column be at a halt, the general, before deploying it, will establish it perpendicularly to the line of battle, if it be not, already so, by the means indicated, No. 1866—7, or No. 1886, and following; if the column be in march, he will direct it on the point marked as above, but so that it may arrive perpendicularly to the line of battle, and he will halt it at three paces from that line.

2039. The column being thus established, the general will cause it to deploy by battalion in mass, on whatever battalion he may choose to designate, say the first. He will place on the line of battle two markers, the first before the right, and the second before the left file of the head most division, and then order a mounted officer, to throw himself beyond the point at which the left battalion will arrive, and to place himself exactly on the prolongation of the basis of the alignment.

2040. These dispositions being made, the general will command:

**1. By battalion in mass, on the first battalion, deploy column.**

2041. This having been repeated, the colonels of the first battalion will caution it to stand fast. The other colonels will face their battalions to the left.

2042. The general will then add:

**2. Quick.—MARCH.**

2043. At the command *march*, briskly repeated, the movement will commence; the colonel of the first will command: **right—DRESS**; at which the first division will dress up against the markers, and be aligned by the right. At same time, the guides of the other divisions cover each other accurately in file, each wing guide taking the distance of six (or five) paces from the guide immediately preceding; the major will establish them promptly on the direction, and as soon as they are assured in their positions, each chief will align his division by the right. The chief of the first division, after having commanded **front**, instead of placing himself before its centre, will

remain on the right of the front rank, and the right guide will fall back to the rear rank.

2044. The other battalions will march by the left flank; the second, which finds itself nearest to the line of battle, will direct itself parallelly to that line; the others will march abreast with the second, and each preserve the distance of nine paces between the guide of its first and the guide of the last division of the battalion next towards the line of battle.

2045. The instant the movement commences, the major of the second battalion will throw himself twenty-two paces from the left flank of the column to mark the point at which the battalion will face to the right in order to advance upon the line of battle.

2046. The lieutenant colonel or this battalion will at the same time throw himself on the line of battle, and establish two markers on it, disposed like those of the first battalion, the right marker twenty-two paces from the left flank of the battalion.

2047. When the right file of the first division, second battalion, is nearly up with the major, the colonel will command: *1. Battalion, by the right flank; 2. MARCH; 3. Guide right.*

2048. The first command will be given when the division has yet seven or eight paces to take, the second at the moment its right file is up with the major, and the third immediately after the second.

2049. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the right (front) in marching, (See No. 604;) the chiefs of division will throw themselves before the centres of their respective divisions; the right guide of the first will so direct himself as to bring the right file opposite to the first marker; and when the head of the battalion is at three paces from the line of battle, the colonel will halt it, and command: *right—DRESS*. At this command, the battalion will be aligned by the right, in the manner prescribed for the first battalion.

2050. The other battalions will continue to march, and execute successively what has been indicated for the second; the lieutenant colonel and major of each of these battalions will conform themselves to what is prescribed for those of the second at the moment the battalion preceding their own faces to the right in order to advance upon the line of battle.

2051. The deployment being ended, the general will command:

*Guides—POSTS.*

2052. At this, the markers, placed before the masses, will retire.

2053. If, instead of deploying the column on the first battalion, the general shall wish to deploy it on the eighth, he will begin by causing the dispositions prescribed, No. 2087, and following, to be made, and then order a mounted officer to throw himself on the line of battle a little beyond the point at which the right battalion will arrive; this officer will place himself exactly on the prolongation of the markers placed before the head of the column.

2054. The general will then command:

*1. By battalion in mass, on the eighth battalion, deploy column. 2. Quick—MARCH.*

2055. At the first command, all the battalions, except the eighth, will face to the right.

2056. At the command *march*, the first seven battalions will put themselves in movement; the first division of the first battalion, conducted by the lieutenant colonel, will direct itself a little within the line of battle and parallelly to that line; the other battalions will regulate themselves on the first in conformity with what is prescribed No. 2044.

2057. At the instant the movement commences, the major of the seventh will throw himself twenty-two paces outside of the flank of the column to mark the point at which the battalion ought to be halted.

2058. The colonel of the eighth, seeing his battalion nearly unmasked, will command; **1. Column, forward; 2. Guide left; 3. Quick—MARCH.**

2059. At the command *march*, which will be given at the moment the battalion is unmasked, the colonel will conduct it towards the line of battle, and when at three paces from that line, he will halt it and align it by the left. The chief of the first division will then shift to the right as prescribed, No. 2043.

2060. When the left file, first division, seventh battalion, is up with the major, the colonel of this battalion will command; **1. Battalion; 2. HALT; 3. Front—FACE.**

2061. At the second command, the battalion will halt; at the third it will face to the front, and if there be openings between the files, they will be promptly closed to the left.

2062. As soon as this battalion is unmasked, the colonel will conduct it to the line of battle in the manner prescribed for the eighth.

2063. The other battalions will continue to march, and each execute in succession what has been indicated for the seventh; the major of each will throw himself twenty-two paces outside of the flank of the column, as prescribed for the major of the seventh, at the moment the next battalion in rear of his own, halts; the lieutenant colonel will precede his battalion on the line of battle, in order to establish upon it the two markers.

2064. The movement being ended, the general will command:

#### ***Guides—POSTS.***

2065. According to the same principles, the deployment may be made on an interior battalion of the column. The general, after having established two markers before the head of the column, will order two mounted officers to throw themselves respectively a little beyond the points at which the right and left battalions will arrive.

2066. The directing battalion will conform itself to what is prescribed, Nos. 2058—9, for the eighth; the battalions in its front will face to the right and be deployed in the manner indicated, Nos. 2056—7, and No. 2060, and following; the other battalions will face to the left and execute the movement as prescribed, No. 2044, and following.

2067. Those divers movements will be executed according to the same principles with a column left in front.

2068. In the preceding examples, the line of battle has been established in front of the head of the column; the general may also establish it front of any interior battalion, and then deploy the column on this battalion, or on any other that he may judge proper.

2069. (Pl. XLIV, figs. 3, 4.) It will be supposed that the line of battle ought to be established in front of the sixth, and that it is intended to deploy on this battalion: the general will cause two markers to be placed before the first division of the designated battalion, and order two mounted officers to throw themselves, respectively, a little beyond the points at which the right and left battalions will arrive; he will then command:

#### ***1. Line of battle on the sixth battalion.***

2070. This having been repeated, the first five battalions, which are in front of the line of battle, will face by the rear rank; which being executed, the general will add:

#### ***2. By battalion in mass, on the sixth battalion, deploy column. 8. Quick—MARCH.***

2071. At the second command, all the battalions, except the sixth, will face to the left.

2072. At the command *march*, the deployment will commence: the colonel of the sixth will align his battalion by the left. The other battalions will put themselves in

march; the direction on each side will be taken from the division the nearest to the line of battle, and the chief of this division will take care to direct its march parallelly to that line.

2073. At the instant the movement commences, the major of the fifth will throw himself twenty-two paces from the flank of the column on the prolongation of the last division of his battalion; the lieutenant colonel will throw himself on the line of battle, place a marker at the point of appui for the left of this battalion, and a second at a little more than division distance from the first, in order to leave space for the battalion to cross between them.

2074. When the left file of the last division, fifth battalion, is nearly up with the major, the colonel will command (in the order of time indicated, No. 2048:) *1. Battalion, by the right flank; 2. MARCH; 3. Guide right.*

2075. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right (rear) in marching, in order to pass the line of battle; the guide of the leading division will so direct his march as to graze, in passing, the marker placed at the point of appui; the battalion will cross the line of battle, and when the first division has passed it three paces, the colonel, who will have remained in front of that line, will halt the battalion, and face it by the front rank; the two guides of the first division and the covering sergeant of its left company will throw themselves on the line of battle, and be assured in their positions by the lieutenant colonel; which being executed, the colonel will cause the battalion to be aligned by the left.

2076. The first four battalions will conform themselves in succession to what has just been for the fifth, and the last two will deploy as indicated, No. 2044, and following.

2077. The movement ended, the general will command:

#### *4. Guides—POSTS.*

2078. If, in establishing the line of battle on the sixth, the general shall wish to deploy the column on any other, say the fourth battalion, he will command:

#### *1. Line of battle, on the sixth battalion. 2. By battalion in mass, on the fourth battalion, deploy column. 5. Quick—MARCH.*

2079. This movement will be executed according to the principles just prescribed, but observing what follows.

2080. The markers whom the general will cause to be established before the sixth battalion to serve as the basis of alignment, will be far enough apart to permit the battalion on which the deployment is made to pass between them.

2081. At the first command the first five battalions which are in advance of the line of battle, will face by the rear rank.

2082. At the second command, the first three and the last three battalions will face to the left, the fifth will face to the right, and the fourth stand fast.

2083. As soon as the fourth battalion is unmasked, it will march; cross the line of battle, and when the first division has passed three paces beyond, the colonel will halt the battalion, face it by the front rank, and align it by the left.

2084. When the fifth battalion has gained, in marching by the flank, the twenty-two paces which ought to separate it from the fourth, its colonel will halt it, face it by the rear rank, and the moment it is unmasked, he will conduct and establish, it on the line of battle as just prescribed for the fourth, but he will align it by the right.

2085. The sixth battalion, marching by the flank, will prolong itself on the line of battle, and be halted when it has gained the interval of twenty-two paces, which ought to separate it from the fifth.

2086. The other battalions will be deployed in the preceding example.

#### *2d. Faced to the rear.*

2087. When the general shall wish to deploy the column faced to the rear, he will



cause it to execute the countermarch, and then deploy it by the commands and means prescribed for deploying faced to the front.

**3d. Faced to the left.**

2088. A closed column, right in front, having to deploy by battalion in mass, faced to the left, will execute the movement in the following manner.

2089. (P1. XLV, fig. 1.) If it be the wish of the general to deploy the column on the fifth battalion, he will determine the direction of the line of battle on the right flank of the column, and then command:

**1, To deploy, faced to the left. 2. By battalion in mass, on the fifth battalion, take distance.**

2090. These commands having been repeated, the colonel of the fifth will caution it to stand fast; the colonels of the first four battalions will each command: **1. Column, forward, 2. Guide right**; the colonels of the last three battalions will each cause his battalion to face about, and then command, **1. Column forward, 2. Guide left.**

2091. The general will now add:

**2. Quick-MARCH.**

2092. At this, briskly repeated, the movement will commence; the lieutenant colonel of the first and eighth will each direct the headmost guide of his battalion parallelly to the line of battle. Each subordinate battalion will take division distance and four paces, reckoning from the battalion placed next in its front or its rear towards the directing battalion. As each battalion gets its distance, it will be halted by the colonel and if it be faced to the rear of the column, he will cause it to face about.

2093. As soon as the movement commences, the general will direct the colonel of the fifth to place two markers as prescribed, No. 1036, for changing direction by the right flank; the other colonels, each as his battalion gets its distance, will, in like manner, place two markers on the same alignment as those of the fifth: the general, or the officer he may charge with the execution of the duty, will see that these markers are properly placed.

2094. Distances having been properly taken, and the markers correctly established, the general will command:

**1. By battalion in mass, change direction by the right flank.**

2095. This having been repeated, each colonel will command: **Battalion, right - - FACE.**

2096. The general will then add,

**2. Quick - MARCH.**

2097. At this, briskly repeated, each battalion will execute a change of direction, as indicated, No. 1037, and following, except that the battalions which were, in the column, in rear of the directing battalion, will be aligned by the right, and that the chief of the first division of each battalion will place himself on the right of his division after having aligned it.

2098. The movement having ended, the general will command:

**3. Guides, -- POSTS.**

2099. If, instead of deploying the column on an interior battalion, the general shall wish to deploy it on the first, or on the eighth, the movement will be executed on the same principles; in the first case, the subordinate battalions will conform themselves to what is prescribed in the preceding example for those placed in the rear of the

directing battalion; and in the second, to what is indicated for those placed in the front; in both cases the directing battalion will be aligned by the flank next to the point of *appui*.

2100. A column, left in front, will be deployed by battalion in mass, faced to the right, according to the same principles.

***Remark.***

2101. It is prescribed that the masses take division distance and four paces, supposing each to be of four divisions and in three ranks—in order that, after deployment, there may be intervals between the masses of twenty-two paces; but, if the masses be of five divisions, in three or two ranks, or of four divisions, in two ranks, the distances to be taken will be, in the first case, two paces less, and in the second and third cases respectively, two and seven paces more than division distance.

***4th. Faced to the right.***

2102. A closed column, right in front, having to deploy by battalion in mass, faced to the right, it will change direction by the left flank, and then deploy by the means and commands above indicated; but as this movement is much longer than the preceding one, the general may, when circumstances require it, deploy the column by inversion, according to the principles prescribed for deploying faced to the left, observing what follows.

2103. (P1. XLV, fig. 1.) It will be supposed that the general wishes to deploy the column faced to the right on the fifth battalion; he will determine the direction of the line of battle on the left flank of the column, and cause it to be marked by the means above indicated; which being executed, he will command:

- 1. To deploy by inversion, faced to the right. 2. Battalion in mass, on the fifth battalion, take distance. 3. Quick—MARCH.***

2104. This movement will be executed as No. 2092, and following, except that the colonels, whose battalions are in front of the battalion, will each command: ***1. Column, forward; 2. Guide left;*** and the Colonels whose battalions are in its rear: ***1. Column, forward; 2. Guide right.***

2105. Each battalion having taken its distance, the general will command:

- 1. By battalion in mass, change direction by the left flank. 2. Quick—MARCH.***

2106. This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed, No. 2097.

2107. The deployment being ended, the general will add:

***3. Guides—Posts.***

2108. The battalions being thus placed by inversion, the masses will be deployed into line of battle in the direct order, when each battalion will be, in respect to the others, in the inverse, whilst its own subdivisions are in the direct order.

2109. A closed column, left in front, will be deployed by inversion faced to the left, according to the same principles.

## Deployment of masses.

2110. (P1 XLIV, figs. 5,6, 7.) The line being deployed by battalion in mass, it is supposed that the general wishes to deploy the masses on the first division, fifth battalion: he will cause two markers to be placed before this division, and direct the lieutenant colonel of the fourth battalion to place two others on the same alignment

before his first division.

2111. These markers being established, the lieutenant colonels of the fifth and fourth battalions will each place a third before the centre of the same division, as prescribed, Nos. 1222 and 1243.

2112. The general will, at the same time, order two mounted officers to throw themselves respectively a little beyond the points at which will rest the left and the right of the line, and establish themselves there correctly on the prolongation of the basis of alignment.

2113. These dispositions being made, the general will command;

*1. On the first division, fifth battalion, deploy masses.*

2114. This having been repeated, the colonel of the fifth battalion will caution its first division to stand fast, and then, with each of the colonels who are to his left, command: *battalion, left—FACE*.

2115. The colonel of the fourth battalion, having cautioned its fourth (or last) division to stand fast, will then, with each of the colonels who are to his right, command: *battalion, right—FACE*.

2116. The battalions being thus by the flank their colonels will place themselves at eight or ten paces from their right flanks respectively; to this end, the colonels, whose battalions have faced to the left, will pass through the intervals which separate these battalions.

2117. The general will then add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

2118. At this, briskly repeated, the deployment will commence; the first division, first battalion, and the first of the eighth, each conducted by its lieutenant colonel, will direct its march a little within the mounted officer placed at the extremity of the line of battle, and parallelly to that line; the first division of each of the other battalions will follow exactly in the trace of the division which precedes it.

2119. The fifth and fourth battalions will deploy themselves from the halt; the fifth on its first division, and the fourth on its last division, in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 1220, and following, and No. 1241, and following.

2120. The colonel of the third battalion, seeing that the first division of the fourth is on the point of halting, will, for his last division, say the fourth, command: *1. Fourth division. 2. HALT.*

The second command will be given at the moment the third battalion has taken its interval of twenty-two paces; the chief of the fourth division will then add: *front—FACE*.

2121. The lieutenant colonel will detach him self in time, and establish on the line of battle, two markers facing to the guides of the fourth battalion; these markers being established, he will place a third at the point against which one of the three right files of the left company of directing division will arrive, and then throw himself little beyond the point at which the right of the third division will arrive.

2122. The chief of the fourth division will align it by the left against the markers the moment it is unmasked.

2123. The other divisions will continue to march, and the deployment will be made as prescribed for the fourth battalion.

2124. The second and first battalions will, successively, conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the third.

2125. The battalions which march by the left flank will deploy themselves as follows: the colonel of the sixth, seeing that the last division of the fifth battalion is on the point of being halted, will command: *1. First division; 2. HALT.* The second command will be given at the instant the sixth battalion has taken its interval of twenty-two paces; the chief of its first division will then add: *front—FACE*.

2126. The lieutenant colonel will conform himself to what is prescribed, No. 2121,

for the lieutenant colonel of the third battalion; the markers whom he will place will face to the right, and the intermediate marker will be established so as to be opposite to one of the three left files of the right company, directing division, of this battalion.

2127. The first division having been faced to the front, its chief will align it by the right: the other divisions will continue to march, and the deployment ended as just indicated for the fifth battalion. See No. 1957.

2128. The seventh and eighth battalions will successively conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the sixth.

2129. The deployment being ended, the general will add:

### 3. Colours—POSTS.

2130. The general will see that the guides and colours of the fifth, fourth, and sixth battalions -place themselves correctly on the direction.

2131. The colonels having halted the directing division of their respective battalions, as prescribed above, will follow up the deployment of their divisions; and in case a chief of a subordinate division commits the fault of commanding *halt* too soon or too late, they will hasten to the following division in order to prevent the fault from being propagated.

2132. If the column be composed of not more than three, or even four battalions, the general may dispense with causing the intermediate deployment by battalion in mass; in this case the deployment will be executed according to the principles prescribed, School of the Battalion, observing what follows.

2133. (P1. XLIV, figs. 8, 9.) A column of four battalions, right in front, is supposed, having to deploy itself on the last, say the fourth division of the second battalion: the general, after having placed two markers before the headmost division of the column, will cause the line of battle to be prolonged to the right and left, and command:

#### 1. On the fourth division, second battalion, deploy column.

2134. This having been repeated, the colonel of the second will caution the designated division to stand fast, and then command : *battalion -- right—FACE*.

2135. At this, the lieutenant colonel of this battalion will throw himself on the line of battle, and place a third marker as prescribed, No. 1243.

2186. The colonel of the first battalion will give the same command as the colonel of the second.

2137. The colonels of the third and fourth each command: *battalion, left—FACE*, and immediately cross the column, in order to place himself on the right flank of his battalion.

2138. The lieutenant colonel of the third will throw himself on the line of battle, and establish two markers on this line, as prescribed, No. 2121, the right marker at the distance of twenty-two paces from the left flank of the second battalion.

2139. The general will then add:

#### 2. Quick—MARCH.

2140. At this, briskly repeated, the deployment will commence: the second battalion will deploy itself on the designated division as indicated, School of the Battalion.

2141. The colonel of the first will halt its last division, when his battalion shall have left between it and the right flank of the second an interval of twenty-two paces, and the battalion will deploy itself on this division as has already been indicated.

2142. When the third battalion has taken, in marching by the flank, the interval of twenty-two paces from the second, its colonel will command:

*Battalion, by the right flank; 2. MARCH; 3. Guide right.*

2143. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right in marching, and when arrived at three paces from the line of battle, the colonel will halt it, and cause it to deploy on its first division. See No. 1957.

2144. The fourth battalion will continue to march; and when its right file is opposite to its point of appui, the colonel will conduct it to the of battle, and deploy it as prescribed for the third.

2145. The lieutenant colonel of this battalion will throw himself in advance on the line of battle and place the two markers as prescribed, No. 2138, in order that the colonel may judge the moment for marching the battalion up to this line.

2146. The colonels will conform themselves pending the deployment of their respective battalions, to what is prescribed, No. 2131.

2147. The lieutenant colonels will conform themselves to what is prescribed above.

2148. The deployment being ended, the general will command:

### *3. Colours—POSTS.*

2149. A column, left in front, will be deployed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

## **Movements which may be executed by a line of battalions in masses.**

### *1st. The advance in line.*

2150. (PL XLV, fig. 2.) The line being deployed by battalion in mass, when the general shall wish it to advance, he will designate the directing battalion, (the fifth will here be supposed) then throw himself in front of this battalion, verify the direction of its guides in respect to the perpendicularity to the line of battle, rectify the direction, if necessary, and command:

#### *1. The fifth, the battalion of direction.*

2151. At this, the lieutenant colonel of directing battalion will throw himself twenty-five to thirty paces in front of the guides, face to them, and place himself correctly on their prolongation: the general, throwing himself in rear of those guides, will verify the position of the lieutenant colonel, rectify it, if necessary, and then command:

#### *2. Battalion, forward.*

2152. This having been repeated, the colonel of the directing battalion will command: guide right, and the other colonels, guide left (or right,) according as they may find themselves to the right or left of the directing battalion.

2153. At this command, the right general guide of the directing battalion will throw himself six paces in front of his guides; the lieutenant colonel will establish him on the perpendicular, and as soon as assured in that position, he will take points on the ground in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 1280.

2154. The chief of the first division in each of the battalions to the left of the directing one will to the left of his division, taking post in the front rank, and the guide of that flank will fall to the rear rank.

2155. The lieutenant colonel of every subordinate battalion will indicate to the guide of its headmost division the direction he ought to follow, and this guide will immediately take his points on the ground.

2156. These dispositions being made, the general will add:

### *3. Quick—MARCH.*

2157. At this, briskly repeated, the line will put itself in movement; the general guide of the directing battalion will carefully conform himself to what is prescribed for the colour-bearer, No. 1287: the guide of its headmost division will march exactly in the trace of the general guide, preserving the original distance of six paces from him, but without constraining himself, in this, to minute exactness: the guides of the other battalions will direct themselves perpendicularly to the front.

2158. The lieutenant colonel of each battalion, being, pending the march, placed by the side of the guide of his first division, will take care to maintain between his battalion and that next its right or left, on the side of the direction, the interval of twenty-two paces.

2159. The chief of each first division maintain himself exactly abreast with its guide on the opposite flank, and will superintend the march of the division according to what is prescribed, No. 1294, and following.

2160. The other divisions will conform themselves to the rules for the march in column.

2161. The colonels will hold themselves on the flanks of their respective battalions, each on the side of direction, and superintend the movement.

***2d. To halt the line, marching in advance, and to align it.***

2162. The line being in march, when the general shall wish to halt it, he will command:

***1. Battalions. 2. HALT.***

2163. The line being halted, if the general wish to give a general alignment, he will place two markers before the directing battalion, and then command:

***1. Guides, on the line.***

2164. At this, the lieutenant colonel of each subordinate battalion will place two markers before its head on the alignment of those established by the general; and the chief of each first division will pass to the flank of his division on the side of the direction.

2165. As soon as the markers are correctly established on the line of battle, the colonels; with-out regulating themselves on each other, will align their battalions by the flank of direction manner prescribed, No. 2043.

2166. The battalions being aligned, the general will command:

***2. Guides—POSTS.***

2d. The line marching in advance, to cause it to change direction.

2167. (PI. XLV, fig. 3.) The line being in march, it is supposed that the general wishes to cause it to change direction to the right; he will throw himself to the point at which he may wish the right of the new line to rest, and place two markers, one at the point of appui, the other at division distance from the first.

2168. These dispositions being made, the general will command:

***1. Change direction to the right.***

2169. This having been repeated, the colonel of the first battalion will command: ***1. Guide left; 2. Battalion, right wheel;*** at this command, the chief of the first division will throw himself before the centre of his division.

2170. The other colonels will each commands guide right; at this command, the chief of each first division will throw himself before its centre.

2171. The general will then add:

## *2. Quick—MARCH.*

2172. At the command march, briskly repeated, the first battalion will change direction by wheeling according to the principles prescribed, No. 1018, and following; its colonel will cause it to wheel until its front is parallel to the line of battle; he will then conduct it forward, halt it three paces from this line, and align it by the right.

2173. The other battalions will be marched towards the line of battle, each executing in succession slight changes of direction to the right, so that, on arriving at twenty paces from that line, the headmost division may be parallel to it; to this end, the leading guide, advancing insensibly the left shoulder, will direct himself circularly to the right; the other guides will follow his movement in marching exactly in his trace, and the divisions will each conform itself to the movement of its guide as prescribed, No. 1879, and following.

2174. At the commencement of the movement, the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion will throw himself on the line of battle, and immediately establish a marker at twenty-two paces from the left flank of the first battalion, and another at division distance from the first, and at the instant of detaching himself, he will be replaced at the head of the column by its major.

2175. The lieutenant colonels of the other battalions will successively conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the lieutenant colonel of the second; each will precede his battalion, on the line of battle, by about fifty--five paces.

2176. The movement ended, the general will add:

## *3. Guides—POSTS.*

2177. Changes of direction to the left will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

### *Remark.*

2178. It is essential that the battalion on which the movement is made should arrive perpendicularly to the line of battle; to this end, and conformably to the principle established, No. 1022, the colonel of this battalion will cause the step of the pivot to be shortened if this should become necessary; and if, notwithstanding this precaution, some of the divisions be not able to conform themselves exactly to the movement of the first, they will, on halting the battalion, be promptly conducted by the flank into the true direction before the battalion is aligned.

### *4th. To march the line in retreat.*

2179. The line being at a halt, when the general shall wish to cause it to march in retreat, he will command:

### *Face by the rear rank.*

2180. This having been repeated, the battalions will face in the manner indicated, No. 1549, and following; the chief of the fourth (or last) division of each battalion will place himself on the left of his division in the rear rank, now become front rank, and the chief of each first division will throw himself before its centre.

2181. These dispositions being executed, the general will designate the directing battalion, and cause the direction to be traced as under the first head, to advance in line, No. 2150, and then command:

### *1. Battalion. forward.*

2182. This having been repeated, the colonel of the directing battalion will command: guide right, and the other colonels, guide left (or right,) according as they may find themselves to the left or right of the directing battalion.

2183. The general will then add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

2184. The line will march in retreat according to the principles prescribed for marching in advance.

2185. The general having halted the line, wishing to face it by the front rank, will command:

*Face by the front rank.*

2186. This having been repeated, each battalion will face by the front rank; which being executed, the chief of the first division will retake his place in line, and the chief of the fourth his in column.

*5th. To change direction of the line marching in retreat.*

2187. The line marching in retreat will change direction by the same means and commands as if it were advancing, observing what follows.

2188. It is supposed that the general wished to change direction to the left; he will place two markers on the new direction, the first at the point ofappui, and the second at such distance from the first that the battalion may easily pass between them.

2189. The first battalion will be conducted to and established on the new direction as indicated, No. 2169 and 2172; but it will cross the line of battle; and when the first division has passed three paces beyond, the colonel will halt the battalion, and face it by the front rank.

2190. As soon as the battalion faces, the guides of the first division will throw themselves on the line of battle, and be assured in their positions by the lieutenant colonel; which being done the colonel will align the battalion by the right.

2191. The other colonels will each direct his battalion so that it may arrive when at twenty paces, parallelly to the line of battle; he will then cause it to pass that line, between the two markers placed in advance by the lieutenant colonel in the manner indicated No. 2188. When the first division has passed three paces beyond the line, the battalion will be halted faced by the front rank, and aligned as prescribed for the first.

2192. A line of battalion masses, left in front, will march and change direction, advancing and retreating, according to the same principles and inverse means; the fourth or last division of each will conform itself to what is prescribed for the first, and reciprocally.

*6th. To break the line formed by battalion in mass, and to re-form the column into line.*

2193. (P1. XLV, fig. 4.) The line being at a halt, when the general shall wish to break it to the right into column by battalion, he will command:

*1. By battalion, right in front, into column.*

2194. This having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of each battalion will place a marker before the left guide of its first division, and a second at division distance from the first in a direction perpendicular to the line of battle.

2195. At the same time, each colonel will command: *1. Change direction by the left flank; 2. Battalion, left—FACE.*

2196. These dispositions being made, the general will add:

*2. Quick—MARCH.*

2197. At this, each battalion will change direction by the means indicated, School of the Battalion; but the divisions will be aligned by the right, and the chief of each first division will take care to halt it when its right file shall be up with the first marker.



2198. The column thus formed will march according to the same principles which govern the movement of an ordinary column; but as, in order to return into line of battle, in the direct (not inverse) order, the battalions must change direction by the right flank, the column has been dressed by that flank, and will march with the guide to the right: each lieutenant colonel, placed by the side of his leading guide, will see that this guide preserves the distance (twenty-two paces) which separates his battalion from that which precedes.

2199. If the column, thus disposed, be required to change direction, as there are already sufficient distances between the battalions, there will be no necessity for taking distances; each battalion will successively change direction according to the principles prescribed, No. 1869, and following.

2200. The column being halted, when the general shall wish to re-form it into line of battle faced to the left, he will place, in the direction he may choose to give to that line, two markers, for the change of direction of the headmost battalion by the right flank, and then command:

*1. Faced to the left, into line. 2. By battalion in mass, change direction by the right flank. 3. Quick—MARCH.*

2201. The first command having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of each battalion will place two markers for its change of direction; he will establish them on the prolongation of those placed by the general: each colonel will, at the same time, command: *battalion, right—FACE*. At the command *march*, the movement will be executed as prescribed, No. 2097, and following.

2202. In like manner may the same column (with distances of twenty-two paces between the battalion masses) be formed by inversion faced to the right into line of battle, by causing each battalion to execute a change of direction by the left flank. To effect this, the general will command:

*1. By inversion, faced to the right, into line. 2. By battalion in mass, change direction by the left flank. 3. Quick—MARCH.*

*7th. To ploy the line of masses into general column closed in mass.*

2203. (Pl. XLV, fig. 5.) When a line of battalions in mass has to be ployed into column, as the battalions, by reason of their depth, and the smallness of the intervals between them, cannot be directed diagonally towards the points at which they ought respectively to enter the column, the movement will be executed in the following manner:

2204. It will be supposed that the line ought to be ployed on the fifth battalion, right in front; the general will throw himself in front of this battalion, and after assuring himself that the guides are correctly placed, he will command:

*1. By battalion in mass, on the fifth battalion, right in front, into column. 2. Quick—MARCH.*

2205. At the first command, each colonel who finds himself to the right of the directing battalion, will command: *1. Column, forward. Guide left.*

2206. The colonels who are to the left of the directing battalion, will each give the same commands after causing his battalion to face about.

2207. At the command *march*, the movement will commence; the first four battalions will march to the front, and when the last division the fourth battalion shall have passed six (or five) paces beyond the first division of the fifth, the colonel will cause his battalion to face to the left, in marching, in order to take its place in column; when the left guides arrive on the direction of those of the fifth, the colonel of the fourth will halt it, and cause it to face to the front.

2208. At the moment of halting, the left guides, facing to the rear, will place themselves on the prolongation of those of the fifth battalion; and the lieutenant

colonel, placed in their rear, will assure them on the direction; which being done, the colonel will cause his battalion to be aligned by the left, and then order the guides to face about.

2209. The colonels of the first three battalions will each conform himself to what has just been prescribed for the colonel of the fourth, as his last division has passed six (or five) paces beyond the front rank, first division, of the battalion which entered the column next before his own.

2210. The last three battalions will enter the column in like manner; the colonel of the sixth will cause it to face to the left in marching, when its first division has passed six (or five) paces beyond the rear rank, last division, of the fifth battalion, and he will halt his battalion when its left guides are on the direction of those of the fifth.

2211. At the moment of halting, the guides of the sixth will promptly place themselves on the prolongation of those of the fifth battalion, and the lieutenant colonel will assure them on that direction; which being done, the colonel will cause his battalion to be aligned by the left.

2212. The last two battalions will conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the sixth, as the first division of each has passed six (or five) paces beyond the rear rank, last division of the battalion which preceded it in column.

2213. A line of masses will be ployed into column, left in front, according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

#### ***Remark, on Inversions.***

2214. The principles prescribed, No. 1272, and following, for breaking or ploying into column a single battalion, formed in line of battle by inversion, are applicable to a line of many battalions when formed in line by inversion in the manner indicated, No. 1950, and following; and when the battalions are placed, in respect to each other, in the inverse order, whilst their subdivisions are in the direct order, as indicated, other means, to be immediately prescribed, will be employed for breaking or ploying the line into column if it be desired to replace the battalions in the direct order.

2215. It will be supposed that the general, in causing the line to break, wishes to march it to the left; he will order each colonel to cause his battalion to break to the right in order to march towards the left (in column at full distance) as if it were isolated; and as soon as the battalions break, he will put them in march all at the same time: in this way the column will find itself united and formed in the direct order as soon as the last subdivision of each battalion has turned into the new direction.

2216. (P1. XLV, fig. 6.) If, instead of breaking the line (into column at full distance,) the general shall wish to ploy it into column, say on the fifth battalion, so that the first battalion may be in front, he will order the colonel of the fifth to ploy it into column, right in front, on its second division; at the same time he will order the other colonels to ploy their respective battalions, right in front, on the division nearest to the directing battalion, and then cause the masses to enter the column as follows: the first four battalions, in front, and the last three, in rear of the directing battalion.

2217. If, in breaking the line, it be desired to march towards the right, or if, in ploying it, it be desired to place the eighth battalion in front the movement will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

**PART FIFTH.****ARTICLE 1.****To advance in line of battle deployed.**

2218. (P1. XLVI, fig. 1.) A line of eight battalions deployed, and correctly aligned, will be supposed; the general, wishing to cause it to advance in this order, will choose as the directing battalion (say the fifth) the one which he may deem most favourably placed for the purpose; he will approach this battalion, and command:

*1. The fifth, the battalion of direction.*

2219. This having been repeated, the colonel and lieutenant colonel of every battalion will place themselves in rear and in front of the colour-file of their respective battalions as prescribed, Nos. 1277—8.

2220. The colonel of the directing battalion, having assured his lieutenant colonel on the perpendicular, will promptly establish two markers behind his battalion as prescribed, No. 1279.

2221. The general will verify the direction of these markers, rectify it, if necessary, and charge an officer to superintend, pending the march, the successive replacing of them.

2222. The general will then command:

*2. Battalions, forward.*

2223. (P1. XLVI, figs. 1, 2.) This command having been repeated, the colour-rank of every battalion will advance six paces, and its two general guides will throw themselves out abreast with this rank; the major will place himself at six or eight paces from the flank of the colour-rank, and on the side opposite to the directing battalion.

2224. The general need not occupy himself with the general alignment of the colour-rank and general guides of the different battalions; it will suffice if those of each battalion conform themselves to what has just been prescribed.

2225. These dispositions having been made, the general will add:

*5. Quick—MARCH.*

2226. At this, repeated with the great rapidity, the line will step off with life; each battalion will observe with the utmost care the principles prescribed, School of the Battalion, for marching in line of battle.

2227. Each colonel and lieutenant colonel will conform himself, for the maintenance of the direction and alignment, to the principles prescribed, School of the Battalion.

2228. The directing battalion being regarded as infallible by all the others, and having the greatest influence on them, its march will be superintended with the utmost care; consequently, the general-in-chief, or the officer deputed by him, placed in front of this battalion, will labour to maintain its centre steadily on the perpendicular; to this end, he will frequently throw himself from thirty to forty paces in front of the colour-bearer, face to the rear, and align himself correctly on the markers established behind the battalion; he will rectify, if necessary, the direction of the centre corporal, as well as that of colour-bearer.

2229. If the line of direction of this battalion be badly chosen, and this may often happen, as it is very difficult to determine the perpendicular with precision, the general and the colonel of battalion will perceive it at the end of a few paces by the crowdings in one wing, and the openings of files in the other.

2230. If, for example, the line of direction, instead of being perpendicular to the primitive of battle, be taken to the right of the perpendicular, the directing battalion

will soon be in oblique position to both of those lines; the interval to its right will be more and more diminished, and that to the left increased in the same proportion, which will force all the subordinate battalions to oblique to the right to regain their intervals; the general, by placing himself on either flank of the directing battalion, will perceive that the battalions to its right are in advance, and those to its left in the rear, in respect to the false direction of that battalion.

2231. Promptly to remedy this fault, the general will order the major of the directing battalion to throw himself thirty or forty paces before its centre, and to face to the rear; he will himself go at the same time to a like distance behind its rear, and place by a signal of the sword, the major on the direction he may choose to give; the colonel of this battalion will immediately caution the centre corporal and the colour-bearer to conform themselves to this new direction, and the officer superintending the markers in the rear will immediately establish them on that direction.

2232. If, at the end of a few paces, the general perceive that the new direction is not exact, he will promptly give another; but with a good coup d'oeil, and the habit of directing lines, he will rarely find it necessary to change the direction more than once.

2233. Each subordinate battalion will maintain its interval on the side of the directing battalion.

2234. The preservation of intervals between battalions being the most essential point in the march in line, the colonels will give to it the utmost attention.

2235. A battalion can only lose its interval by the false direction pursued by its colour-bearer. The colonel may early perceive this by the indications noticed, Nos. 2229—30, and following, and No. 815.

2236. The interval may be momentarily diminished by openings between files; in this case, it will suffice to cause the files to close insensibly on the centre of their battalion.

2237. The generals of divisions and brigades being placed further in rear of the line than the colonels, may each see at once several battalions; hence it will be easy for the general to perceive whence the loss of intervals, and they will give prompt notice thereof to the colonels.

2238. When the loss of interval is but slight, and the battalion does not slant in respect to the perpendicular, the colonel may confine himself to cautioning the colour-bearer to incline insensibly to the right or left, without taking the oblique step: by this means the interval may be re-established without inconvenience. As to the general alignment, the following rules will be observed.

2239. A scrupulous attention need not be given to the maintenance of the colours and general guides of the several battalions exactly abreast with each other; consequently, the major of each battalion placed on the flank of his colour-rank on the side opposite to the direction, will not cause the colour-bearer to shorten or lengthen the step but when this may be evidently necessary to the preservation of a certain degree of general harmony.

2240. The two general guides of each battalion will conform themselves steadily to the direction of the colour-rank of the same battalion, and hold themselves abreast with this rank, without deference to the colours and general guides of the other battalions,

2241. Nothing contributes more to fatigue soldiers, and to derange the interior order of battalions, than frequent variations of step; the three corporals placed in the centre of each battalion will observe steadily the length and cadence of the pace, without endeavouring to maintain themselves exactly at the distance of six paces from the colour-rank; consequently, they will not vary in either of those particulars, except on a caution, to that effect, from their colonel or lieutenant colonel.

2242. To carry through the same principle, colonels will not scrupulously endeavour to maintain their battalions abreast with each other; consequently, they will not cause the step to be lengthened or shortened, the time to be marked or quickened, except when one or the other should evidently be necessary in order to preserve a certain degree of harmony in the line; if it happen that a battalion find itself

a pace or two in advance or in rear of the neighboring battalions, this slight irregularity may soon correct itself without particular orders or interference.

2243. Colonels will carefully look to the direction and interior order of their respective battalions, and the lieutenant colonels to the alignment.

2244. Brigadier and major generals will superintend the march of their respective brigades and divisions, and charge themselves especially with the preservation of battalion intervals.

2245. The general will occupy himself more particularly with the directing battalion, but his attention will at the same time be given to the whole line.

### ***General remarks on the march in line of battle.***

2246. The march in line of battle cannot be affected with the necessary order and harmony of parts, if the several battalions have not been previously and individually exercised according the same principles or School of the Battalion. See No. 783.

2247. Although uniformity of step be the first element in the march in line of battle, the movement will be imperfect if the colour-bearer be not accustomed to prolong, without variation, a given -direction, and if the colonels have not the habit of conducting their battalions with address and intelligence.

2248. It is by the uniformity of step that the different battalions can alone maintain themselves, without effort, abreast, or nearly so, with each other, pending the march. See No. 146.

2249. By exercising frequently, in advance, the sergeants as colour-bearers, in prolonging a given direction, colonels may best prevent the loss of intervals in marching in line. See No. 76.

2250. Finally, it is in forming the *coup d'oeil*, by a persevering exercise, that generals and colonels can alone acquire accuracy and facility in judging the line of direction, and of conducting battalions on every sort of ground with the address, and intelligence necessary to prevent faults, or promptly to correct them. See No. 1317.

2251. The general-in-chief may choose, as the directing battalion, either in the line that he may judge the best posted for the particular march, yet, other considerations being equal, he ought to give the preference to a central battalion.

## **ARTICLE II.**

### **To halt the line, and to align it.**

2252. (P1. XLVI, figs. 3, 4.) The line being in march, and the general wishing to halt it, he will command:

#### ***1. Battalions.***

2253. This having been repeated, the general will add:

#### ***2. HALT.***

2254. This having been repeated with the utmost rapidity, the line will halt. The colour-rank and general guides of each battalion, will halt, but remain in front of the line.

2255. The line being halted, and the general wishing to give it a general alignment, he will throw himself some paces on the right of the directing colour, in order the better to see the whole line, and thence to determine the new direction.

2256. He will next order the colour-bearer and the left general guide of this battalion to face to him, when he will place them on the direction he shall have chosen; the right general guide will face to the left and align himself on the colour-bearer and

the left general guide of the same battalion; the lieutenant colonel will assure him on this direction, and the two corporals of the colour-rank will fall back into their places in the line of battle.

2257. The basis of alignment being thus assured, the general will command:

*1. Colours and general guides on the line.*

2258. This having been repeated, the colour-bearers and general guides of all the battalions will face to the colour of the directing battalion; those of the next battalion to the right and left., respectively, will align themselves correctly on the colour and general guides of that battalion; those of the other battalions will align themselves on the colours; the lieutenant colonel and major of each battalion will promptly assure the colour-bearer and general guides of their battalions on the new direction: all the bearers will carry their colours perpendicularly between their eyes, and the corporals of their rank will fall back into their places in line.

2259. These arrangements being made, the general will add:

*2. Guides, on the line.*

2260. This having been repeated, it will be executed in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 1337, and following, and as soon as the guides are assured on the line, each colonel will cause his battalion to be aligned upon its centre without regulating itself on the other battalions.

2261. All the battalions being aligned, the general will command:

*3. Colours and guides—POSTS.*

2262. If the new direction should throw one or more battalions back from the position occupied at halting, each colonel of these battalions, as soon as he perceives the necessity by the direction of the colours, will face his battalion about, march it to the rear, and then face it about when it has passed the new direction.

## ARTICLE III.

### **Change of direction marching in line of battle.**

2263. A deployed line, marching in the order in battle, when the general shall wish to cause it to change direction, so as to throw forward a wing, the movement will be executed as follows.

2264. (P1. XLVIII, figs. 1, 2, 3.) If the left wing be the one intended to be thrown forward, the general will go to the right battalion and place before it, on the new direction he may wish to give to the line of battle, two markers, distant from each other fifty or sixty paces, the first marker at the point of appui (rest) for the right of the line; the markers being established, he will cause the line to be prolonged by mounted officers.

2265. These dispositions made, the general command:

*1. Change direction to the right. 2. MARCH.*

2266. At the command march, briskly repeated, the movement will commence: each battalion will change direction according to the principles prescribed, No. 1848, and following: the right battalion will wheel until it is parallel to new line of battle; its colonel will then direct it forward, halt it four paces within the markers, and command: *1. Colour and general guides—ON THE LINE.*

2267. The colour-bearer and general guides will face to the general placed on the right of line, who will establish them on the new direction; which being executed, the colonel will command: **2. Guides—ON THE LINE. 3. On the centre—Dress.**

2268. As each battalion has sufficiently disengaged itself by wheeling, its colonel will add: **Forward—MARCH**; at this, the battalion will resume the direct march.

2269. The colonel of the second battalion will so direct it as to cause it to arrive parallelly to the line; and to this end, he will cause it to execute successive slight changes of direction in proportion as it advances towards the line.

2270. Its lieutenant colonel will, in advance, throw himself on the line, and place upon it two markers, as indicated, No. 2264.

2271. The colonel of the second having halted his battalion at four paces from the new line, will command: **1. Colour and general guides—ON THE LINE.**

2272. At this, the colour-bearer and two general guides of the second battalion will face to the right, and promptly place themselves on the line of battle. The major, from the rear of the left general guide, will align them correctly on those of the first battalion; which being executed, the colonel will add: **2. Guides—ON THE LINE. 3. On the centre—DRESS.** See No. 1957.

2273. Each of the remaining battalions will conform itself to what is just prescribed for the second.

2274. The lieutenant colonel of each battalion will precede it on the line, by about one hundred paces, and conform himself to what is prescribed for the lieutenant colonel of the second.

2275. The general, or the officer whom he may substitute, placed on the right of the line, will take care that the colours of the first two battalions are correctly assured on the new direction: and when the last battalion is established on the line, he will command:

#### *Colours—POSTS.*

2276. Changes of direction to the left, in order to throw forward the right wing, will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

#### ***Remarks on changes of direction marching in line of battle.***

2277. The means prescribed for changing the direction of a line marching in the order in battle, whether to throw forward, or to refuse one its wings, give the facility of establishing a line on any direction that may be deemed best, without breaking the battalions into subdivisions.

2278. The battalions marching in echelons, are reciprocally protected; and if, before the end of the movement, it should become necessary to re-form the line, the battalions not yet on the new direction, say the fifth and eighth inclusive, may form themselves into a full line, by an opposite change of direction to the one they were engaged in executing. This line, composed of the last four battalions, would form an angle with that composed of the first four already established on the new direction.

### ARTICLE IV.

#### **To retreat in line of battle.**

2279. The line being halted, when the general shall wish to cause it to march in retreat, he will command:

##### **1. Face to the rear.**

2280. This having been repeated, each colonel will command: **Battalion about—**

*FACE*, when the line will face about, each battalion conforming itself to what is prescribed, No. 1366.

2281. The general will then add:

**2. *The (—) the battalion of direction.***

2282. At this, the colonels and lieutenant colonels will conform themselves, within their respective battalions, to what is indicated, No. 1361, and the colonel of the directing battalion will cause markers to be established as prescribed, No. 1562. These dispositions being made, the general will add:

**3. *Battalions, forward.***

2283. This having been repeated, the colour-rank, the general guides of each battalion, the captains, covering sergeants, and file closers will conform themselves to what is prescribed, School of the Battalion. The general will then command:

**4. *Quick—MARCH.***

2284. The line will march in retreat according to the principles prescribed for advancing in line of battle.

**ARTICLE V.**

**To halt the line marching in retreat, and to align it.**

2285. A deployed line, marching in retreat, will be halted by the same commands as a line marching in advance; and when the general shall wish to re-face it, he will command:

**1. *Face to the front.***

2286. This having been repeated, each colonel will command: *battalion, about—FACE*, when the line will face about, each battalion conforming itself to what is prescribed, No. 1872.

**ARTICLE VI.**

**Change of direction in marching in retreat.**

2287. A deployed line, marching in retreat, if the general wish to cause it to change direction in order to refuse the one or other wing, he will cause the movement to be executed as follows:

2288. It will be supposed that it is the left wing, become the right, that the general wishes to refuse: he will pass to the right battalion, now the left, and establish two markers before it on the new direction which he may wish to give to the line in the manner prescribed for changing direction in marching in advance; he will then command:

**1. *Change direction to the left.***



2289. This having been repeated, the general will add:

***2. MARCH.***

2290. This, briskly repeated, every battalion will commence its change of direction according to the principles prescribed, No. 1573.

2291. The first battalion will wheel until it find itself parallel to the markers: the colour-bearer will then march it forward, cause it to cross the line of battle, and when the front rank, now the rear, shall have passed four paces beyond this line, he will halt the battalion, face it about and establish it on the line by the commands and means indicated, Nos. 2271—2.

2292. The colonel of each of the other battalions will direct it towards the line of battle, as indicated, Nos. 2268—9, so that it may be parallel to this line several paces before arriving upon it; the colonel will then cause the battalion to pass the line, and when four paces beyond it, he will halt and face the battalion about; he will then establish it on the line by the means prescribed for changing direction advancing.

2293. The lieutenant colonels will conform themselves to what is prescribed, Nos. 2270 and 2274, and the general to what is indicated, No. 2275.

2294. Changes of direction to the right, in order to refuse the right wing, become the left, will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

**ARTICLE VII.**

**March in line of battle of a line of battalions in columns.**

2295. The march in line of battle of a deployed line, presenting many difficulties, particularly if the ground be not favourable, it may frequently be advantageous to ploy each battalion into column, and to cause the line to march this order, preserving, between every two battalions, the interval necessary for deployment.

2296. A line will be supposed of eight battalions: the general, wishing to ploy or to break each battalion into column doubled on the centre or into simple column, either by division or by company, will command:

***1. Movement by battalion.***

2297. This having been repeated, the general will give the commands of caution prescribed, School of the Battalion, for the particular formation into column which he may desire to have executed.

2298. These commands having been repeated, each colonel will give the preparatory commands required for the particular movement indicated by the general.

2299. The general will then add:

***2. Quick—MARCH.***

2300. At this, each battalion will ploy itself into column in the manner prescribed, School of the Battalion.

2301. The line thus formed, will march according to the same principles as a line of battalions deployed, but observing what follows.

***1st. To cause the line of columns to advance.***

2302. (P1. XLVII, fig. 1.) It will be supposed that each battalion has been ployed into double column, and that the general has chosen the fifth as the directing battalion:

he will go to this battalion, see whether the direction of its guides be perpendicular to the line of battle, rectify the direction, if necessary, and then command:

***1. The fifth, the battalion of direction.***

2303. The colonel of each subordinate battalion having repeated this command, will see whether his guides on the side of the directing battalion be established perpendicularly to the line of battle; if not, he will make the necessary rectification, and then throw himself thirty paces to the rear on the prolongation of those guides; the lieutenant colonel will throw himself a like distance in front, and on the same perpendicular.

2304. The colonel of the directing battalion will establish in the rear two markers on the prolongation of the guides, as prescribed, No. 2220.

2305. The general will now command:

***2. Battalions, forward.***

2306. This having been repeated, the colonel of the directing battalion and the colonels to his right, will immediately command: guide right, the other colonels, guide left.

2307. At this, the right general guide of each battalion will throw himself out six paces in front of its headmost guide; he will be assured the perpendicular by the lieutenant colonel, immediately take points on the ground, as prescribed for the colour-bearer, No. 1230; the lieutenant colonel will then fall back to the side of his headmost guide.

2308. The chief of each leading division will take post in the front rank of his division, on the side opposite to that of direction, and the guide who was there will fall back into the rear rank.

2309. The major will place himself in rear of guides charged with the direction.

2310. These dispositions being made, the general will add:

***3. Quick—MARCH.***

2311. (P1. XLVII, fig. 2.) At this, repeated with the utmost rapidity, the line will step off with life.

2312. The right general guide of each battalion will direct his march perpendicularly to the front, and the leading guide will follow exactly his trace.

2313. The chief of the leading division will maintain himself abreast with his guide on the opposite flank, and see that the march of the division be in conformity with the principles prescribed, No. 1294. The other divisions will conform themselves to the rules for marching in column.

2314. The lieutenant colonel and major conform themselves to what is prescribed, Nos. 909—10.

2315. Every colonel, placed on the side of direction, will superintend the march of his battalion in column, and labour to preserve its interval.

2316. As the directing battalion has to be regarded as infallible by all the others, the general will attach himself to it, and with greatest care maintain the general guide and guides of this battalion on the perpendicular according to the principles established, No. 2228.

2317. If the direction given to this battalion has been badly chosen, the general will promptly perceive it by the crowdings and openings among the files of the headmost division, according to the side to which the guide deviates from the perpendicular. Those irregularities, although less sensible than they would be in a deployed battalion, will nevertheless sufficiently show that the false direction of the general guides ought to be promptly corrected.

2318. Colonels of the subordinate battalions will look with so much the greater care to the preservation of intervals, as a fault committed in this respect will not be

as promptly perceived as in a deployed line.

2319. In every battalion the lieutenant colonel will perform the duty attributed to the major No. 1298, as often as the colonel may wish to change the point of direction.

2320. (P1. XLVII, fig. 3.) The line of battalions in columns being in march, when a subordinate battalion encounters an obstacle, this battalion will turn it in a manner so as to deviate the least from the direction it ought to follow, and quicken the step at the same time as prescribed, No. 1376, in order to return into line as soon as the obstacle is passed. When again in line, the battalion will be careful to re-establish its interval by insensible degrees.

2321. If it be an interior battalion that has to execute the passage of an obstacle, the next battalion towards the side of direction will take care to keep a double interval until the former battalion comes again into line.

***Remarks on the march of a line of battalion columns with deploying intervals.***

2322. It has been supposed above, that the battalions of the line were ployed into double columns; but the rules just prescribed are equally applicable to a line of battalion columns formed in any other manner.

2323. When the battalions of the line are in simple columns, the directing battalion will take a guide to the left or right, according as it may have the right or left in front, and the sub-ordinate battalions will take the guide on the side next to the directing battalion.

2324. With the right in front, the right general guide in each battalion will be charged with its direction; the left general guide in the reverse case.

2325. If the battalions be in masses, each colonel will hold himself, pending the march, at thirty paces in the rear of his battalion on prolongation of its guides: the columns being half, or full distance, each colonel will hold himself on the flank of his column on the side of direction.

***2d. To halt the line of columns, and to deploy it.***

2326. A line of battalions in columns will halted by the same commands as a line of battle.

2327. The line being at a halt, if it be wish of the general to give a general alignment, he will conform himself to what is prescribed, No. 2163, and following.

2328. If the battalions be in columns at half or full distance, and the general shall wish to deploy them, he will halt the line by these commands:

***1. Columns, close in mass. 2. Quick—MARCH.***

2329. At the command *march*, each battalion will close up on its leading subdivision.

2330. The line being halted and aligned, if it be the wish of the general to deploy the battalions, and they are in double columns, he will command:

***1. Deploy columns 2. Quick—MARCH.***

2331. If the battalions be in simple columns, the general will, in his first command, designate the subdivision on which each battalion ought deploy itself.

2332. In both cases, the movements will be executed, in every battalion, in the manner prescribed, School of the Battalion.

***2d. The line of columns marching in advance, to cause it to change direction.***

2333. (P1. XLVII, figs. 4, 5.) A line of battalions, in columns, marching to the front, and it being the wish of the general to cause it to change direction to the right, he will establish two markers on the new line of battle in front of the position to be occupied by the right battalion; he will at the same time charge two mounted officers to determine successively, in the manner indicated, No. 1988, and following, the points

at which the other battalions ought respectively to arrive; these dispositions made, he will command:

**1. Change direction to the right. 2. MARCH.**

2334. The first command having been repeated, each colonel will cause his battalion to take the guide to the right, if that be not already the directing flank; at the same time the chief of the leading division, in each battalion, will throw himself before the centre of his division, and the general guide, charged with the direction, will retire.

2335. At the command *march*, the colonel of the right battalion will cause it to change direction to the right, and then direct it against the two markers placed by the general; when its leading division is at three paces from the markers, the colonel will halt the battalion; if the rear divisions have not yet entered the new direction, their chiefs will promptly bring these into it, and as soon as they are established on it, the colonel will align the battalion by the right.

2336. Each of the other colonels will direct his battalion towards the new line of battle, so that its leading division may be, when at a distance equal to the depth of the column, parallel to that line: to this end, the colonel will cause the guides of this division to advance, insensibly, and successively, the left shoulder; and when this guide has arrived at three paces from the line of battle, the colonel will halt the battalion, and cause it to be aligned by the right.

2337. At the beginning of the movement, the lieutenant colonel of the second battalion will throw himself on the line of battle, and replace the mounted officer whom the general had sent thither; he will immediately establish two markers for the head of his battalion, the first at deploying distance from the battalion to the right, and the second at division distance from the first; the lieutenant colonel of each of the other battalions will throw himself in like manner on the line of battle, when the head of his battalion is at a hundred paces from this line.

2338. The last battalion column being established on the line, the general will command:

**3. Guides—POSTS.**

2339. Changes of direction to the left, will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

2340. If the general shall wish to cause the columns to deploy, he will give the order to that effect to the colonels, who will cause their battalions to close up in halting, and then deploy them.

**4th. To cause the line of columns to march in retreat.**

2341. A line of battalions, in columns, being halted, when the general shall wish to cause it to march in retreat, he will command:

**1. Face by the rear rank.**

2342. This having been repeated, each battalion will face by the rear rank; the chief of the last division of each battalion, will place himself in the rear rank, become the front, on the side opposite to that of the direction; the chief of each first division will take his place in the column.

2343. The line being thus faced by the rear rank, it will be put in march by the same commands and means as a line of battalions in columns faced by the front rank, observing to establish markers before the directing battalion, according to the principles, prescribed, No. 1362.

2344. The line marching in retreat, will conform itself to the principles prescribed for a line of battalions, in columns, marching in advance.

**5th. To halt the line of columns marching in retreat, and to align it.**

2345. The line marching in retreat will be halted by the same commands as if it were marching in advance; and when the general shall wish to face it about, he will command:

**1. Face by the front rank.**

2346. This having been repeated, each battalion will be faced by the front rank; the chief of the first division in each will retake his place in line, and the chief of each last division his column.

**6th. The line of columns marching in retreat, to cause it to change direction.**

2347. The line, marching in retreat, will change direction by the same commands and means as if it marched by the front rank, observing what follows.

2348. The two markers established by the general before the position to be occupied at halting by the first battalion, instead of being opposite to the right and left files respectively of the leading division, will be far enough apart to permit this battalion to cross the line of battle between them, and the same of the markers established for the other battalions.

2349. Each colonel will direct his battalion towards the line of battle, as prescribed for a change of direction forward, and so that all its divisions may be parallel to this line before passing it; when the first division, now in the rear, is three paces beyond the line, the colonel will halt the battalion, and face it by the front rank; the guides of the first division will throw themselves on the line between the two markers, and as soon as they are assured in their positions the lieutenant colonel, the colonel will align the battalion by the right.

2350. The general, if it be his wish to deploy the columns, will give a caution to that effect to the colonels, who, in halting, will each cause his battalion to close up on its leading division as soon as the latter has passed the line of battle by a distance equal to the depth of the column and three paces more; he will then face the battalion by the front rank, and deploy it.

**ARTICLE VIII.****To pass a defile in front.**

2351. A deployed line encountering, in advancing, a defile which it has to pass, will execute the movement as follows.

2352. (P1. XLIX, fig. 1.) It will be supposed that the defile is opposite to the interval between the third and fourth battalions, and that its width is sufficient to give passage to the front of a company: the general, seeing that the line has arrived near the defile, will halt it, and command:

**1. To pass defile in front, by the right of the fourth battalion. 2. By platoon, left and right, into column.**

2353. These commands having been repeated, the colonels of the first three battalions will each command: *by platoon, left wheel*, and each of the other colonels: *by platoon, right wheel*.

2354. The general will then add:

**3. Quick—MARCH.**

2355. At this, briskly repeated, the battalions will break by platoon to the left or right.

2356. The battalions having broken, the general will cause two markers to be placed at the points around which the two columns ought to turn in order to enter the defile; the markers will be posted a little more than the front of a company apart. The general will then command:

*4. Column, forward.*

2357. This having been repeated, each colonel whose battalion has broken to the left, will command: *guide right*, and each whose battalion has broken to the right, guide left. The general will now add:

*5. Quick—MARCH.*

2358. (Pl. XLIX, fig. 2.) At this command, briskly repeated, the two columns will march to each other, and when the two leading platoons -have arrived opposite to the respective markers, they will turn one to the right, and the other to the left, in order to unite in the defile; the moment of union, they will take, by command of their respective chiefs, the platoon on right, the guide to the left, and the left platoon, the guide to the right.

2359. The two united platoons will march side by side, each regulating itself on the two guides placed elbow to elbow between them: these guides will direct themselves by the defile.

2360. The two next platoons, and, successively, all the others, will conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the two leading platoons on coming up with the markers placed before the entrance of the defile. The platoons of the first battalion (supposing the line to consist of but five) will march in simple column behind the right column.

2361. The united platoons will pass the defile at the cadenced pace, and with ranks closed, each regulating itself on the two guides placed in the centre, who will march elbow to elbow exactly in the traces of, and at platoon distance from, the guides who immediately precede them.

2362. In proportion as the two columns issue from the defile, each captain will re-form his company as follows: in the right column, the first platoon, which is in rear of the second of the same company, will oblique to the right until it find itself unmasked, and then march forward; in the left column, it will be the second platoon of each company, which will oblique to the left, and then march up abreast with its first. At the moment of obliquing, the men will half-face to the right or left, and each platoon will quicken the step in order to rejoin its corresponding platoon in front. See No. 737.

2363. (Pl. XLIX, fig. 3.) If it be the wish of the general, after passing the defile, to re-form line, he will throw himself in advance to the distance at which he may wish to establish the line of battle, and place two markers on this line for the head of the right column, and two others for the head of the left, leaving the interval of twenty-two paces between the two columns.

2364. The head of the column having passed the defile, the general will order the colonels of the third and fourth battalions to direct them respectively on the markers which he has established; and when the leading subdivision of each of these battalions has arrived at three paces from the line of battle, each colonel will cause his battalion to close in mass in halting.

2365. The colonels of the second and fifth will each, as the head of his battalion issues from the defile, cause it to change direction, the second to the right, and the fifth to the left, and then direct it perpendicularly towards the line of battle, the second, at twenty-two paces from the right of the third, and the fifth, the same distance from the left of the fourth. In halting, at three paces from that line, each battalion will be closed in mass on its leading company.

2366. Each of the remaining battalions (whatever the number) will follow the movement of the one that immediately precedes it in column, march towards the line,

and establish itself upon the column, as just prescribed for the second and fifth.

2367. Or, as soon as the head of the battalion which the general wishes to cause the deployment to be made, is established on the line of battle, he will cause the movement to commence, and immediately give notice thereof to the colonels whose battalions are yet in the defile.

2368. These colonels, as their battalions successively issue from the defile, will cause them to change direction to the right and left, then set them behind the line, so that each may be in position to form itself on the right or on the left into line of battle, next to the preceding battalion of its column already in line.

2369. If, instead of re-establishing the line, as in the preceding examples, it be the wish of the general to rest one of the wings, say the right, at the defile, he will cause both columns to take the guide to the right, and halt them the instant at the last company of the right column issues from the defile: this column may then be formed to the right, and the left column on the right, into line of battle.

2370. If it be the left wing that is to rest at the defile, the line may be formed according the same principles, and by inverse means.

### ***Remarks on the passage of defiles in advancing.***

2371. The two columns being formed by platoon, if the defile should widen sufficiently, companies may be formed in each column without waiting till the head has issued from the defile.

2372. When a sudden narrowing of the defile shall oblige the chiefs of platoon to break off, for the moment, one or two files to the rear, this diminution of front, as an exception to the rule established, (No. 718) will be made from the side opposite to the guide.

2373. If the defile be of sufficient width to receive the front of a division, the general, instead of causing the line to break by platoon, will cause it to break by company; but, in this case, the company that is to lead in each column, instead of wheeling, will march forward twice the extent of its front; and when the columns are put in movement, these companies will close upon each other, marching by the flank, in order to unite at the entrance of the defile.

2374. If the defile be not of sufficient width to receive the front of a company, it will be passed in simple column by platoon, right or left front.

2375. The passage of defiles to the front always be executed by the subdivision of the right, or that of the left of a battalion; and when the defile happens not to be exactly opposite to an interval between two battalions, the leading subdivisions, after uniting, will direct themselves diagonally towards the entrance of the defile.

2376. The means given, No. 2263, and following, for re-forming the line, render it easy to establish it with the utmost promptness, and on any battalion that may be preferred. If, for example, the outlet of the defile be so placed, in respect to the enemy, as to render it necessary to form line on the head of the column immediately after passing; in this case, the general would cause the third and fourth battalions to close into masses, and immediately deploy them; the other battalions would form on the left, and on the right, into line of battle.

## **ARTICLE .**

### **To pass a defile in retreat.**

2377. The line marching in retreat, and encountering a defile which it has to pass, the general will cause a halt, and face the line to the front.

2378. (Pl. L, figs. 1, 2, 8.) It will first be supposed that the line is composed of eight, or any other even number of battalions; that the defile is opposite to the interval between the two centre battalions, (fourth and fifth,) and its width sufficient to give

passage to the front of a company, The general will, cause two markers to be placed at fifteen or twenty paces behind the closers, in front of the defile, and at a little more than company distance apart, in order to indicate to the two columns the points around which they ought to change direction to enter the defile; which being executed, he will command:

*To the rear, by the wings, pass the defile.*

2379. This having been repeated, the colonel of the right battalion of the line, will command *to the rear, by the right flank, pass the defile*, and the colonel of the left battalion, *to the rear by the left flank, pass the defile*.

2380. The two battalions of the wings will immediately commence the movement in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 1398, and following; and when the leading platoon of each column has arrived opposite to the marker placed at the point for changing direction, these two platoons will turn at the same time, one to the left, and the other to the right, in order to unite in the defile: to this end, if the head of one of the columns arrive before the other, it will wait for the head of the corresponding battalion, before turning. As soon as the two platoons unite, they will take, by command of their respective chiefs—the platoon, now on the left, the guide to the right, and the other, the guide to the left; the remaining platoons of these two battalions will successively conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for those of the head, and the two columns will thus march together according to the principles indicated, No. 2359, for the passage of a defile in front.

2381. The other battalions will successively execute the same movement; the colonel of each will give one of the commands prescribed, No. 2379, according as his battalion has to pass the defile by the right or left flank, and so that its leading platoon may follow, at the desired distance, the rearmost platoon of the battalion immediately preceding; the battalions will enter the defile, side by side, as prescribed for the two battalions of the wings.

2382. If the defile become of sufficient width to give passage to a division marching by the front, each captain, as his platoons successively enter the enlarged width, will cause them to form company according to the principles prescribed, No. 2862; otherwise this movement will only be executed as each company issues from the defile.

2383. If it be the wish of the general, after passing, to re-form line facing to the defile, he will throw himself in advance to the distance at which he may wish to establish the new line of battle, and determine its direction by establishing, for the head of the column, two markers distant from each other a little more than the front of a division; he will then cause this line to be prolonged to the right and left by mounted officers.

2384. The head of the column will be so directed as to cross the line of battle between the two markers placed by the general; and when four paces beyond, the column, composed of the right battalions, will take the guide to the left, and turn to the left; the column, composed of the left battalions, will take the guide to the right, and turn to the right; the two columns will thus prolong their march, in opposite directions, parallelly to the line of battle, on which the colours and general guides will throw themselves.

2385. Each column will be halted soon as its last subdivision has entered the new direction, and so that, on re-forming line, the two battalions which were the rearmost, may find themselves separated by the interval of twenty-two paces. One of the two columns will be made to countermarch, and the general, having rectified, if necessary, the general direction, will cause the column to form to the left or right, into line of battle,

2386. (P1. LI, figs. 1, 2, 8.) The line consisting of eight battalions, if it be the wish of the general, instead of placing four battalions the left of the defile, as in the last example, to place only three on that side, and to throw the other five to the right, the movement will be executed in the following manner.



2387. The last three battalions which are to be formed to the left of the defile, will be halted as soon as the leading subdivision of the eighth battalion arrives at company distance from point of appui for the left of the line, and be formed to the right, into line of battle.

2388. The fifth battalion, instead of following the movement of the last three, will continue to march straight forward after having crossed the line of battle, and close in mass as soon as its leading subdivision has left between it and the line the necessary space to contain the battalion in mass.

2389. The last subdivision having closed, this battalion will be made to countermarch, and then to deploy, so that it may find itself twenty-two paces from the right of the sixth.

2390. The column composed of the right battalions will continue to march, and when its last subdivision has passed a distance equal to the front of a company beyond the point of appui, for the left of the fourth battalion, the major general in command of this particular column (See No. 1737,) will halt it, cause it to countermarch, and after having assured the direction of its guides on the colours of the battalions already established, he will cause it to form to the right into line of battle.

2391. The defile, in the preceding examples, has been supposed to be behind the centre of the line composed of an even number of battalions; but it may frequently be otherwise. For instance, it may be, that there are five battalions on the right, and only three on the left side of the defile. In this case, the general would first send an order to the colonels of the first and second battalions to pass the defile in simple column in advance, and then, seizing the proper time, give the command indicated, No. 2378, so that there may be no interruption in the movement. So, of the line present an odd number of battalions, a similar course would be pursued in respect to the odd battalion on the right or left of the defile.

2392. When the defile happens to be behind the right or left battalion of the line, the general will cause it to pass by a single wing; to this end, he will substitute, in his command, the indication by the left wing or by the right wing, for that of by the wings. The movement will commence by the wing the farthest from the defile, so that the battalion opposite to it may be the last to enter.

## ARTICLE X.

### Changes of front.

#### Perpendicular changes of front.

##### *1st Changes of front forward.*

(P1. LII. Movement of the first line.)

2393. A line being deployed, and the general wishing to cause it to change front on the right, he will first determine the direction of the new line of battle, cause two markers to be placed on it before the position to be occupied by the right company, first battalion, and immediately cause this company to be established against those markers; he will at the same time charge two mounted officers to determine successively the points on the line at which the subordinate battalions ought respectively to arrive, as indicated No. 1984, and following. He will then command:

##### *1. Change front forward, on the first battalion.*

2394. This having been repeated, the colonel of the first will immediately cause his battalion to execute a change of front forward, as prescribed, No. 1435, and following.

2395. Each of the other colonels will cause his battalion to ploy into double column, at company distance; which being executed, he will command: *1. Column, forward; 2. Guide right.*

2396. These dispositions being made, the general will add:

## 2. Quick—MARCH.

2397. At this, briskly repeated, the subordinate battalions will put themselves in movement towards the line of battle; the leading guide of each, advancing the left shoulder, will so direct himself that, on arriving at the point (g) opposite to the right marker (h,) placed in advance by the lieutenant colonel, he may find himself at a distance from the line of battle equal to the depth of the column.

2398. The head of each battalion having arrived at the point (g,) will turn to the right in order to march perpendicularly up to the line of battle, and when at three paces from this line, its colonel will cause the column to close in mass and to deploy.

2399. Each colonel will hold himself on the side of the direction, abreast with the leading division of his battalion, pending its march toward the line of battle.

2400. The lieutenant colonels will throw themselves in advance on the line, as prescribed, No 2357, for changes of direction of a line of battalions in columns. See No. 1967.

2401. The line being formed, the general will command:

## Colours—POSTS.

2402. A line will change front forward on its left, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

### *2d. Changes of front to the rear.*

(Pl. LIII. Movement of the first line.)

2403. To change front to the rear, on the right of the line, the general will cause the right company, first battalion, to be established on new direction, and place two markers before this company as prescribed, No. 1488; he will then command:

## 1. Change front to the rear, on the first battalion.

2404. This having been repeated, the colonel of the first will immediately cause his battalion to execute a change of front to the rear as prescribed, No. 1459, and following.

2405. Each of the other colonels will cause his battalion to ploy into double column at company distance, face it by the rear rank, and then command: *1. Column, forward; 2. Guide left.*

2406. These dispositions being made, the general will add:

## 2. Quick—MARCH.

2407. This having been briskly repeated, the subordinate battalions will put themselves in movement towards the line of battle; the leading guide, advancing the right shoulder, will direct himself as prescribed, No. 2597.

2408. The leading division of each battalion having arrived at the point (g,) will turn to the left in order to march up perpendicularly to the line of battle, then cross this line between the markers, placed in advance by the lieutenant colonel; and when the head of the battalion has passed the line a distance equal to its depth (closed) and three paces more, the colonel will cause the column to close in mass, to face by the front rank, and to deploy.

2409. The lieutenant colonels will throw themselves in advance on the line of battle, and establish upon it the two markers as prescribed, No. 2348.

2410. Changes of front to the rear, on the left of the line, will be executed according

to the same principles and by inverse means.

**3d. Central changes of front.**

(Pl. LIV. Movement of the first line.)

2411. The general wishing to change front on the fifth battalion, by throwing forward the left wing, will cause two markers to be placed on the direction he may wish to give to the new line before the position to be occupied by the right company of that battalion, and then cause this company to be established against the markers; he will, at the same time, order the colonel of the fourth to have the left company of his battalion conducted to and established on the same alignment, at twenty-two paces from the right of the fifth battalion.

2412. These dispositions being made, the general will command:

**1. Change front on the fifth battalion, left wing, forward. 2. Quick—MARCH.**

2413. The colonel of the fifth will immediately cause his battalion to execute a change of front forward on its right company, and the colonel of the fourth a change of front to the rear on the left company of his battalion.

2414. The battalions to the left of the fifth will each execute its movement as prescribed for the subordinate battalions in changes of front forward on the right of the line, and the battalions to the right of the fourth, will each execute its movement as indicated for changes of front to the rear on the left battalion.

2415. The general, wishing to throw the right wing forward, instead of the left, will take, as the basis of alignment, the left company of the fourth battalion, and command:

**1. Change front on the fourth battalion, right wing forward. 2. Quick—MARCH.**

2416. The fourth, and the battalions to its right, will execute a change of front forward, on the left of the fourth battalion.

2417. The fifth, and the battalions to its left, will execute a change of front to the rear, on the right of the fifth battalion.

**Oblique changes of front.**

2418. Oblique changes of front will be executed according to the same principles as the perpendicular changes, but observing what follows:

(Plates LV, LVI, LVII. Movement of the first line.)

2419. The directing battalion will conform itself to what is prescribed, No. 1453; the subordinate battalions, after being ployed into double columns will be directed towards the new line of battle by the means indicated, No. 2356, or No. 2349, according as their change of front may be forward or to the rear.

**Remark on changes of front.**

2420. In changes of front of several battalions, the general will always take the right or left company of one of the battalions as the basis of the movement.

**Changes of front of two lines.**

2421. When two lines, drawn up one behind the others have to change front, the first will always execute its movements as if it were alone.

2422. The position of the second line being necessarily subordinate to that of the first, it cannot, like the first, execute its movement on fixed pivot, consequently it will

employ, in order to pass into the new position, the means about to be indicated.

2423. The general of each line will cause the movement to be commenced as soon as basis of the new direction is established.

*1st. Changes of front perpendicularly forward on the right of the first line.*

2424. (P1. LII.) It is supposed that two each of eight battalions deployed, are so placed that the centre of each battalion of the second line is opposite to the middle of the interval to the right of the corresponding battalion of first line; the general-in-chief, wishing to cause a change of front forward to be executed on the right of the first line, will determine the direction of this line; he will place upon it three markers, two before the position to be occupied by the right company of the first battalion, and the a hundred paces beyond.

2425. These markers, who form the basis of alignment for the first line, being established, the basis will be prolonged by mounted officers in the manner indicated, No. 1983, and following.

2426. The general-in-chief will then order another officer to trace the new direction for the second line, which, it is supposed, ought to be established at three hundred and seventy paces from the first, and parallelly to this line; he will, at the same time, advise the general of each line the movement he wishes to have executed.

2427. The officer designated to trace the direction of the second line, (See figure 2,) will take three hundred and seventy paces along the front of the first line from its right, place a marker (B) where he halts, then a second (E) at a hundred paces from the first marker, in a direction parallel to the new position of the first line; and, finally, a third marker (D) at the point of appui for the right of the second line.

2428. The basis of the second line being thus established, it will be prolonged by mounted officers as above.

2429. The general of the second line will order the major general of its right wing to cause the three battalions on the right to break by company to the left in order to march to their new position. He will, at the same time, order the other major general of this line to give the commands, and make the preparatory dispositions for the execution or a change of front forward on the third battalion, by all the battalions to the left of the third, and then to direct these battalions upon their new position, to the left of the first three.

2430. As soon as the three battalions of the right shall have broken into column by company, and the five battalions of the left shall have been ployed into double columns, the major general of each portion of the line will put it in movement.

2431. The column, formed of the three battalions of the right, will march towards the new position, and be so directed as to pass, in its whole depth, the marker (D,) placed at the point where its right will rest when in line; arrived opposite to this marker, the column will prolong itself on the new line of battle; and when the right company (now in the rear) of the first battalion has arrived opposite to the point of appui (D,) the major general, who commands this column, will halt and form it to the right, into line of battle.

2432. The five battalions of the left will march diagonally to their front towards the new line of battle, in order to form successively to the left of the first three. This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed for changes of front forward. The colonel of the fourth will take care so to direct his battalion as to prolong it in rear of the line, leaving between the right flank of his column, and the line, a distance of at least fifty-five paces. The leading battalion having arrived at the point (g,) opposite to the right marker (h) placed in advance by the lieutenant colonel, will turn to the right in order to march up perpendicularly to the line of battle, and when it shall be at three paces from this line, the colonel will close the battalion into mass and deploy it.

2433. Each of the remaining battalions will regulate itself by that to its right; arrived at the point (i,) opposite to its right marker, the battalion will finish its movement as just prescribed for that of the fourth.

2434. The general of the second line will superintend its whole movement, but

more particularly see that the three battalions which broke by company, and which form the basis of alignment, be promptly and correctly established on the new line of battle. This rule is general for the second line in all changes of front.

2435. The change of front on the left of the line will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means; but as, by the supposition made, No. 2424, the second line is out-flanked on the left, to the extent of a half battalion, by the first line, only two battalions on the left of the second, will break into column by company.

***2d. Changes of front perpendicularly to the rear, on the right of the first line.***

2436. (Pl. LIII.) The general-in-chief, wishing to cause a change of front to the rear to be executed on the right of the first line, will cause the right company of the first battalion to be thrown back on the new direction; he will direct two markers to be placed before this company, and a third at a hundred paces from the point of appui for the right; he will next cause the line of battle to be prolonged by mounted officers, as indicated, No. 2425, and charge an officer to trace the new direction of the second line, which it is supposed ought to be established at three hundred and seventy paces from the first, and in a parallel direction.

2437. The officer charged with establishing the new direction of the second line (See figure 2,) will take three hundred and seventy paces in the prolongation of the first from its right; he will place a marker (B) where he halts, then a second (E,) at a hundred paces from the first marker in the direction that has been indicated to him, and a third (G) on the prolongation of the other two at the point of appui for the right of the second line.

2438. The basis of alignment being thus assured, it will be prolonged, and another marker or mounted officer placed at the point (C) where the right battalions will have to cross the new line of battle.

2439. The general of the second line will order the major general of its right wing to cause the three battalions of the right to break by company to the right, in order to march to their new position. He will at the same time order the other major general of this line to give the commands, and to make the preparatory dispositions, for the execution of a change of front to the rear, on the third battalion, by all the battalions to the left of the third, and then to direct these five battalions upon their new position to the left of the first three.

2440. As soon as the three battalions of the right have broken into column by company, and the five battalions of the left have ployed into double columns and faced by the rear rank, the major general, of each portion of the line, will put it in movement.

2441. The column, formed of the battalions of the right, will be directed on the officer (C) placed at the point where it ought to cross the new line of battle; and when this column has passed the line, it will change direction to the left in order to prolong itself on the line. The leading subdivision having arrived at company distance from the point (G,) the major general will halt the column and form it to the left and faced to the rear, in line of battle.

2442. The battalions of the left will march diagonally towards the new line of battle, according to the principles prescribed for changes of front, to the rear; but each leading guide, instead of advancing the shoulder, will turn to the left at the moment of putting himself in march. The fourth battalion will march in rear of the old position, and be so directed that, on arriving at its point of formation on the new, it may be perpendicular to this line, when it will be formed on it to the left of the first three battalions as prescribed, No. 2408, and following.

2443. Each of the remaining battalions will regulate itself on that which precedes it in the movement, and conform itself to what has just been prescribed for the fourth.

2444. The general of this line will conform himself in the execution of the movement, to what is indicated, No. 2434.

2445. The change of front to the rear on the left of the first line will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means; if the second line be outflanked on the left by the first, as supposed above, only the two battalions on the

left of the second line will break into column by company.

***3d. Changes of front perpendicularly on the fifth battalion of the first line, the left wing thrown forward.***

2446. (P1. LIV, figs. 1, 2.) The general-in-chief, wishing to cause a change of front to be executed on the fifth battalion, first line, by throwing forward the left wing, will determine the new direction of this line, by placing before the right of the fifth battalion, three markers in the manner indicated, No. 2424. As soon as they are established, he will cause the left company of the fourth battalion to be conducted to and established on the new alignment, and then cause two markers to be placed before this company

2447. The basis of the new direction of the first line being thus established, the general-in-chief will cause it to be prolonged by mounted officers; he will, at the same time, charge an officer to trace the new position of the second line, which it is supposed ought to be established three hundred and seventy paces from the first, and in a parallel direction.

2448. The officer charged with tracing the direction of the second line will pass along the front of the first towards its left, and take three hundred and seventy paces from the right of the fifth battalion; he will place a marker (B) where he halts, then a second (D) at a hundred paces, in front of the first line, in the direction that has been indicated to him, and a third (E,) a hundred paces in the rear on the prolongation of the two others.

2449. The basis of the new direction of the second line being thus established, it will be prolonged, and another marker or mounted officer placed at (C,) the point of intersection of the old and new positions of the second line.

2450. The general of the second line will cause the first seven battalions to break by company to the left, and order the colonel of the eighth to ploy his battalion into double column, at company distance, in order to march on the line of battle, and to form upon it to the left on the seventh.

2451. The first seven battalions having broken by company, the general of the line will put them in march; this column will march straight forward, and after having crossed the new line of battle, it will change direction to the right, and prolong itself on that line. The fifth company, fifth battalion (counting from its right) having nearly arrived opposite to the right of the corresponding battalion of the first line, which has served as the basis of the movement, the general of the second line will halt the column, and form it to the right and faced to the rear, into line of battle.

2452. As soon as the eighth battalion is ployed into double column, its colonel will conduct it to the new line of battle, in conformity with what is prescribed for the fourth battalion in changing front forward on the right of the first line.

2453. The general-in-chief will superintend the movement of the two lines: he will see that, in the first line, the directing battalions (the fifth and fourth) as well as the subordinate battalion which change front forward, execute their respective movements promptly, in order to facilitate the establishment of the second line, and he will retard the execution of the movement of the subordinate battalions which change front to the rear, until those of the second line may be sufficiently advanced not to obstruct the former.

2454. If, in changing front on the centre, it be wished to throw the right wing forward, the movement will be executed on the left of the fourth battalion, first line; but if the second line be outflanked to the left, as has been supposed, the last six battalions only will break by company to the right, and these battalions will be conducted to and formed on the line according to the principles prescribed, No. 2451. The column will be halted at the moment the left company of the fourth battalion arrives opposite to the colour of the corresponding battalion of the first line, which battalion has served as the basis of the movement.

2455. The second and first battalions will each execute its movement as prescribed for the eighth, No. 2452, but by inverse means.

### **Oblique changes of front.**

#### ***1st. Oblique change of front forward on the right of the first line.***

2456. (Pl. LV, figs. 1, 2.) This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed, Nos. 2421, and following, and No. 2424, and following, but observing what follows.

2457. If it be intended to establish the second line parallelly to the first, the general-in-chief, after having determined the direction of the first line, will cause the angle formed by the old and new directions to be measured in the manner following.

2458. The lieutenant colonel (See No. 42) of the right battalion, first line, will, on an intimation from the general-in-chief, place himself before and near the right file of this battalion; then face to the left, march fifty paces along the front rank, halt, and face to his right; he will next march perpendicularly to the front of this battalion, counting his paces; the general-in-chief, placed on the right, will halt him the moment that he comes between the general and the point of direction to the left of the new position; the lieutenant colonel will stand fast, till he receive an intimation to return to his battalion, and the general, after receiving a report of the number of paces taken by that officer to the front. (and the number will here be supposed to be seventy,) will cause the basis of alignment to be established as indicated, No. 2424.

2459. The basis of the new position of the first line being assured, and the angle formed by the old and new positions measured, the general-in-chief will charge an officer to trace the new position of the second line; to this end, he will give to this officer the number of paces to be taken along the front of the first line, say four hundred and sixty and the number of paces which the lieutenant colonel had counted marching -perpendicularly to the front, which, as has just been seen, was seventy.

2460. The officer designated will march towards the left of the first line the given distance; and in order to determine the new direction of the second line, he will, by order of the general, cause the lieutenant colonel of the battalion before which he halts, say at the point (B,) to repeat the operation indicated, No. 2458; the lieutenant colonel, setting off from the point (B,) will march fifty paces along the front of the line towards its left, and then seventy perpendicularly to the front, from (z) to (x;) (B x) will be the new direction of the second line.

2461. The basis of the new position of the second line being assured, it will be prolonged to the left and right.

2462. Those dispositions being made, the general of the second line will establish it in the new position by the means indicated, No. 2429, and following; but he will cause only the first and second battalions (under their brigadier general) to break by company.

2463. This column being formed, the second and first battalions will march straight forward, as soon as the head of the column has passed the new line of battle, it will change direction to the right in order to prolong itself on this line and to form to the right, into line of battle, in the manner indicated, No. 2451.

2464. Each of the other six battalions will execute its movement according to the principles prescribed for a change of front perpendicularly forward; the third battalion will break from the old line by a slight wheel to the left, in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 2452, for the fourth battalion.

2465. The change of front on the left of the line will be made according to the same principles; but if, according to what has been supposed, the second line be outflanked on the left by the first, only the eighth battalion will break to right by company.

### **Oblique change of front to the rear, on the right of the first line.**

2466. (Pl. LVI, figs. 1, 2.) This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed, No. 2419, and following, and No. 2456, and following, but observing what follows.

2467. The general-in-chief, after having determined the new direction of the first line, will cause the angle formed by this direction with the old to be measured behind the rear rank of the first battalion, by the means indicated, 2458.

2468. The officer who traces the new direction of the second line will march on the prolongation of the first, to the right of its point of appui the number of paces the general has indicated to him; he will place a marker (B) at the point where he halts, and a second (z) at fifty paces from the first towards the right of the line. An officer whom he will have designated, will throw himself close to the second marker (z,) and march perpendicularly to the rear, the number of paces fixed for the opening of the angle, which will be supposed to eighty; which being executed, the basis of alignment will be traced in the manner indicated, No. 2458, and then prolonged to the left; another marker or mounted officer will be placed at the point (C) where the old position of the second line, prolonged, cuts the new.

2469. These dispositions being made, the second line will be established in the new position by the means indicated for a change of front perpendicularly to the rear; but only two battalions will be broken by company, and these will then conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 2441.

2470. The remaining six battalions will each execute its movement in the manner prescribed, No. 2442, and following: the third battalion will conform itself to what is there designated for the fourth.

2471. The oblique change of front to the rear and the left of the first line, will be executed according to the same principles; but if, as has been supposed, the second line be outflanked to the left by the first, the eighth battalion only, of the second line, will break by company to the left.

***3d. Oblique change of front, on the fifth battalion, the left wing thrown forward.***

2472. (Pl. LVII, figs. 1, 2.) This movement will be executed according to the principles pre-scribed, No. 2419, and following, and No. 2446, and following, but observing what follows.

2473. The general-in-chief will throw himself on the right of the fifth battalion, and after having determined the new direction of the first line, he will cause the lieutenant colonel of this battalion to execute what is prescribed, No. 2458.

2474. The officer who traces the new position of the second line will, in passing along the front of the first towards its left, take from the right of the fifth battalion, the distance that the general-in-chief has given to him; he will then, in the name of the general, cause the lieutenant colonel of the battalion before which he halts, to repeat the operation just prescribed for the lieutenant colonel of the fifth; which being done, he will establish the basis of the new position, cause it to be prolonged to the left and right, and place a marker, or mounted officer, at the point (C) of intersection of the old and new positions of the second line.

2475. These dispositions being made, the second line will be established in its new position by the means indicated for a perpendicular change of front on the centre; but only the first five battalions will break by company: each of these battalions will finish its movement in the manner indicated, No. 2451.

2476. Each of the last three battalions will be ployed into double column, and established in the new position to the left of the first five, in the manner indicated, No. 2452; the sixth and seventh battalions will each, conforming itself to what is prescribed for the eighth, break from the old line by a slight wheel to the left.

2477. If, in changing front on the centre, it be wished to throw forward the right wing, the movement will be executed according to the same principles on the left of the fourth battalion, but observing what follows:

2478. The last five battalions will break by company to the right, and be established in the new position according to the principles prescribed, No. 2475, but by inverse means.

2479. The three other battalions will each be ployed into column doubled on its centre and established in the new position according to the principles prescribed, No. 2476; the third and second battalions will break from the old line by a slight wheel to the right.



***Remarks on changes of front of two lines.***

2480. The distance between the two lines and the position of the second in respect to the first cannot be fixed, as both distance and position depend on the ground and other circumstances.

2481. In the preceding examples, the distance between the two lines has been calculated at about three hundred and seventy paces, and the position of the second line supposed to be near parallel to that of the first; but the rules which have been prescribed are applicable to all changes of front of two lines, and give the means of throwing the second line to any distance from first, and of establishing it in whatever direction the general-in-chief may judge best.

2482. So in halting, sooner or later, the battalions of the second line which have broken into column by company, the general-in-chief can to this line any point of appui he may wish, consequently cause it to outflank the first to the right or left by any number of companies or battalions he may desire; or, finally, he can so dispose the second line that each of its battalions shall find itself exactly behind the corresponding battalion of the first line.

2483. In oblique changes of front, the distance to be paced by the officer charged with tracing the new position of the second line, will always greater than that which it is desired should separate the two lines after the termination of the movement; and this difference will be increased in proportion as the angle formed by the old and new directions is diminished.

2484. The number of battalions of the second line which ought to break by company, depend on the movement to be executed; thus, in changes of front forward, it will be the battalions between the point of appui (G) of the old position and the point (C) where the new position, prolonged, cuts the old.

2485. In changes of front to the rear, the number of battalions to break by company will be determined by the distance which there ought to be from the point of appui (G) of the new position, to the point (C) where the old position prolonged, cuts the new.

2486. What has just been said in the two preceding numbers applies to all changes of front, either perpendicular or oblique; but as, in the latter, the distance between (G) and (C) is less than in the perpendicular changes, and as it diminishes in proportion to the lessening of the angle formed by the old and new positions, it follows that the number of battalions to be broken by company ought also to be less.

2487. The same rule will be observed for changes of front on an interior battalion of the line as for changes of front forward; thus, in the change of front on the fifth battalion, left wing thrown forward, described No. 2446, and following, all the battalions are made to break by company which, in the old position, found themselves between the point of appui (G) and the point (C) where that position is cut by the new one.

2488. The battalions which break by company, having to serve as the basis of movement for the second line, the general of this line will carefully see that they are correctly established in the new position; to this end, he will assure himself, before these battalions are formed into line of battle, that they are in the proper direction, and, if not, make the necessary rectifications.

2489. This attention is particularly necessary when the second line is to be established parallelly to the first; for, in this case, if the change of front be perpendicular, the direction of the second line will depend solely on the coup d'oeil of the officer charged with tracing it, and if it be an oblique change, the means indicated for establishing the parallelism of the two lines (and which have been adopted on account of their simplicity) may make a difference between the angles formed by each old direction with its new. A part of the first line being already established in its new position, at the time for halting the battalions of the second line which are in column by company, it will always be easy for the general of the second line, with a practised eye, to rectify any error that may have been committed in the first trace made for his line.

**ARTICLE XI.****Order in echellon.**

2490. Echellons may be formed parallelly, or obliquely to the line of battle, either by the right or left of the line, and by battalion, brigade or division, as will be explained.

**Direct echellons in advancing.**

2491. The general, wishing to form direct echellons by the right and by brigade, will command:

*1. Echellons by brigade, at (so many) paces. 2. Forward, by the right, form echellons.*

2492. (Pl. LVIII, fig. 1.) These commands having been repeated, the brigadier general of the right brigade of the line will put it in march by the commands and means indicated, No. 2218, and following, for marching a line in the order in battle, and take the first as the directing battalion.

2493. The right battalion of the first echellon becoming thus the regulator of the march of all the echellons, the general, if he think it necessary, will cause markers to be placed behind this battalion in order to assure its direction.

2494. The following echellons will, in succession, put themselves in march, each observing to maintain between itself and the preceding echellon the number of paces prescribed in the first command; each brigadier general will cause that number of paces, taken by the preceding echellon, to be counted, before putting his own in march.

2495. In each subordinate echellon, a file closer, designated in advance, will place himself in rear of and opposite to the left file of the preceding echellon. This file closer will march exactly in the trace of that file and abreast with his own battalion; by this means, the colonel of the right battalion in each subordinate echellon will always be able to maintain the interval between his own battalion and that on the left of the preceding echellon.

2496. The right battalion in each echellon be charged with preserving the perpendicular distance which ought to separate it from the preceding echellon; the left battalion will march abreast with that on its right, and take care to preserve its interval to the right.

2497. The echellons being in march, when the general shall wish to re-form the line, he will give an order to the brigadier general of the first echellon to halt it.

2498. The first echellon being halted, the general will determine the direction to be given to the line, and the brigadier of the first echellon will establish it on that direction.

2499. The other echellons will continue to march, and be successively halted by their respective brigadiers at four paces from the line of battle.

2500. The second echellon being halted, its brigadier general will command: *1. Colours and general guides—ON THE LINE.* At this, the colours and general guides of each battalion will face to the right, and promptly place themselves on the alignment of the colours of the first echellon; which being done, the brigadier of the second will add: *2. Guides—ON THE LINE.* Each colonel, seeing his guides established, will align his battalion.

2501. The remaining echellons will establish themselves successively on the line of battle by the same means.

2502. Each brigadier will give the command, *Guides—POSTS,* as soon as his echellon is aligned; but the colours will not fall back into their places until the general shall add: *colours—POSTS,* which will be given after the establishment of the last

echellon on the line of battle.

2505. If, instead of re-forming the line, it be the wish of the general to halt the echellons, he will give an order to that effect to the brigadier of the first, and send a caution to the brigadiers of the others, to halt their echellons each in the position where it finds itself.

2504. Echellons by the left will be formed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

### **Direct echellons in retreat.**

2505. (Pl. LVIII, fig. 2.) It being the wish of the general to march in retreat by echelon, he will command:

*1. Echellons by brigade, at (so many) paces. 2. In retreat, by the right, form echellons.*

2506. These commands having been repeated, the brigadier of the first echellon will cause it to face about, and then put it in march.

2507. The brigadier of the second echellon will cause it to face about, soon enough to be able to put it in march the moment it has its distance from the first.

2508. Each of the remaining echellons will execute in its turn what has just been prescribed for the second.

2509. Each following echellon will throw out a file closer in the manner and for the purpose prescribed, No. 2495.

2510. The general, wishing to re-form the line, will order the brigadier of the first echellon to halt it.

2511. This echellon being halted, its brigadier will face it to the front, and establish it on the direction which may be indicated to him.

2512. Each following echellon will continue to march, and when at four paces beyond the line of battle, its brigadier will halt it, face it to the front, and, establish it on the line by the means prescribed, Nos. 2500—1.

2513. Echellons in retreat will be formed by the left according to the same principles and by inverse means.

### **Oblique echellons.**

2514. (Pl. XLIX, figs. 1, 2, 5, 4.) It being intended to form echellons obliquely to the line of battle, the movement will be executed in the following manner.

2515. Say that the movement is to be made by the right: the general will throw himself on the right of the line, and determine the new direction according to his views.

2516. The lieutenant colonel of the right battalion will then, on an intimation from the general, execute what is prescribed, No. 2458, for measuring the angle formed by the new and old directions. It will be supposed that the opening of this angle is such, that the lieutenant colonel, after marching fifty paces along the front of the battalion, had to take thirty perpendicularly forward, to bring himself in a line between the general and the point of direction to the left.

2517. The opening of the angle being thus ascertained, the brigadier of the first echellon will immediately cause it to change front forward on its right company.

2518. The general will then send an order to each of the other brigadiers to cause his echellon to change front forward to thirty paces on its right company.

2519. As each subordinate echellon shall have changed front, its brigadier will cause it to take its interval from the left of the echellon next on its right; to this end, he will cause it to break to the rear into column by company by the left; which being executed, he will order the left general guide of the left battalion to throw himself on

the prolongation of the right guides a little beyond the point where the left of the echellon will rest when in line.

2520. The general guide being correctly established, the brigadier of the echellon will put the column in march in order to prolong it on it on its line of battle; the leading guide will direct himself on the general guide, and when the right company, now in the rear, shall have passed twenty-two paces beyond the left of the echellon next on its right, the brigadier of the echellon, in column, will halt it, and form it to the right into line of battle.

2521. The echellons being thus formed, the general will order the brigadier of the first echellon to put it in march; each of the other brigadiers will put his echellon in march as soon as he sees the preceding one in movement.

The echellons thus disposed will march, be halted, or re-formed into line, according to the principles prescribed, No. 2492, and following, for direct echellons.

2523. Echellons will be formed obliquely by the left according to the same principles and by Inverse means.

### ***Remarks on the order in echelon.***

2524. The distance between echellons cannot be fixed, the number of paces necessarily depending on the views of the general; but it ought to be such as to allow the echellons to form themselves into squares without danger of their firing on each other.

2525. In the formation of oblique echellons, the distance between them will depend on the extent of their fronts and the angle formed by the old and new directions; this distance may be either too great or too small; if too great, the general, before putting the echellons in march, will give an order to the brigadiers of the sub-ordinate echellons to advance, and then halt them at the prescribed distance: if, on the contrary, the distance be too small, the subordinate echellons will only put themselves in movement as each has the given distance from the one next in its front.

2526. In changes of front, for the formation of oblique echellons the angle formed by the old and new directions being necessarily acute, the subordinate battalion in each echellon will change front by the same means as the directing one, instead of ploying into double column in order to march and deploy on the new line.

2527. A line of battalions, deployed, will habitually march in echellons; but if the general judge it to be more advantageous, he may ploy each battalion into column by division, in rear of its first division, if the echellons are formed by the right, and in rear of the last division of the battalion, if echellons be formed by the left.

2528. When echellons are composed of battalions in columns, if the movement be by the right, the file closer who ought to march abreast with the directing battalion of each subordinate echellon, will place himself on the prolongation of the right guides of the left battalion in the echellon next preceding his own, and march exactly in the trace of those guides. If the movement be made by the left, the file closer will place himself on the prolongation of the left guides of the right battalion in the preceding echelon.

## **ARTICLE XII.**

### **To retreat by alternate battalions.**

2529. The retreat by alternate, or odd and even battalions, will be executed as follows.

2530. (Pl. LX.) The general, intending to execute the retreat by alternate battalions, will give information of his purpose to the two next officers in rank, who are respectively to command the lines of odd and even battalions, and at the same time indicate to the one who is to commence the movement the position in which he will halt his line. The general will then command:

**1. Retreat by alternate battalions. 2. Odd (or even) battalions, commence the movement.**

2531. These commands having been repeated, the officer (first major general or first brigadier) entitled to command the line of odd battalions, and which line it is supposed ought to commence the movement, will command:

**1. Odd battalions, face to the rear.**

2532. This having also been repeated, the colonels of the designated battalions will cause them to face about.

2533. The commander of the odd battalions will then add:

**3. *The (—) the battalion of direction. 3. Battalions, forward 4. Quick—***  
***MARCH.***

2534. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the colonels of the odd battalions, these battalions will commence the march, and direct themselves perpendicularly to the rear. The colonels of the subordinate battalions will maintain them abreast with the directing one in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 2242, when the line arrives at the position indicated by the general-in-chief, the general of this line will command:

**1. *Battalions. 2. HALT.***

2535. At the second command, the line will halt, each colonel will immediately face his battalion about, the commander of the line will rectify the alignment of the directing battalion, the other battalions will be dressed by that, without constraint, however, as to being absolutely on the same general alignment.

2536. As soon as the odd battalions which form the second line have faced about, the general of the first line (of even battalions) will command:

**1. *Face to the rear.***

2537. This will be executed as prescribed, No. 2532; the general of this line will then command:

**2. *The (—) the battalion of direction. 3. Battalions, forward. 4. Quick—***  
***MARCH.***

2538. The first line will march in retreat by the means prescribed, No. 2534; each battalion will be directed upon the middle of the corresponding interval in the second line, cross this line, and march perpendicularly to the rear. When it arrives at the position indicated by the general-in-chief, the first line will be halted and faced about, by the commands and means indicated, Nos. 2534—5.

2539. The second line, become first, will execute the same movement, and so on alternately.

2540. The general-in-chief will superintend both lines, and determine, according to the ground and the distance he may wish to have between the lines, the position each ought successively to occupy.

**To re-form the line.**

2541. The general-in-chief, wishing to re-form the line, will cause the drums to beat a short roll after the first line (the one actually in front) is put in march, which roll will be briskly repeated by all the drums of this line.

2542. The battalions of the first line will continue to march, and when they find themselves exactly in their intervals of the second, their respective colonels will halt them, face them about and rectify their alignment: the general-in-chief, will then give a general alignment if he judge it necessary.

***Remarks on the retreat by alternate battalions.***

2543. The general of each line will endeavour to maintain the necessary harmony between its battalions, notwithstanding the intervals between them; to this end, he will look to the strict execution of what is prescribed, Nos. 2534—5.

2544. He will more particularly see that all the battalions, after crossing the second line, direct themselves perpendicularly to the rear, this being the only means by which the intervals can be preserved with sufficient accuracy to enable the two lines to re-form into one.

**ARTICLE XIII.**

**Passage of lines.**

**Passage of lines in retreat.**

2545. (P1. LXI, fig. 1.) The general-in-chief wishing to execute the passage of lines in retreat, will send an order to the general of the second line to place it in the position it ought to occupy, if it be not already so placed.

2546. The battalions of this line will form double columns, closed in mass, and so disposed that the centre of each mass may be opposite to the middle of the interval to the right or left of the corresponding battalion of the first line according to the order given by the general-in-chief.

2547. These dispositions being made, the general-in-chief will send an order to the general of the first line, to execute the passage of lines in retreat: the latter will immediately command:

***1. Pass the line in rear.***

2548. This command having been repeated, each colonel will cause his battalion to face about; which being executed, the general of the first line will add:

***2. Battalions, forward. 3. Quick—MARCH.***

2549. At the word *march*, briskly repeated, the line will march in retreat; each colour-bearer will direct himself upon the middle of the corresponding interval in the second line.

2550. The first line being about forty paces from the second, each colonel will cause the companies of his battalion which are masked by the second line to execute the passage of obstacles, which will be executed as prescribed, School of the Battalion.

2551. The battalions of the first line will continue to march, and pass the second, when the colonels will immediately cause the companies which were broken to the rear to return into line.

2552. The colonels of the second line, without regulating themselves on each other, will begin to deploy their battalions as soon as the latter are cleared by the battalions of the first line.

2553. As soon as the first line arrives at the distance in the rear indicated by the general-in-chief, the general of this line will halt it, face it about, and then make the dispositions which may have been ordered.

### **Passage of lines in advancing.**

2554. (P1. LXI, fig. 2.) The general-in-chief, wishing to cause the passage of lines advancing to be executed, will send an order to the general of the second line, to make the dispositions in rear of the first indicated, Nos. 2545—6, If they be not already made.

2555. The second line being thus disposed, the general-in-chief will send an order to the general of this line, to execute the passage of lines advancing, and give notice thereof to the general of the first line.

2556. The general of the second line will immediately command:

*1. Pass the line in front. 2. Battalion., forward.*

2557. These commands having been repeated, each colonel will command: *guide centre.*

2558. The general of the line will then add:

*3. Quick—MARCH.*

2559. At this, briskly repeated, the second line will advance; each battalion will direct itself upon the middle of the corresponding interval in the first line.

2560. At the approach of the second line, each colonel in the first will cause the right and left companies of his battalion to be ployed, as in mass, behind the contiguous companies in time not to arrest the movement of the battalions of the second line.

2561. The battalions of the second line will thus pass the first; and when they shall have cleared it the general of the second will designate the directing battalion. This battalion will take the guide to the right, and the subordinate battalions will take the guide on the side next to the directing battalion.

2562. The battalions having arrived at the given position, the commander of the line will cause them to halt and to deploy.

2563. As soon as the second line has passed be first, the colonels of the latter will cause the right and left companies of their respective battalions to return into line.

## **ARTICLE XIV.**

### **Dispositions against cavalry.**

2564. No matter what the number of battalions which compose a column or line, not more than two, or three, will be formed into the same square.

2565. A square of more than one battalion ought always to have a reserve. If of three battalions, this reserve will be formed of the fourth (or last) division in the first and second battalions: in a square of two battalions, the reserve will be the last division of the first battalion. This rule is general whether the column be formed with the right or left in front.

2566. (P1. LXII, fig. 1.) Three battalions will be supposed in column by company at full distance and right in front: the commander (major general or brigadier general) wishing to form square, will first form divisions; which being executed, he will close the column to half (company) distance on any division he may designate, say the headmost one; to this end, he will command:

*1. To form square. 2. To half distance, close column. 3. Quick—MARCH.*

2567. At the command *march*, the column will close to half distance by the means

heretofore indicated, but observing what follows.

2568. The last division, first battalion, and the last of the second battalion, having to re-main in reserve in the square, the chiefs of these divisions will, at the commencement of the movement, break off to the rear three files from the right and three from the left; the guides will close upon the outer files remaining in line, and the left guide of each of these divisions will march in the trace of the file opposite to him in the division immediately preceding his own. Each of these two divisions will close in mass on that which precedes it.

2569. In the second and third battalions, the first division will close to half distance on the one next to the last (there may be either five or four divisions per battalion) in the preceding battalion; the lieutenant colonels of the second and third battalions will each throw himself in advance to mark the halting point for his first division.

2570. The last division, third battalion, will close in the manner indicated, No. 1482.

2571. The pioneers and music, of each battalion, will conform themselves to what is pre-scribed, No. 1483.

2572. At the commencement of the movement, the major of the first battalion will place himself abreast with its first division, the major of the second battalion in a corresponding position, and the major of the third abreast with its last division—all on the right flank of the column. The column being closed, the lieutenant colonel of the third battalion will place himself abreast with its last division.

2573 If, instead of closing the column on its headmost division, it be the wish of the general to execute the movement on any other, say the first of the second battalion, he will command:

*1. To form square. 2. On the first division,, second battalion, to half distance dose column. 3. Quick—MARCH.*

2574. The first and second commands having been repeated, the chief of the last division, first battalion, will break off to the rear three files from the right and three from the left; which being done, the colonel will cause the battalion to face about.

2575. The files broken to the rear, will face about with their division. The lieutenant colonel will throw himself in advance at company distance from the first division, second battalion, to mark the point for halting the last division, but one (the third, if there are but four) of his battalion.

2576. At the command march, the battalion will close; the files of the last division broken off will march in front of its rear rank, now, leading; and when the front rank of this division has passed six paces beyond the lieutenant colonel, the chief of the division will halt it, face it about, and align it by the left.

2577. The division next to the last will be halted opposite to the lieutenant colonel. The other divisions of the battalion will close by the means indicated, No. 1008, and following.

2578. The second and third battalions will each execute its movement as prescribed, No. 2568, and following.

2579. The preparatory column being formed at half distance, the general can, according to circumstances, put it in march, or cause it to form square; if the latter, he will command:

*1. Form square.*

2580. (P1. LXII, fig. 2.) This having been repeated by the colonels, each will command: *right and left, into line, wheel.*

2581. At this command, the lieutenant colonel and major, first battalion, will align their left and right guides on those of the last division, third battalion, who, to this end, will each stand fast, but hold his piece perpendicularly between the eyes, the butt up.



2582. The chief of the headmost division of the column will caution it to stand fast, and the chief of the rearmost division will command: *1. fourth (or fifth) division, forward; 2. Guide left.*

2583. In all the intermediate divisions, except in reserve, each captain will throw himself before the centre of his company, and caution it that it will have to form to the right or to the left, into line.

2584. The chiefs of the two divisions in reserve will each command: *1. Fourth (or fifth) division, forward; 2. Guide centre.* At this last command, the guides on the flanks will retire to the line of file closers.

2585. The colour-bearer, pioneers, and music, will conform themselves to what is prescribed, Nos. 1487, 1485.

2586. The general will then command:

### *3. Quick—MARCH.*

2587. At this, briskly repeated, the square will be formed; the headmost and rearmost divisions of the column will conform themselves to what is prescribed for the same divisions in a battalion square; the companies of the remaining divisions, except of those in reserve, will each form itself to the right or to the left, into line, according to its position on the right or left flank of the column. The music and the divisions in reserve, will advance a space equal to the front of a company.

2588. As soon as the divisions in reserve halt, their chiefs will cause their platoons to double; for this purpose, each chief will command: *1. On the centre, double platoon.; 2. Quick—MARCH.*

2589. At the first command, each chief of platoon will throw himself before its centre; the chief of each outer platoon will cause it to face inwards, and then break the three headmost files to the rear.

2590. At the command march, these outer platoons will double on the interior or standing platoons, and place themselves in the rear, at three paces from the latter; their chiefs will on the centre, and the files which had been broken to the rear, will return into line.

2591. The square being formed, the general will command:

### *2. Guides POSTS.*

2592. At this, which will not be repeated, the guides, the general and his staff, the field and staff as well as each chief of division, who are without, will enter the square.

2593. The captains whose companies have formed to the right, into line, will remain on the left of their companies. Their left guides will cover them in the rear rank, and the covering sergeant, will take post as file closers behind the right of their respective companies.

2594. The three lieutenant colonels will place themselves behind the third front; the one of the first battalion, near the angle formed by the first and third fronts; the one of the second battalion, opposite to its first division, and the other near the angle formed by the third and fourth fronts. The majors will place themselves behind the second front opposite to these positions of their respective lieutenant colonels.

2595. The second, third, first, and fourth fronts the square will be commanded by the field officers according to rank.

2596. If the column be at a half instead of full distance, the general will, before forming square, order the colonels of the first and second battalions each to close his last division in mass, on the one preceding it; which being executed, the colonels of the second and third battalions will march them forward, and each halt his battalion When its first division is at company distance from the last division but one of the preceding battalion; the chiefs of the divisions in reserve, will each, on putting his division in march, in order to close, cause three files to break off to the rear from the right and left of the division.

2597. If the column be closed in mass, the general will cause it to take half distance

on any division he may designate, say the first of the second battalion; to this end, he will command:

***1. To form square. 2. On the first division, second battalion, take half distance. 3. Quick— MARCH.***

2598. (Pl. LXII, fig. 7.) The column will take distances according to the principles and by the means indicated, No. 1920, and following, but observing what follows.

2599. Before the movement begins, the general will send two officers to place themselves on the prolongation of the guides, a little beyond the points at which the headmost and rearmost divisions of the column will arrive. The majors of the first and third battalions, placed respectively by the side of their leading guides, will see that each directs himself exactly on the officer in his front.

2600. At the third command, the lieutenant colonel, first battalion, will throw himself to company distance in front of the first division, second battalion, in order to mark the halting point for the last division, but one, of his battalion. The chief of its last (fifth or fourth) division will, at the moment of putting the column in march, cause the three files on its right, and the three on the left, to break off to the rear as prescribed, No. 2584, and he will halt his division the instant the one immediately preceding shall arrive opposite to the lieutenant colonel.

2601. The colonel of the second, whose battalion takes its distances to the rear, having repeated the first and second commands, the chief of its last division will immediately cause files to be broken off as above; which being done, they colonel will cause the battalion to face about.

2602. The files of its last division, broken to the rear, will face about with the battalion, and whilst taking distance, they will march in front of the rear rank; the chief of this division will regulate himself by the division next in his rear, and command *halt* at the moment the latter halts.

2603. In the third battalion, the lieutenant colonel will, in advance, throw himself to company distance behind the guide of the last division but one of the second battalion, in order to mark the halting point for the first division of his battalion.

2604. If it be the wish of the general, instead of forming square, merely to dispose the column for the execution of this movement, in case of need, he will, on this supposition, cause distances to be taken by the head of the column; to this end, he will command:

***1. To form square. 2. By the head of column, take half distance.***

2605. This movement will be executed as prescribed, No. 1894, and following; but the divisions to be held in reserve, and the one, respectively, next in their rear, will observe what follows.

2606. At the first command, each chief of a reserve division will cause files to be broken off as above; he will then give the cautionary commands in time to enable his division to march at the same instant with the one next in front.

2607. Each chief of division that immediately follows a reserve division will give the command march, the moment his division has company distance from the last, but one, in the preceding battalion.

2608. In each battalion, the music will place themselves as prescribed, No. 1483, behind the inner platoons of the second division, as soon as the latter has taken its distance.

2609. In a column left in front, those divers movements will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, except that the same divisions will be held in reserve, as in a column right in front.

2610. The column being formed into square, when the general shall wish to march it in advance, he will command:

***1. Form column. 2. Quick—MARCH.***

611. (Pl. LXII, fig. 3.) This movement will be executed as prescribed, No. 1508, and following, but observing what follows.

2612. At the first command, the chief of each division in reserve will command: form division.

2613. At this, the chief of each outer platoon, now in the rear of a centre platoon, will give the commands and make the preparatory movement, for deploying on the corresponding centre platoon, and at the command march, briskly repeated by the colonel and the chief of the reserve division, the movement will be executed.

2614. The division being re-formed, the chief of the outer platoons will retake their places in column, and the chief of the division will again break off three files from each of its flanks.

2615. If, before the formation of the square, the left of the column had been in front, the column would be re-formed by the same commands and according to the same principles.

2616. (PL LXII, fig. 4.) For marching in retreat, the general will form the column by the commands and means just indicated.

2617. The column being formed, the general will cause it to face by the rear rank by the commands and means indicated, No. 1515, and following, and No. 1549, and following; the headmost and rearmost divisions will execute, in this case, what is prescribed for the first and fourth divisions in a battalion square.

2618. The chiefs of the reserve divisions, before causing them to face about, will cause their broken files to return into line; each chief will then close his division in mass on the one next in front; which being executed, he will again cause the same files to break off to the rear.

2619. (Pl. LXII, fig. 5.) The column, thus disposed, will march and form square as if it faced by the front rank, or it may be faced by the front rank and marched in advance by the commands and means indicated, Nos. 1520—1. If it form square, whilst faced by the rear rank, each chief of a reserve division will cause its outer platoons to double as prescribed, No. 2688, and following.

2620. The square being formed by the rear rank, the column, for marching, will be re-formed according to the principles prescribed, No. 1519. Each chief of a reserve division, will cause it to re-form as indicated, No. 2612 and following.

### **To reduce the square.**

2621. A square, of several battalions, will be reduced by the commands and means prescribed, No. 1522, and following.

### ***Remarks on the formation of squares.***

2622. (Fl. LXIII, fig. 2.) A column disposed for the formation of the square, being in march, when the general shall wish to cause it to be covered by skirmishers, he will cause one or more companies of the reserve to be thrown out for the purpose: these skirmishers will never pass beyond the distance of fifty paces from the square.

2623. The general, wishing to form square, will halt the column and cause the drums to beat to the colour for the re-entrance of the skirmishers.

2624. The reserve divisions being intended not only to furnish skirmishers for covering the column, but also to sustain the parts of the square which may be the most hotly attacked, no fixed place can be assigned to those divisions in a square; but, when in column, each will take the place which has been indicated.

2625. When a column, closed in mass, has to form square, it will begin by taking company distance; but if so suddenly threatened by cavalry as not to allow time for this disposition, it will be formed in the following manner.

2626. The general will command:

*1. Column against cavalry.*

2627. (P1. LXII. fig. 8.) This having been repeated, the guides will pass into the lines of file closers; the chief of the headmost division will caution it to stand fast, and pass behind the rear rank: the chief of the rearmost division will cause it to face about, and its file closers will pass at the same time behind the front rank, become the rear; the outer file of each of these divisions will then face outwards.

2628. In the intermediate divisions, each captain will put as many files, from the outer flank of his company, into line of battle, as will close up the distance in front of its outer flank. The captains in the division next to that in the rear, will also close up, in like manner, the distance between their outer flanks and the rearmost division. The files of each company, remaining in column, will close on their outer files, formed into line of battle, in order to create a vacant space in the middle of the column.

**To form square from line of battle.**

2629. The three battalions being deployed, they will form square by the means indicated, School of the Battalion.

2630. If it be intended that the direction of the square shall be parallel to the line of battle, the general will cause the line to break to the rear into column by division, with the right or left in front, and then close the column to company distance, on any division he may prefer according to the principles prescribed, 1461 1841, and following, and No. 2566, and following.

2631. (P1. LXII, fig. 6.) The intention being that the square shall be perpendicular to the line of battle, the general will cause the line to ploy into column by division at company distance, but in preference on the right or left division of a battalion; to this end, he will command:

*1. To form square. 2. Column at half distance by division. 3. On the first (or fifth) division (such) battalion, right (or left) in front column. 4. Quick—  
MARCH.*

2632. This movement will be executed according to the principles prescribed (See No. 901) for ploying a line into column by division at company distance, but observing what follows.

2635. The chief of each reserve division will cause it to take its place in the column, so that there may be only three paces between it and the division next in front; and as soon as his division has been halted and aligned, he will break off to the rear, the three files from each flank.

2634. The chief of each division that enters the column next after a reserve division, will cause it to take company distance from the division next in front of the reserve division.

2635. (Pl. LXIII, fig. 2.) The preceding examples have been given to serve for a line of three or two battalions; but if the line be composed of a sufficient number of battalions to be divided into many squares, the latter will be disposed by echellons. The perpendicular distance between the echellons will be such that, the squares being formed, the first front of the second may find itself at least fifty paces farther to the rear than the fourth front of the first echellon. This rule is equally applicable to a column to be formed into several squares.

2636. When the echellons have to march in advance or in retreat, they will be formed according to the principles prescribed, No. 2491, and following, whether the battalions, which are to compose the echellons, be already disposed for the formation of squares, or be yet deployed. If the echellons are to remain at a halt, they will be formed on the centre, or on one of the wings, as will be explained.

2637. It is supposed that the general-in-chief wishes to form the echellons on the

centre: he will command:

*1. To form square. 2. Echellon by battalion (or brigade) at (so many) paces. 5. On (such) battalion (or brigade) right (or left) wing in front, form echellons. 4. Quick—MARCH.*

2638. At the command *march*, the portion of the line which is to form the directing echellon will stand fast.

2639. All the other echellons will put themselves in march at the same time, each taking its direction from the side of the directing echellon, and whether it march to the front or the rear, it will be halted by its commander when it has taken the given number of paces from the next echellon on the side of the direction.

2640. At the commencement of the movement, the directing echellon will form square; the commander of each of the other echelons, after halting it, will rectify the alignment so that it may be parallel to the directing echellon, and then cause it to form square.

2641. A column which has to be divided into several squares will be thrown into echellons according to the same principles: the portion which is to constitute the directing echelon will stand fast, and the others will march to the right or left, to the distance fixed by the general-in-chief; either by the flank, or by breaking from the general column by a wheel.

### **Oblique squares.**

2642. A line threatened by cavalry, and without time to form squares disposed in echellons, will be formed into oblique squares by battalion in the following manner: The general-in-chief will command:

*1. Oblique squares by battalion. 2. On the first division, form square*

2643. (Pl. LXIII, figs. 5, 4.) At the second command the lieutenant colonel of each battalion will trace the alignment of the first division in the following manner: he will place himself before and near the right file of this division, face to the left, march twelve paces along the front rank, halt, face to his right, march twelve paces perpendicularly to the front, halt again and immediately place a marker (o) at this point.

The covering sergeant (s) of the right company will step, at the same time, before its right file, half face to the right, and conform the line of his shoulders to that of the shoulders of the marker (o.) These markers being established, the lieutenant colonel will place a third (d) at the point where the left of the division will halt.

2644. The chief of the first division will immediately establish it by a wheel to the right on a fixed pivot, against the markers, and align it by the left.

2645. Pending the execution of those dispositions, the colonel will give the commands, and make the preparatory movements for ploying his battalion into column at company distance in rear of the first division; and as soon as this division is in the new direction, he will cause the movement to commence, which will be executed in the manner indicated, No. 1528 and No. 1581, but observing what follows.

2646. The chief of the second division, instead of breaking the headmost files to the rear, will break them to the front, and at the command *march*, he will conduct his division towards the point of entrance into the column. Arrived at this point, he will halt in his own person, cause his division to wheel by file to the right, instructing the right guide to direct himself parallelly to the first division; and as soon as the left file has passed, its chief will halt the division, and align it by the left. The other divisions will break to the rear, but slightly; each will enter the column as prescribed for the second, and the moment the battalion is ployed into column, the colonel will cause it to form square.

2647. The formation of battalions into oblique squares, on the left division of each, will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

2648. In the preceding example the line was supposed to be deployed; but if it be formed of battalions already in columns, the desired obliquity will be established by causing each battalion to change direction by the flank; to this end, the general-in-chief will command.

*1. To form oblique squares by battalion. 2. Change direction by the right (or left) flank.*

2649. (PL LXIII, figs. 6 and 7.) At the second command, the lieutenant colonel of each battalion will trace the new direction in the following manner: he will place before the right and left files, of the headmost division, two markers (s r,) and a third (p) on the prolongation of the first two, on the side of the change of direction, and at twelve paces from the flank of the column. He will then place himself before the third marker, and take twelve steps perpendicularly to the front, halt and finish the trace of the new direction in the manner indicated, No. 2643. Pending this operation, each colonel will give the commands, and make the preparatory dispositions for a change of direction by the flank, and cause it to be executed as soon as the new direction is traced. The change of direction having been executed, he will cause the square to be formed.

2650. A column at full distance may be formed into oblique squares by the same means: each battalion will be closed to half distance on its headmost subdivision; which being executed, the battalion will change direction, as has just been prescribed, and then form square.

**To re-form the line.**

2651. (Pl. LXIII, fig. 5.) The line being disposed in oblique squares, when the general-in-chief shall wish to re-form it, he will cause the squares to break; to this end, he will command:

*1. Reduce squares.*

2652. At this, briskly repeated, each colonel will cause his square to break. Pending the execution of the movement, the general-in-chief will throw himself fifty or sixty paces in front of the square he may judge the most conveniently placed to become the directing battalion, say the third; he will place two markers (d h) in the direction he may wish to give to the line, and as soon as they are established, he will command:

*1. The third, the battalion of direction. 2. Guides—ON THE LINE.*

2653. These commands having been repeated, the lieutenant colonel of each battalion will detach himself with two markers) whom he will establish on the prolongation of those placed by the general-in-chief, preserving its interval of twenty-two paces on the side of the directing battalion.

2654. As soon as the markers are established before the front of a battalion, its colonel will command: *1. Column, forward; 2. Guide right; 3. Head of column to the left; 4. Quick—MARCH.*

2655. At the command *march*, the battalion will put itself in movement; the first division will wheel to the left, and direct itself so as to arrive parallelly to the line of battle; when at three paces from this line, the colonel will halt the battalion, and if any division be not yet in the new direction, it will be promptly brought into it. The battalion being halted, the colonel will align it by flank next to the directing battalion.

**Remark on Oblique Squares.**

2656. The formation of a line into oblique squares, gives the facility of placing it, what-ever be its extent, as promptly in safety against the attacks of cavalry as if it were a single battalion, without causing the line to quit the position it occupies, and then, after re-forming each square into column, the line may be marched in any direction. The fires of oblique squares also cross each other in every direction, except that of the squares themselves, and this even when the battalions, before being formed into squares, happened not to be on the same alignment, and it is thus that they are represented Plate LXIV.

-----  
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**OF**

**Vol. III.**

**TITLE V.**

**EVOLUTIONS OF THE LINE.**

*NOTE—The references are to paragraphs, by number, and not to pages, unless so expressed.*

**General principles and division of the evolutions of the line,**.....No. 1715  
**Posts of the general-in-chief; or the major generals and brigadier generals in line**  
**and in column** ..... 1719  
**General rules for commands** .....1729

**PART FIRST.**

**Opening and closing ranks, and the execution of the different fires.**

**ART. 1. To open ranks,** .....No. 1739  
 To close ranks, .....1741  
**ART. 2. Manual of arms,** ..... 1742  
**ART. 3. Loading at will, and the firings,** - - - - -1743  
 To rest, - - - - -1762

**PART SECOND.**

**Different modes of passing from the order in battle to the order in column.**

**ART. 1. To break to the front to the right or left into column,** - - - - -  
 - - No. 1711  
 To break to the front to the right to march to the left, and the reverse, - - - - -  
 - - - 1776, 1771

**ART. 2. To break to the rear by the right or left into column,-** - - - - -  
 - - - 1780

**ART. 3. To ploy the line into close column or mass:**

(General rule,) - - - - - 1791  
 In rear of the directing battalion, - - - - - 1784, 1798  
 In front of the directing battalion, - - - - - 1792, 1799  
 On an interior battalion, - - - - - 1800

**PART THIRD.**

**March in column, and the other movements incident thereto.**

**ART. 1. To march in column at full distance,** - - - - -No. 1808  
 The column arriving in front, or in rear of the line of battle, to prolong it on that line, - - - - -  
 - - - - 1813

**ART. 2. Column in route,** - - - - - 1818

**ART. 3. To change direction in column at full distance** - - - - -  
 - - - - -1821

**ART. 4. To halt the column,** - - - - -1824

**ART. 5. To close the column to half distance or in mass:**

- 1st. On the leading company, - - - - -1841
- 2d. On its rearmost company, - - - - -1848
- 3d. On an interior battalion, - - - - -1857

**ART. 6. To march in column at half distance, or closed in mass,** - - - - -

- - - - - 1863

**ART. 7. To change direction in column at half distances,** - - - - -

- - - - - 1868

**ART. 8. To change direction in column closed in mass:**

- 1st. In marching, - - - - -1869
- 2d. From a halt, - - - - -1886

**ART. 9. Being in column at half distance, or closed in mass to take distances:**

- 1st. By the head of the column, - - - - -1893
- 2d. On the rear of the column, - - - - -1896
- 3d. On the head of the column, - - - - -No. 1908
- 4th. On an interior battalion, - - - - -1919

**ART. 10. Countermarch,** - - - - -1928

**ART. 11. Being in column by company, and at a halt to form divisions,** - - - - -

- - - - -1937

**PART FOURTH.**

**Different modes of passing from the order in column, to the order in battle.** - - - - -

- - - Page 52

**ART. 1. Manner of determining the line of battle,** - - - - -No. 1943

**ART. 2. Different modes of passing from column at full distance into line of battle:**

- 1st. To the left or right, - - - - -1944
- By inversion to the right or left, - - - - -1949
- (Successive Formations.)
- 2d. On the right or left, - - - - -1960
- (General rule), - - - - -1972
- 3d. Forward, - - - - -1974
- 4th. Faced to the rear - - - - -1990

**ART. 3. Formations into line of battle composed of two movements:**

- 1st. To the left or right, and forward, - - - - -2001
- 2d. To the left or right, and faced to the rear, - - - - -
- - - 2006
- 3d. Forward on an interior battalion, - - - - -2016
- 4th. Faced to the rear on an interior battalion. - - - - -
- - - 2022

**ART. 4. Different modes of passing from column at half distance into line of battle:**

- 1st. To the left or right, - - - - -2030
- 2d. On the right or left, - - - - -2032
- 3d. Forward, - - - - -2053
- 4th. Faced to the rear. - - - - -2055

**ART. 5. Columns closed in mass. Deployment by battalion in mass:**

- 1st. Faced to the front, - - - - -2057
- On the headmost battalion, - - - - -2039
- On the rearmost battalion, - - - - -2055
- On an interior battalion, - - - - -2065
- 2d. Faced to the rear, - - - - -2087
- 3d. Faced to the left, - - - - -No. 2088
- 4th. Faced to the right, - - - - -2102
- Same movement by inversion, - - - - -2103
- Deployment of masses, - - - - -2110
- Deployment of a column without the intermediate deployment by battalion in mass, - - - - -
- - - 2132



Movements which may be executed by a line of battalions in masses

- 1st. The advance in line, - - - - - 2150
- 2d. To halt the line marching in advance, and to align it, - - - - - 2162
- 3d. The line marching in advance to cause it to change direction, - - - - - 2167
- 4th. To march in retreat, - - - - - 2179
- 5th. To change direction of the line marching in retreat, - - - - - 2187
- 6th. To break the line formed by battalion in mass, and to re-form the column into line, - - - - - 2193
- 7th. To ploy the line of masses into general column closed in mass, - - - - - 2203

Rules for inversions, - - - - - 2214

**PART FIFTH**

**To march in line, and movements incident thereto.**

**ART. 1. To advance in line of battle deployed,** - - - - - 2218

**ART. 2. To halt the line, and to align it,** - - - - - 2252

**ART. 3. Change of direction advancing in line of battle,** - - - - - 2263

**ART. 4. To retreat in line of battle,** - - - - - 2279

**ART. 5. To halt the line marching in retreat, and to align it,** - - - - - 2283

**ART. 6. Change of direction in marching in retreat,** - - - - - 2287

**ART. 7. March in line of battle of a line of battalions in columns,** - - - - - 2295

- 1st. To cause the line of columns to advance. - - - - - 2307
- 2d. To halt the line of columns, and to deploy it, - - - - - 2326
- 3d. The line of columns marching in advance, to cause it to change direction, - - - - - 2335
- 4th. To cause the line of columns to march in retreat, - - - - - 2541
- 5th. To halt the line of columns marching in retreat and to align it, - - - - - 2345
- 6th. The line of columns marching in retreat to cause it to change direction, - - - - - 2342

**ART. 8. To pass a defile in front,** - - - - - 2351

- To re-form the line after passing the defile, - - - - - 2363

**ART. 9. To pass a defile in retreat,** - - - - - 2377

- To re-form the line after passing the defile, - - - - - 2383
- Second example of the same movement, - - - - - 2386

**ART. 10. Changes of front:**

Perpendicular changes of front, - - - - - Page 144

Movements of the first line:

- 1st. Forward on the right battalion, - - - - - -No. 2393
- Forward on the left battalion, - - - - - 2402
- 2d. To the rear on the right battalion, - - - - - 2403
- To the rear on the left battalion, - - - - - 2410
- 3d. Central changes of front, - - - - - 2411
- Oblique changes of front, - - - - - 2418

**CHANGES OF FRONT OF TWO LINES.**

- 1st. Perpendicularly forward on the right of the first line, - - - - - 2424
- General rule - - - - - 2434
- Perpendicularly forward on the left of the first line, - - - - -

- 2435

2d. Perpendicularly to the rear on the right of the first line, - - - - - 2438  
 Perpendicularly to the rear on the left of the first line - - - - -  
 2445

3d. Perpendicularly on the fifth or fourth battalion of the first line, the left or right wing thrown forward, - - - - - No. 2446, 2251

Oblique changes of front.

1st. Forward on the right of the first line, - - - - - 2456

2d. Forward on the left of the first line, - - - - - 2465

3d. To the rear on the right of the first line, - - - - - 2466  
 To the rear on the left of the first line, - - - - -  
 - - - 2471

On the fifth or fourth battalion the left or right wing thrown forward, - - - - -  
 - - - - - 2472, 2477

**ART. 11. Order in echellon:**

Direct echellons in advancing, - - - - - 2491

To re-form the line, - - - - - 2497

Direct echellons in retreat, - - - - - 2505

To re-form the line, - - - - - 2510

Oblique echellons, - - - - - 2514

Formation of oblique echellons, - - - - - 2517

To put the echellons in march, - - - - - 2521

To re-form the line, - - - - - 2541

**ART. 12. To retreat by alternate battalions,**

To re-form the line, - - - - - -2529

To re-form the line, - - - - - 2541

**ART. 13. Passage of lines:**

In retreating, - - - - - 2545

In advancing, - - - - - 2554

**ART. 14. Dispositions against cavalry:**

General rules - - - - - 2584, 2565

Being in column by company at full distance, to form square - - - - - 2566

Being in column at half distance, to form square, - - - - -  
 - -2596

Being in column by division, closed in mass, to form square - - - - -  
 - - -2597

To form the square into column In or-der to march in advance, or retreat, 2610, 2616

To reduce the square, - - - - - 2621

Prompt formation of the square from a column closed in mass - - - - -  
 - - - 2623

To form square from line of battle:

Parallely to the line, - - - - - No. 2630

Perpendicularly to the line, - - - - - 2831

Squares disposed in echellons, - - - - - 2835

Oblique squares, - - - - - 2642

To form a line of battalions in columns into oblique squares, - - - - -  
 - - - -2648

To form a column at full distance into oblique squares, - - - - -  
 - - - - 2650

To reduce squares, and to re-form line, - - - - - 2651

The fire of oblique squares, - - - - - 2656

# Bob Sullivan's Drill Tips

*Appendix I*

or:

## *Tips For Better Drill, Learned The Hard Way At Military School.*

*by Robert Sullivan, Sullivan Press*

I attended military school for the first 11 years of my education. The reason it wasn't 12 is because the school dropped the military between my junior and senior years. The various companies of which I was a member (from private up to company commander) won the annual drill competitions in 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th, 10th, and 11th grade. I learned these tips while drilling in school. When I got into reenacting, I shared them with my group. We attended an annual competition in which we won the drill competition 4 years running.

A short story before we get started:

In 1983, I went with a group of about 150 re-enactors to Paris to celebrate the bicentennial of the signing of the Treaty of Versailles. We stayed at a French military barracks. The first day we turned out to practice, we marched around the parade. We were so bad the French troops were laughing at us. We went away to practice, and practiced for 90 minutes. During those 90 minutes, the tips I am about to share with you were used, and used extensively. The next day, we formed up on the parade and marched out. The French were no longer laughing. Each day we marched around the parade and out of the barracks to do another show. The day we left, we gave a gift to the commander of the barracks. As Bill Brown, our military commander on the trip related to me later, the French commander told him, "Monsieur, your men have (pause) *élan*." I don't think we could have received a higher compliment.

These tips are divided into tips for the soldier and tips for the commander. They are independent of any drill manual.

### **For the Commander:**

Know your men. Call them by name when correcting them. It give the appearance that you are watching each individual, rather than just casting your eyes over the group. When I was in charge of a platoon, I had identical twins in it. (Remember, in military school we were wearing uniforms, so everyone dressed exactly alike.) Some of their teachers couldn't tell them apart, but I could. They wanted to know how I could, and I refused to tell them until the last day of school, because I didn't want them changing and confusing me. In my platoon, I could look down the line and recognize people by their shoes. And they were all plain black shoes, too. I'm not bragging, it was my job to know the people in my platoon.

1. ***Never, ever, use the following phrase by itself: "Get in Step".*** Who is out of step? Call him by name and tell him to get in step.

2. ***By the same token, never EVER, yell "Dress!"*** Who is out of line? How is he out of line? Tell him which way to move to align himself with everyone else.

3. The stupidest and most useless correction known is this phrase: "Do it together!"

4. ***Always allow at least three beats (steps if you're marching) between the preparatory command and the command of execution.*** If your commands will be echoed, you must give your preparatory commands far enough in advance to allow three beats between the last echoed preparatory command and your command of execution. For those of you who aren't sure what a preparatory command and a command of execution are, "Forward" is a preparatory command, and "March!" is a command of execution.

5. ***Don't echo the command if your unit isn't doing the command.*** It sounds simple, but I can't tell you how many times I have heard officers in column screaming commands that their units are not supposed to execute until they reach the point of

the command.

6. *There should be no difference in the timing of commands when in place or on the march.* Since in place commands (facings, manual of arms) are done at the same speed as marching commands, there should be no difference in the timing of the commands.

7. *Teach your men to drill with a drummer.* Have the drummer beat the marching beat as you do the facings and manual of arms. That is the speed at which the commands are supposed to be done anyway, so use the musician. As in "Right", "Face!", one, two. "Shoulder", "Arms", one two, three.

8. *Note that in every manual of arms, every command says "Two motions", or "Three motions", etc. They never say "One long motion with no stops and starts". Emphasize the individual motions.* You will be surprised how much "crisper" your drill will be, even when not emphasizing the motions.

9. *Every once in a while, take a musket in YOUR hands and drill with it.* Note how uncomfortable it becomes when held in one position for any length of time. Note how difficult it is to execute the next command promptly and crisply when you have held it in one position for any length of time. Remember that.

10. *If you are going to be performing a series of commands, practice that entire series together, not the individual maneuvers.* If it isn't done right, then start from the beginning and do it again. Keep doing the entire routine until it is done right. This not only teaches your men what's expected of them, but also helps them memorize what they are going to do. That way, if they can't hear your command because a cannon went off, it doesn't matter, because they know that they are supposed to turn right here anyway. In senior high we won our drill competition year after year, because we practiced the routine (not the individual commands in it) we were going to use so often every person in the 200 man company knew what command was coming next.

11. *If your unit isn't going to move for one minute, rest them. If your unit isn't going to move in five minutes, stack arms and dismiss them.* They'll come on line that much quicker when the command to fall in is given.

12. *In hot weather, never force your men to stand in the sun when there is shade nearby.* See rule nine.

13. *When beginning a drill on the manual of arms, run through the manual of arms.* Dismiss those who don't make mistakes. Civil War troops had an "awkward squad" for a reason. Don't penalize your men who attend all the events and know the drill, by making them drill with those who don't.

14. *Practice doesn't make perfect. Mediocre practice just reinforces bad habits. Good practice makes for good drill.* If someone is doing it wrong, tell him. They can't do it right unless you tell them. The length of time you practice doesn't necessarily make your troops drill better. If you really want to drill them for two hours, do it in two one-hour segments. Remember, even Stonewall Jackson marched his men only fifty minutes in an hour.

### **For the Soldier:**

Take pride in what you are doing. You are representing a soldier. Do it. Listen to your officer. He is responsible for the well being of his men. He will take care of you. If he doesn't, elect another one next year. Or find a new unit.

1. *Never, NEVER, NEVER, move your head.* From a distance, it is impossible to see fingers moving, it is difficult to see feet move slightly, but you might as well send up a flare when you move your head. Everyone's hat reflects the light, and as soon as you move your head, the light reflection off of the top of your hat is different. You might just as well hold up a big sign that says, "I'm moving!"

2. Read rule 1 again.

3. *Look with your eyes, not your head.* God gave you the ability to turn your eyes to see to the side. Use this ability. If you want to check your alignment, turn your eyes, not your head. The worst offenders are those who lean out and look to check their alignment. What are these people thinking about?

4. *You are responsible for maintaining a certain distance between yourself and the man in front of you. Never change that distance.* When 20 men are marching in column, if each man is three inches farther from the man in front than he is supposed to be, then the last man is FIVE FEET out of position.

5. *When your officer says, "March", go.* If you step on the heel of the man in front of you, it is HIS fault for not moving.

6. *When your officer says, "Halt", stop.* If you have followed rule 4, you will be in the right place. If you have to close up, it's YOUR fault because you didn't maintain your distance.

7. *When marching in line, stay even with the man next to you.* That's all. Not the colors, not the sergeant, not anybody but the man next to you. Never mind what the officer says. If everybody does this, then everybody's in line. Besides, your peripheral vision doesn't allow you to see more than one or two men down the line anyway. And, rule one is NEVER move your head. If your judgment or alignment is off, the sergeant or corporal will tell you to move up or back. He won't just yell "Dress!", because he has read rule 2 in his section.

8. *Work on every motion in the manual of arms. Not command, motion.* Make them separate motions, with a slight pause between each. You really do have the time to do this.

9. *When placing the rifle on or off your shoulder, NEVER MOVE YOUR HEAD* (Rule 1 again). What's the matter? Don't you trust yourself to move your own musket around without hitting yourself in the head with it?

10. *When you are performing the manual of arms and have finished the last motion of a command, FREEZE.* If the rifle is in the wrong place, or if your hand is not quite in the right place, or your foot is slightly out of line, DON'T MOVE. The next command will be coming along shortly. If you don't move, people have to look very carefully at all of the men to find your error. If you move after everyone else has stopped, you just pointed out your mistake to anyone who is watching. Again, you might just as well hold up that big sign that says "I'm moving!"

Well, those are my tips. They work. I have my name on the trophies and plaques to prove it. I know all of you hate me by now. Some of you are saying, "Who in the heck is a sutler to tell us how to drill?" Officers will hate me because I'm telling the men to do some things differently. The men will hate me because I'm telling them to take responsibility for their drill. If everybody hates me, you'll want to prove that I'm wrong by drilling well. Good, because I'll be watching.

# FORMING THE LINE

*THE USE OF GUIDES IS NOT SO MUCH FOR MILITARY PAGEANTRY; IT IS VITAL IN FORMING THE BATTALION LINE AS QUICKLY AS POSSIBLE. A BATTALION DOES NOT FORM OR DRESS AS IF IT WERE ONE LARGE COMPANY.*

**By Dominic J. Dal Bello**

Since the beginning of the 125th anniversary events, the need to know battalion drill has steadily increased. As events have grown larger, the battalion has become the basic unit in reenacting, and no officer or file closer should attend a Civil War event without some knowledge of battalion evolutions.

Often, however, we are in such a hurry to learn the movements that we don't take time to learn the basics of battalion drill – forming and maintaining a straight line. We tend to skip over these time-consuming procedures, which require markers and the posting of guides.

I have not always been diligent in instructing my own battalion in the use of guides and markers. A few years ago, however, the necessity for them became apparent; it was taking longer than it should to form the battalion. I have come to believe that the use of guides is not so much for military pageantry, but is rather vital in forming the battalion line as quickly as possible. A battalion does not form or dress as if it were one large company. If we learn these basic steps, the more difficult maneuvers can be easier and are better understood.

## **Forming the Battalion**

In the form of the original manuals, the battalion commander is called “colonel” and the company commander “captain,” even though they may not actually hold those ranks.

Despite its fundamental importance, the assembly of the battalion is not explicitly covered in the standard manuals. They state only:

*“1. Every colonel will labor to habituate his battalion to form line of battle, by night as well as by day, with the greatest possible promptitude.*

*2. The color-company will generally be designated as the directing company. That, as soon as formed, will be placed on the direction the colonel may have determined for the line of battle. The other companies will form on it, to the right and left, on the principles of successive formations which will be herein prescribed.”<sup>1</sup>*

In “successive formation,” the battalion line forms one company at a time. From a column of companies, the command is “forward into line,” (Figure 1) or “on the right into line.” Unfortunately, because the procedures “herein prescribed,” are encased in 19th-century military jargon, it is difficult to learn how to properly form a battalion.

***“Fall in Twenty-Eighth, fall in! if you don't fall in, I will march the regiment off and leave every-one of you behind.”***

-- Colonel Robert Preston,  
28th Virginia Infantry

Instructions for musicians given in the standard manuals are, “*when the whole of the troops, in the same camp or garrison, are to depart, the general, the assembly, and to the color, will be sounded, at the proper intervals, in the order here mentioned. At the first, the troops will prepare for the movement; at the second, they will form by company, at the third unite by battalion.*”<sup>2</sup>

The calls are given at ten to fifteen minute intervals. “The general” is the signal for the whole command to break camp—to take down tents an hour before departing.

John D. Billings, in his *Hardtack and Coffee*, wrote that once troops moved out of Sibley, wedge and wall tents and into shelter tents, this preliminary call to break camp early became unnecessary.

Reenactors more often just form the battalion without breaking camp. In this case, the "drummers' call" (beaten on the drum), or "assembly of the buglers" or "attention" (sounded on the bugle), are reasonable substitutes for "the general." Bruce and Emmett, in their instructions for guard mount, specify that "first call" is the musicians' call.<sup>3</sup> Because the musicians are so few and far between at reenactments and the men are so well accustomed to the sound of "attention," I often have "attention" sounded.

In the instructions for conducting daily parade, the U.S. Army Regulations specify the third call to be "adjutant's call."<sup>4</sup>

The first call, whether you make it "drummers' call," "assembly of the buglers" or "attention," is to assemble the musicians and the signal to prepare to form ranks. The men should be listening for the next call and be prepared to fall in. August Kautz, in his *Customs of Service*, says, "the company is formed in the interval between the 'musicians' call' and the last note of 'assembly', when every man should be in ranks."<sup>5</sup>

Because "musicians' call" is also beaten before guard mount and other formations, the officers and 1st sergeants should be aware of the schedule.

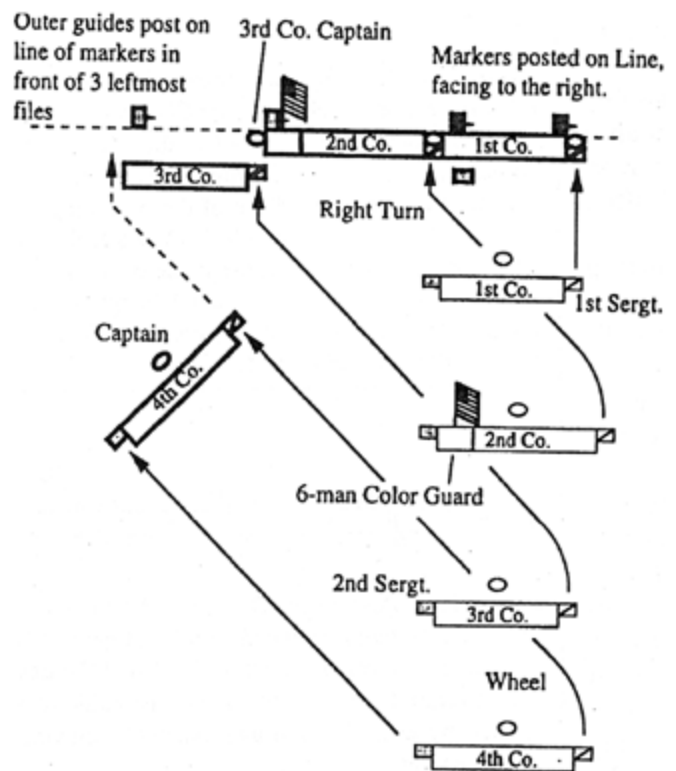
At "the assembly," the noncommissioned officers form their companies on their respective parade grounds or company streets under the supervision of their officers. The roll may be called. The colonel moves to the battalion parade ground, while the adjutant forms the color guard, posting it on the left of the color (right center) company.

The adjutant then posts two markers in front of where the right and left of the color company are to lie (Figure 2a). Markers are used to indicate locations of a line of battle or points at which a column of companies change direction while marching. They sometimes are selected from the pioneers or drummers, or may be specially detailed.

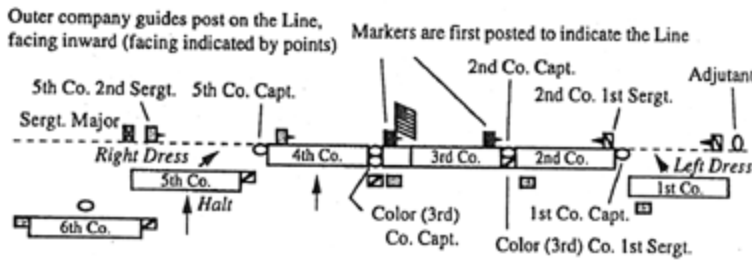
The right elbows of the markers indicate the line upon which the battalion is to dress. The adjutant then aligns himself with the markers, facing them on the right wing about a company distance from them, waiting to post the next company's guide on the line. The sergeant major does the same on the left wing.

When "to the color" is sounded, the color company, followed by the other companies of the brigade, marches to the markers and dresses on them. I often have the color company formed on the line before the call is sounded. The color company should dress to the left,<sup>6</sup> its captain moving to the left of the company to do so, and the left file aligning on the left marker.

After sounding "to the color," especially while on parade, the musicians usually play martial airs as the companies march to the line. The companies on the immediate left and right of the color company are the next to arrive on the line, and the flank companies arrive last. Each company waits until the preceding company is dressed before it moves onto line. As each company arrives, it halts three paces behind the line. Its outer guide automatically posts on the line of markers, facing inward toward the color company, in front of where one of the 3 outermost files of his company will lie. This outer guide is the right guide if the company is in the right wing, the left guide if in the left



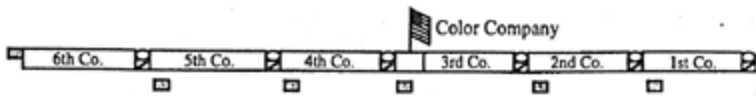
**Figure 1: "Forward into line" - a successive formation.** The Lieut. Col. posts two markers on the intended line; the "base" company (here the 1st), advances to the markers. The Colonel then sets the battalion in motion. As each company approaches the line, it halts three paces behind it, its outer guide posting on the line, facing the markers. The Captain moves to the side of the company that preceded it into line (see 3rd Co.) and, assured of his guide's position by the Lieut. Col., the Captain dresses his company onto the line.



**Figure 2a: Forming a 6-company Battalion.** At *The Assembly*, the Adjutant posts two markers on which the Color Company (here the 3rd) forms. At *To the Color*, the other companies march to the Battalion Parade. Each company halts 3 paces before it comes into line; its outer guide posting on the line of markers (facing them), its Captain moving to the flank of the preceding company - towards the center of the Battalion (e.g., 1st, 2nd & 5th Cos.). As each guide comes onto line, the Adjutant (or Sergt. Major) assures that the guide is on the line of markers, and then his Captain dresses the company; the Adjutant (Sergt. Major) moves towards the flank to direct the next guide. Each company comes to *Support Arms* when the next company into line had dressed and fronted.



**Figure 2b: Posting the Guides.** After the line is formed, the guides remain in front until the Adjutant is satisfied with the alignment (when maneuvering, it is the Colonel who orders "Guides - POSTS."). At "Guides - POSTS," the Captains and the guides return to their regular posts, the guides through the nearest company interval, formed by each Captain and 1st Sergt. moving in front of, and in rear of, their rightmost files.



**Figure 2c: A battalion in line of battle.** Note that the leftmost 2nd Sergt. closes the battalion, and there is no space between companies. If there is a file closer rank to the Color Guard, the 2nd Sergt. of the Color Company is to their left, behind the 1st Sergt. of the next company to the left.

wing. The adjutant assures the positions of the right wing guides as each comes on to line, and the sergeant major does likewise with the left wing companies.

The captain, in the meantime, moves to the near flank of the company which preceded his into line, at the side of that company's front rank man. A right wing captain posts to the right of the senior corporal of the company to the left, a left wing captain posts at his normal position in line at the left of the leftmost file of the company to the right. When the captain is assured by the adjutant or sergeant major that his guide is on the line, he dresses his company towards the center. A right wing captain does not return to the right of his company until the battalion is ordered to post guides.

Each captain orders his company to support arms when the following company has dressed and fronted. This indicates the company is properly dressed. This rule is general for all successive formations, unless the battalion is ordered to immediately fire.

When the alignment is satisfactory, the adjutant orders, "guides, posts!". The guides, markers and captains return to their places in line of battle (Figure 2b). Each guide and marker passes through the nearest company interval. The battalion now is formed for parade, to move onto the drill or battle field, or to take up the march (Figure 2c).

### Successive Formations in the Field

Essentially the same procedures are used on the field in successive formations. In the field, however, the lieutenant colonel, assisted by the adjutant, posts the markers and insures that the guides are posted on the line. The colonel, when satisfied with the alignment, orders, "guides, posts."

If the battalion is to fire, the colonel will indicate this intent to the base company commander. No markers are posted, and the company guides automatically post in the line of file closers as each company comes onto line without halting three paces in rear of the line. If the battle lines are very close or the battalion is being fired upon, the main goal is to form a line as soon as possible and using guides and markers would be unwise. But when the battalion is not in a precarious situation, the proper procedures should be followed in the field.

### General Procedures for Successive Formations

- 1) The colonel has markers posted on the intended line of battle by the lieutenant colonel, assisted by the adjutant. If the markers are to be in front of a right wing company, they face to the right, if in front of a left wing company, they face to the left.
- 2) At the preparatory command, such as "forward into line," the base company forms on the markers.
- 3) The other companies are then set in motion and march to the line, forming from the base company out to the flanks.
- 4) As it approaches the line, each company halts three paces in rear of its place in line.
- 5) The company's outer guide posts on the line, facing the company; the guide posts in front of where one of his



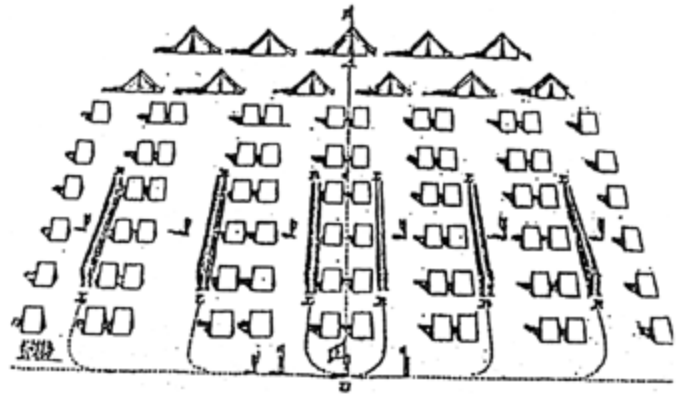
company's three outer files will lie. The lieutenant colonel ensures that each guide posts on the line of markers.

6) The captain moves to the side of the front rank man of the company that preceded his into line, posting on the side on which his company is to dress.

7) The captain dresses his company towards the markers, up to the near elbow of his company guide until the guide is assured that he is on the line by the lieutenant colonel

8) Each company comes to support arms when the following company has dressed onto the line (unless ordered to fire). The last company will come to support arms as soon as it dresses.

9) At the colonel's order, to post guides, the guides and markers return to their places in line through the nearest company interval. Captains return to the right of their companies.



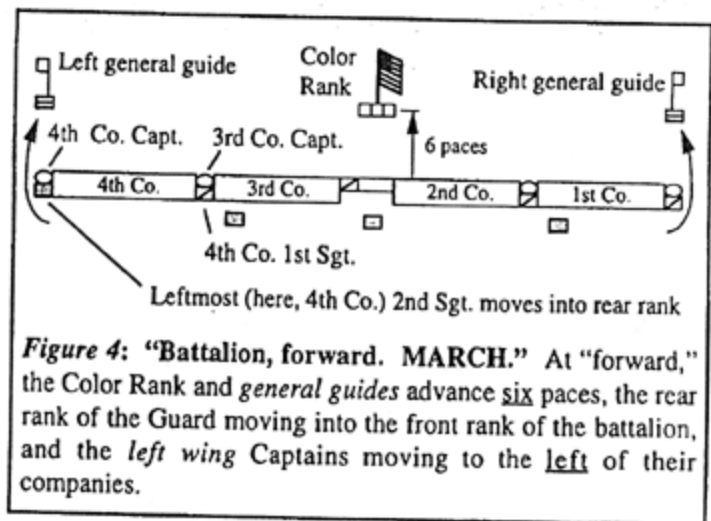
**Figure 3: Forming for Dress Parade from Butterfield's Camp and Outpost Duty for Infantry.** The figure itself causes confusion, as it seems to be in disagreement with the text. In the figure, two markers and the Color Bearer are posted on the Color Line, the left marker (to our right) being where the left of the left-center company will lie. The written instructions properly call for the left marker to be placed where the left of the Color Company will rest - Para. 6 (i.e., where the Colors are to post). The battalion Colors are not necessarily brought to the line before the Color Company.

### Moving Forward in Line

To be well-practiced in maneuvering in line of battle requires a color guard, and right and left general guides. In line of battle, the general guides are posted in the line of file closers, behind the battalion's right and left flank, respectively. In a column of companies, they generally remain in the line of file closers. The general guides may also be called out to indicate a new line of battle when the column is marching near it (see Hardee, Vol. II, paragraphs 175-192). The general guides may also act as markers if it does not draw them from their primary duties.

To move the battalion forward in line, the colonel orders "battalion, forward," then, "march."

At "forward", the right and left general guides and the front rank (color rank) of the color guard advances six paces, the rear rank taking its place (Figure 4). The captains of the left wing companies move to the left of their companies, putting all the captains at the outer flank of their respective companies.



**Figure 4: "Battalion, forward. MARCH."** At "forward," the Color Rank and general guides advance six paces, the rear rank of the Guard moving into the front rank of the battalion, and the left wing Captains moving to the left of their companies.

At the command, "march," the "battalion will step off with life; the color-bearer charged with the step and direction."<sup>7</sup>

The general guides guide the flank companies in the direction and the step, looking inward at times to ensure that they are in step and on line with the color rank. The rear rank of the guard and the nearest company commander on either side of the color are the basis of the alignment. In the evolutions of the brigade, a brigade line of battle does not move or change direction in a line, but each battalion forms a column, doubled on the center, with the two center companies in the lead of the column; each column moves to its new place in line, and then redeploys into line.

It is vital that the color bearer march forward in the proper direction. If he is not, the colonel will order, "point of direction to the right" or left, to indicate the correct direction. In theory, the major, on horseback, under direction of the colonel, will move out in front of the color bearer, to provide a point of direction for the battalion. If the step is

lost, the commander orders, "to the step," and the battalion will look to the color rank or a general guide to retake the step.

According to Hardee, "if openings be formed, if the files crowd each other, if, in short, disorder ensue, the remedy ought to be applied as promptly as possible, but calmly, with few words, and as little noise as practicable."<sup>8</sup> If the Colonel loses his temper, it will only cause frustration among the officers and men, which in turn will lead to further mistakes.

When the battalion closes with the enemy, the guides, color guard and staff are ordered back into the lines.<sup>9</sup> Scott does not specify the distance at which these elements return to the ranks for the attack, leaving this to be determined by circumstances.

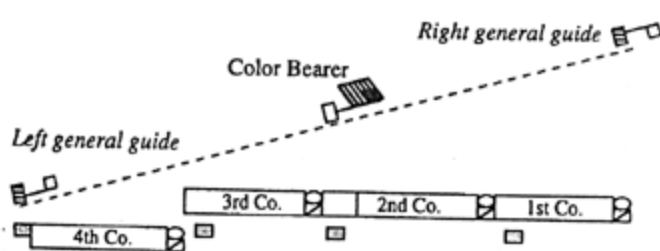
### Halting the Line

To halt the line, the colonel orders, "battalion, halt." The color rank, general guides and left wing captains remain in their places in front or at the left of their companies until receiving the order, "color and general guides, posts," at which they face about and resume their posts in line of battle. At the same time, the left wing company commanders return to their places on the right of their companies.

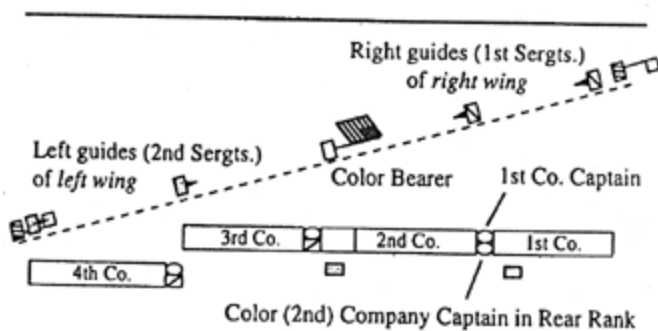
When the battalion halts, it may need to be dressed. If a minor adjustment is required, the colonel orders, "captains, rectify the alignment," or he may specify certain captains. Sometimes, the colonel may want to give the battalion a new general re-alignment. This may be either parallel or oblique to the current line.

If the battalion has just halted, the color and general guides will already be in front of the battalion. If they are not already there, the colonel gives the orders, "color and general guides, on the line."

The color bearer, not the whole color rank, and general guides advance six paces. If the color rank already is out in front, it will be ordered back to the front rank of the battalion. The left wing captains should return to the right of their companies.



**Figure 5a: "Color and General Guides - ON THE LINE."** Here, the new line is set oblique to the original line, and the 4th company has retired a distance since part of it would have been in front of the new line.



**Figure 5b: "Guides - ON THE LINE."** The outer company guides move onto the line indicated by the Color and general guides, and face the Color. The Captains move to the inner flank of their companies, except the Color Company commander, who moves into the rear rank.

With the color and general guides in front, the colonel moves outside of the right or left general guide, and has that general guide and the color bearer face him, with the colors held straight up. The colonel then indicates to the color bearer and the general guide the direction of the new line and their positions with his sword (Figure 5a). The other general guide then dresses on them. The general guides often have guidons or camp colors, or hold their muskets with the butt above their heads to mark the line. The colonel then orders, "guides! on the line."

(Figure 5b) The outer company guides move onto the new line. All company guides are facing the color, at shouldered arms, a company front apart. Ideally, each guide will be in front of where one of his company's three outer files will lie when his company comes onto line.

The captains move to the inner flank of their companies, except the color company commander, who moves into the rear rank to make room for the next captain.<sup>10</sup>

When the company guides are on the line, the colonel orders, "on the center, dress." The companies advance successively, from the center to the flanks, up "against the guides, where, having arrived, each captain will align his company according to prescribed principles, the lieutenant-colonel aligning the color company."<sup>11</sup>

The line on which the battalion dresses is indicated by the near elbows of the guides. When the battalion is dressed, the colonel orders "color and guides, posts." The color bearer, general guides, company guides, and captains return to their places in a halted line. The color bearer no longer holds the color straight up, but on his right hip, as usual. If any companies are in front of the new line, the colonel will move those companies back.

The procedure is similar when dressing a column of companies.<sup>12</sup> The two leading company guides are placed by the colonel, with the second guide a company distance behind the first if the column is at a wheeling distance. If the column is right in front, these company guides are usually the left guides. The other company guides line up behind the first two guides at the proper distances at the colonel's command, "guides, cover." The companies dress to the left at the colonel's order, "left, dress".

The colonel may also dress the column as when giving a general alignment to a line. He will order the general guides and color bearer to the guiding flank, and, moving behind the color bearer, ensure that the lead general guide and the color bearer are on the proper line of direction.<sup>13</sup> The major aligns the rearmost general guide. The colonel will then order, "guides, on the line," at which the company guides move onto the line of direction. Colonel then orders the battalion to "dress, left," and the companies will dress on their respective guides.

In columns of more than one battalion, the brigade commander will have the general guides and color bearer of each battalion come out to indicate the brigade's line of march.

### Experience Counts

Beside practice, the key to keeping the line straight is to have experienced color bearers and general guides. The line and field officers should also be veterans. However, like any skill, it must be studied and practiced, to help develop good communications between the color bearer, general guides, and staff.

All file closers may need to fill the positions of captain, right or left company guide, general guide, or even the color bearer. They, and all officers, should study the battalion evolutions. With practice, these apparently time-consuming methods will save time over trying to form and dress the battalion as if it were a large company. The sooner the line is formed, the sooner it can be taken into the field and broken up again.

Mastering the fundamentals also allows the complicated maneuvers to be more readily learned and executed, so that when the battalion is engaged, it can effectively maneuver and fight, even when not relying on markers.

*Behind the byline: Dom Dal Bello is commander of the Army of the Pacific and author of Parade, Inspection and Basic Evolutions of the Infantry Battalion and Instructions for Guards and Pickets. In the modern world, he is an engineer and graduate student.*

### Footnotes

1. Scott, Winfield, *Infantry Tactics*, Vol. II, New York, Harper and Brothers, 1840 (authorized 1835), Paras. 1-2; Hardee, William J., *Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics*, Vol. II, Philadelphia, J.B. Lippincott & Co., 1861 (1855), Paras 1-2; Casey, Silas, *Infantry Tactics*, Vol. II, New York, D. Van Nostrand, 1862, Paras. 1-2.
2. Scott, Vol. I, pg. 170; Hardee, Vol. I, pg. 219; Casey, Vol. I, pg. 230.
3. Bruce, G.B. and Emmett, D.D., *The Drummers' and Fifers' Guide*, New York, Wm. A. Pond & Co., 1861.
4. *United States Army Regulations*, Washington, Government Printing Office, 1861.
5. Kautz, August V., *Customs of Service for Non-Commissioned Officers and Soldiers*, Philadelphia, J.B. Lippincott & Co., 1864, Para. 428.
6. Upton, Emory, *Infantry Tactics*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1874, Para. 375.
7. Hardee, Vol. II, Para. 597; Casey, Vol. II, Para. 659.
8. Hardee, Vol. II, Para. 619; Casey, Vol. II, Para. 682.
9. Scott, Winfield, *Abstract of Infantry Tactics*, Boston, Hilliard, Gray, Little and Wilkins, 1830, Para. 1320.
10. Hardee, Vol. II, Para. 643; Casey, Vol. II, Para. 707. This instruction to the color company captain causes some confusion as to the direction towards which the color company is to dress. Is it towards the left or the right? Most properly, it seems it should be to the left, per Butterfield and Upton.
11. Hardee, Vol. II, Para. 645; Casey, Vol. II, Para. 709.
12. Hardee, Vol. II, Para. 244; Casey, Vol. II, Para. 291.
13. Hardee, Vol. II, Para. 247.

“When time came for battalion drill of more than one company at a time, and one captain had trained with Hardee and another with Casey or Winfield Scott’s old manual, the result could be chaos. More than one officer simply skirted the whole issue by abandoning military jargon and telling the men plainly what he wanted them to do. Seeing his command approaching a mud hole and not knowing the proper commands to have the men march around it, one finally shouted “Boys! Break up, scoot the hole, and git together on t’other side.”<sup>1</sup>

*Fortunately now that you know the meaning of “Scoot the hole”, you will be prepared at your next reenactment to promptly and accurately obey. No need to thank me.*

<sup>1</sup> William C. Davis, *Classic Conflicts of the Civil War*, Salamander Books, 1996, p. 220.